

OLD FRENCH SERIES • VOLUME 17

VILLEHARDOUIN

GEOFFROI DE VILLEHARDOUIN

La Conquête de Constantinople

The Conquest of Constantinople

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation
preserving the original word order

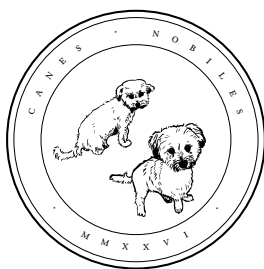


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 17 of the Canes Nobiles Old French interlinear texts

The Old French text follows Natalis de Wailly's text,
La Conquête de Constantinople, third edition (Paris, 1882), paragraphs 1–500

Set from page scans of that printing

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

The text keeps de Wailly's spelling and his accents. The margin gives
his paragraph numbers; his chapters are grouped into the reading sections,
whose English heads are this press's. The paragraphs after 500,
Henri de Valenciennes' continuation, are not printed.

CONTENTS

I · The Preaching of the Cross	9
II · The Envoys at Venice	14
III · The Treaty with Venice	21
IV · The Death of Count Thibaut	27
V · Boniface of Montferrat Takes the Cross	31
VI · The Host at Venice Cannot Pay	36
VII · The Doge Takes the Cross	42
VIII · The Siege of Zara	48
IX · Winter at Zara and the Offer of Alexius	54
X · Discord in the Host	59
XI · Absolution from Rome and the Voyage to Corfu	64
XII · The Barons Hold the Host Together	69
XIII · Saint Stephen and the Landing at Chalcedon	76
XIV · The Foragers and the Emperor's Message	82

XV · The Young Alexius Shown to the City	87
XVI · The Tower of Galata	93
XVII · The Assault on the Walls	99
XVIII · The Emperor Declines Battle	103
XIX · Isaac Restored	109
XX · The Coronation of the Young Alexius	115
XXI · The Emperor's Progress	120
XXII · The Great Fire, and Alexius Breaks Faith	124
XXIII · The Defiance and the Fireships	128
XXIV · Murzuphlus Usurps the Empire	134
XXV · The Pact Before the Assault	139
XXVI · The Second Assault	143
XXVII · The City Taken	149
XXVIII · The Booty and the Election of Baldwin	154
XXIX · Boniface Marries the Empress	161
XXX · Murzuphlus Blinded	166
XXXI · The Quarrel of Baldwin and Boniface	170
XXXII · The Barons' Messages	177
XXXIII · Reconciliation and the Division of the Lands	182
XXXIV · The Death of Murzuphlus	188
XXXV · Reinforcements from Syria	193
XXXVI · Villehardouin the Nephew in the Morea	198

XXXVII · The Greeks Allied with Johanitsa	203
XXXVIII · The Recall from Beyond the Straits	208
XXXIX · Before Adrianople	212
XL · The Defeat at Adrianople	216
XLI · The Retreat	221
XLII · The March to Rodosto	225
XLIII · Seven Thousand Pilgrims Desert	230
XLIV · The Death of the Doge	236
XLV · The Surrender of Serres	240
XLVI · The Ruin of Philippopolis	244
XLVII · The Defeat Near Rusion	249
XLVIII · The Ruin of Rodosto	255
XLIX · The Relief of Demotika	260
L · Renier of Trith Rescued	266
LI · Henry Crowned Emperor	271
LII · The War Beyond the Arm	277
LIII · The Emperor's Marriage	281
LIV · The Relief of Kibotos	287
LV · The Siege of Cyzicus	293
LVI · The Truce with Lascaris	300
LVII · The Death of Boniface	304

The Preaching of the Cross

I

In 1197, in the time of Pope Innocent, King Philip of France, and King Richard of England, Fulk of Neuilly, a parish priest, preaches through France, and God works miracles through him. The pope sends his cardinal Peter of Capua with an indulgence for a year's service. At a tournament at Écry, Counts Thibaut of Champagne and Louis of Blois take the cross; Baldwin of Flanders follows at Bruges, then Hugh of Saint-Pol and Geoffrey of the Perche, and the book names their barons.

Sachiez que mil et cent et quatre-vinz et dix sept 1
Know that thousand and hundred and fourscore and ten seven
anz après l'incarnation Nostre Sengnor Jesu Crist, al tens
years after the-incarnation (of-)Our Lord Jesus Christ in-the time
Innocent, apostoile de Rome, et Phelipe, roi de France, et
(of-)Innocent pope of Rome and (of-)Philip king of France and
Richart, roi d'Engleterre, ot un saint home en France qui
(of-)Richard king of-England there-was a holy man in France who
ot nom Folques de Nuilli (cil Nuillis siet entre Laigni sor
had name Fulk of Neuilly that Neuilly lies between Lagny on
Marne et Paris); et il ere prestres, et tenoit la parroisse
Marne and Paris and he was priest and held the parish
de la ville. Et cil Folques dont je vos di, comença à
of the town And that Fulk of-whom I to-you speak began to
parler de Deu par France et par les autres terres entor;
speak of God through France and through the other lands around
et sachiez que Nostre Sires fist maintes miracles por lui.
and know that Our Lord did many miracles through him
Sachiez que la renommée de cel saint home ala tant qu'ele 2
Know that the renown of that holy man went so-far that-it
vint à l'apostoile de Rome, Innocent; et l'apostoiles envoia
came to the-pope of Rome Innocent and the-pope sent

en France et manda al prodome que il preeschast
to France and commanded to-the worthy-man that he should-preach
 des croiz par s'autorité. Et après i envoia un suen
of-the cross by his-authority And afterward there he-sent a his-own
 cardonal, maistre Perron de Capes, croisié; et manda par
cardinal master Peter of Capua crossed and sent-word by
 lui le pardon tel con je vos dirai: Tuit cil qui se
him the indulgence such as I to-you shall-tell All those who themselves
 croisseroient et feroient le servise Deu un an en l'ost,
should-take-the-cross and should-do the service (of-)God one year in the-host
 seroient quite de toz les pechiez que il avoient faiz, dont
would-be quit of all the sins that they had done whereof
 il seroient confès. Por ce que cil pardons fut issi granz,
they should-be confessed For this that that indulgence was so great
 si s'en esmurent mult li cuer des genz; et mult
so themselves-thereby moved much the hearts of-the people and many
 s'en croisierent por ce que li pardons ere si granz.
themselves-thereby crossed for this that the indulgence was so great

- 3 En l'autre an après que cil preudon Folques parla ainsi
In the-other year after that that worthy-man Fulk spoke thus
 de Deu, ot un torneoi en Champagne, à un chastel
of God there-was a tournament in Champagne at a castle
 qui ot nom Aicris; et par la grace de Deu si avint
which had name Écry and by the grace of God so it-happened
 que Tibauz, quens de Champagne et de Brie, prist la
that Thibaut count of Champagne and of Brie took the
 croiz, et li quens Loeys de Blois et de Chartein; et
cross and the count Louis of Blois and of Chartres and
 ce fu à l'entrée des Avenz. Or sachiez que cil quens
this was at the-beginning of-the Advent Now know that that count
 Tibauz ere jones hom, et n'avoit pas plus de vint-deus
Thibaut was young man and not-had at-all more than twenty-two

ans; ne li quens Loeys n'avoit pas plus de vint-sept ans.

years nor the count Louis not-had at-all more than twenty-seven years

Cil dui conte erent nevou le roi de France et si cousin

Those two counts were nephews (of-)the king of France and his cousins

germain, et nevou le roi d'Engleterre de l'autre part.

german and nephews (of-)the king of-England on the-other side

Avec ces deus contes se croisserent dui mult halt baron 4

With these two counts themselves crossed two very high barons

de France, Symons de Monfort et Renauz de Monmirail.

of France Simon of Montfort and Renaud of Montmirail

Mult fu granz la renomée par les terres, quant cil dui

Very was great the renown through the lands when those two

halt home s'encroisserent.

high men themselves-crossed

En la terre le conte Tibaut de Champagne se croisa 5

In the land (of-)the count Thibaut of Champagne himself crossed

Garniers li evesques de Troies, li quens Gautiers de Briene,

Garnier the bishop of Troyes the count Walter of Brienne

Jofrois de Joenvile qui ere seneschaus de la terre, Roberz

Geoffrey of Joinville who was seneschal of the land Robert

ses freres, Gautiers de Gaignoru, Gautiers de Monbeliart,

his brother Walter of Gaignoru Walter of Montbéliard

Eustaices de Conflans, Guis dou Plaissié ses freres, Henris

Eustace of Conflans Guy of-the Plessis his brother Henry

d'Ardillieres, Ogiers de Saint-Cheron, Vilains de Nuilli, Jofrois

of-Ardillieres Ogier of Saint-Chéron Vilain of Neuilly Geoffrey

de Vile-Hardoin li mareschaus de Champagne, Jofrois ses

of Villehardouin the marshal of Champagne Geoffrey his

niés, Guillaumes de Nuilli, Gautiers de Fuillinies, Evrazz de

nephew William of Neuilly Walter of Fuillinies Everard of

Monteigni, Manasiers de l'Isle, Machaires de Sainte-Manehalt,

Monteigni Manasses of the-Isle Macaire of Sainte-Menebould

Miles li Braibans, Guis de Chapes, Clarenbaur ses niés,
Miles the Brabançon Guy of Chappes Clarembaud his nephew
 Reignars de Dampierre, Johans Foisons, et maintes autres
Renard of Dampierre John Foison and many other
 bones genz dont li livres ne fait mie mention.
good people of-whom the book not makes at-all mention

- 6 Avec le conte Loeys se croisa Gervaises del Chastel,
With the count Louis himself crossed Gervase of-the Châtel
 Hervis ses fils, Johans de Virsin, Oliviers de Rochefort,
Hervé his son John of Virsin Oliver of Rochefort
 Henris de Mousteruel, Paiens d'Orliens, Pierres de Braicuel,
Henry of Montreuil Payen of-Orléans Peter of Bracieux
 Hues ses freres, Guilaumes de Sains, Johans de Friaize,
Hugh his brother William of Sains John of Friaize
 Gautiers de Gaudonville, Hues de Cormeroy, Jofrois ses
Walter of Gaudonville Hugh of Cormeray Geoffrey his
 freres, Hervis de Belveoir, Roberz de Froevile, Pierres ses
brother Hervé of Beauvoir Robert of Frouville Peter his
 freres, Oris de l'Isle, Roberz del Quartier, et maint autre
brother Orry of the-Isle Robert of-the Quartier and many another
 dont li livres ne fait mie mention.
of-whom the book not makes at-all mention

- 7 En France se croisa Neules li evesques de Soisons,
In France himself crossed Nivelon the bishop of Soissons
 Mahius de Monmorenci, Guis li chastelains de Couci ses
Matthew of Montmorency Guy the castellan of Coucy his
 niés, Roberz de Roinsoi, Ferris d'Ierre, Jehans ses freres,
nephew Robert of Ronsoy Ferri of-Yerres John his brother
 Gautiers de Saint-Denise, Henris ses freres, Guillaumes
Walter of Saint-Denis Henry his brother William
 d'Aunoi, Roberz Malvoisins, Drués de Cresonessart, Bernarz
of-Aunoy Robert Mauvoisin Dreux of Cressonsacq Bernard

de Moruel, Engerrans de Bove, Roberz ses freres, et maint
of Moreuil Enguerrand of Boves Robert his brother and many
 autre prodome, dont li livres ore se taist.

another worthy-man of-whom the book now itself is-silent

A l'entrée de la quaresme après, le jor que om prent 8

At the-beginning of the Lent after the day that one takes

cendres, se croisa li quens Baudoins de Flandres et de
asbes himself crossed the count Baldwin of Flanders and of

Hennaut à Bruges, et la contesse Marie sa feme, qui ere
Hainault at Bruges and the countess Marie his wife who was

suer le conte Tiebaut de Champagne. Après se croissa
sister (of-)the count Thibaut of Champagne After himself crossed

Henris ses freres, Thieris ses niés, qui fu fils le conte
Henry his brother Thierry his nephew who was son (of-)the count

Phelippe de Flandres, Guilermes l'avoez de Bethune, Coenes
Philip of Flanders William the-advocate of Béthune Conon

ses freres, Johans de Neele chatelains de Bruges, Reniers
his brother John of Nesle castellan of Bruges Renier

de Trit, Reniers ses fils, Mahius de Waleincort, Jaques
of Trith Renier his son Matthew of Walincourt James

d'Avesnes, Baudoins de Belveoir, Hues de Belmés, Girarz
of-Avesnes Baldwin of Beauvoir Hugh of Beaumetz Gerard

de Mancicort, Oedes de Ham, Guillaumes de Gomeignies,
of Mancicourt Odo of Ham William of Gommegnies

Drius de Belrain, Rogiers de Marque, Eustaices de Saubruic,
Dreux of Beaurain Roger of Marck Eustace of Saubruic

François de Colemi, Gautiers de Bousies, Reniers de Monz,
François of Colemi Walter of Bousies Renier of Mons

Gautiers des Tombes, Bernarz de Soubrenghien, et maint
Walter of-the Tombes Bernard of Somergem and many-a

plusor prodome dont li livres ne parole mie.

several worthy-man of-whom the book not speaks at-all

- 9 Après, se croisa li quens Hues de Saint-Pol. Avec lui
After himself crossed the count Hugh of Saint-Pol With him
 se croisa Pierres d'Amiens ses niés, Eustaices de Canteleu,
himself crossed Peter of-Amiens his nephew Eustace of Canteleux
 Nicholes de Mailli, Ansiaus de Caheu, Guis de Hosdeng,
Nicholas of Mailly Anseau of Cayeux Guy of Houdain
 Gautiers de Neelle, Pierres ses freres, et maint autre gent
Walter of Nesle Peter his brother and many other people
 que nos ne quenoisons pas.
whom we not know at-all
- 10 Enqui après, s'encroisa li quens Jofrois del Perche, Estenes
There after himself-crossed the count Geoffrey of-the Perche Stephen
 ses freres, Rotres de Monfort, Ive de la Jaille, Haimmeris
his brother Rotrou of Montfort Ivo of the Jaille Aimery
 de Vileroi, Jofrois de Belmont, et maint altre dont je
of Villeroi Geoffrey of Beaumont and many another of-whom I
 ne sai pas les nons.
not know at-all the names

The Envoys at Venice

II

At Soissons the barons cannot agree, and at Compiègne they give six envoys full power. In Venice Doge Henry Dandolo offers ships and nine months' victuals for 4,500 knights, 9,000 squires, and 20,000 foot, for 85,000 marks, and fifty galleys of his own for half of all conquests; the envoys accept.

- 11 Après, pristrent li baron un parlement à Soissons por savoir
After took the barons a parliament at Soissons for to-know
 quant il voldroient movoir, et quel part il voldroient
when they would-wish to-set-out and what direction they would-wish

torner. A cele foiz ne se porent acorder, porce que il lor
to-turn At that time not themselves could agree because that it to-them
sembla que il n'avoient mie encore assez genz croisiés. En
seemed that they not-had at-all yet enough people crossed In
tot cel an, ne passa onques deus mois que il n'assemblissent
all that year not passed ever two months that they not-should-assemble
à parlement à Compaigne. Enqui furent tuit li conte et li
at parliament at Compiègne There were all the counts and the
baron qui croisié estoient. Maint consoil i ot pris et doné;
barons who crossed were Many-a counsel there was taken and given
mais la fins dou conseil si fu tels que il envoieroient messages
but the end of-the counsel so was such that they would-send envoys
les meillors que il poroient trover, et donroient plain pooir
the best that they could find and would-give full power
à aus de faire toutes choses, autretant con li seignor.
to them to do all things as-much as the lords

De ces messages envia Thiebautz li cuens de Champagne 12
Of these envoys sent Thibaut the count of Champagne
et de Brie deus; et Baudoins li cuens de Flandres et
and of Brie two and Baldwin the count of Flanders and
de Hennaut, deus; et Loys li cuens de Blois, deus. Li
of Hainault two and Louis the count of Blois two The
message le conte Thebaut furent Joffrois de Vile-Hardoin
envoys (of-)the count Thibaut were Geoffrey of Villehardouin
li mareschaus de Champagne, et Miles li Braibanz; et li
the marshal of Champagne and Miles the Brabançon and the
message le conte Baudoin furent Coenes de Betune et
envoys (of-)the count Baldwin were Canon of Béthune and
Alars Maqueriaus; et li message le conte Loys furent
Alard Maquereau and the envoys (of-)the count Louis were
Johans de Friaie et Gautiers de Gaudonville.
John of Friaize and Walter of Gaudonville

- 13 Sor ces six si mistrent lor afaire entierement, en tel maniere

On these six so they-put their business entirely in such manner
 que il lor baillerent bones chartres pendanz, que il
that they to-them handed good charters sealed that they
 tendroient ferm totes les convenances que cil six feroient
would-hold firm all the covenants that those six would-make
 par toz les porz de mer, en quelque leu que il alassent.
through all the ports of sea in whatever place that they might-go

- 14 Ensi murent li six message con vos avez oï, et pristrent

Thus set-out the six envoys as you have heard and took
 consoil entr'aus; et fu tels lor consaux entr'aus acordez
counsel among-themselves and was such their counsel among-themselves agreed
 que en Venise cuidoiient trover plus grant plenté de vaisiax
that in Venice they-thought to-find more great plenty of vessels
 que à nul autre port. Et chevauchierent par lor journées
than at any other port And they-rode by their day-stages
 tant que il vindrent là la première semaine de quaresme.
so-far that they came there the first week of Lent

- 15 Li dux de Venise qui ot à nom Henris Dandole, et ere mult

The doge of Venice who had as name Henry Dandolo and was very
 sages et mult prouz, si les honora mult, et il et les autres
wise and very valiant so them honored much both he and the other
 gens; et les virent mult volentiers. Et quant il baillerent
people and them saw very willingly And when they handed
 les lettres lor seignors, si se merveillerent mult por
the letters (of-)their lords so themselves marveled much for
 quel afaire il erent venu en la terre. Les letres erent de
what business they were come into the land The letters were of
 creance; et distrent li conte que autant les creist en
credence and said the counts that as-much them he-should-believe thereof
 comme lor cors, et tenroient fait ce que cist six feroient.
as their bodies and would-hold done this that these six would-do

Et li dux lor respont: «Signor, je ai veues vos letres; 16

And the doge to-them answers Lords I have seen your letters

bien avons queneu que vostre signor sont li plus haut

well we-have known that your lords are the most high

home qui soient sanz corone; et il nos mandent que

men who may-be without crown and they to-us send-word that

nos creons ce que vos nos direz, et tenront ferm ce

we believe this that you to-us will-say and they-will-hold firm this

que vos ferez. Or dites ce que vos plaira.»

that you will-do Now say this that to-you will-please

Et li message respondirent: «Sire, nos volons que vos aiez 17

And the envoys answered Lord we wish that you have

vostre conseil; et devant vostre conseil nos vos dirons ce

your council and before your council we to-you will-tell this

que nostre seignor vos mandent, demain se il vos plaist.»

that our lords to-you send-word tomorrow if it to-you pleases

Et li dux lor respondi que il lor requeroit respit

And the doge to-them answered that he of-them asked delay

al quart jor; et adonc aroit son conseil ensemble, et

to-the fourth day and then would-have his council together and

porroient dire ce que il requeroient.

they-could say this that they asked

Il atendirent tresci que au quart jor que il lor ot mis; 18

They waited until that to-the fourth day that he to-them had set

il entrerent el palais qui mult ere riches et biax, et

they entered into-the palace which very was rich and fair and

troverent le duc et son conseil en une chambre; et distrent

found the doge and his council in a chamber and said

lor message en tel maniere: «Sire, nos sommes à toi venu

their message in such manner Lord we are to thee come

de par les hals barons de France qui ont pris le sine de

on behalf-of the high barons of France who have taken the sign of

la croiz, por la honte Jesu-Crist vengier et por Jerusalem
the cross for the shame (of-)Jesus-Christ to-avenge and for Jerusalem
 reconquerre, se Diex le vult soffrir. Et porce que il sevent
to-reconquer if God it wishes to-suffer And because that they know
 que nule genz n'ont si grant pooir d'aus aidier con vos et la
that any people not-have so great power them to-help as you and the
 vostre genz, vos prient por Dieu que vos aiez pitié de la
your people you they-beg for God that you may-have pity of the
 terre d'oltremer, et de la honte Jesu-Crist, et que vos veuilliez
land of-overseas and of the shame (of-)Jesus-Christ and that you may-wish
 mettre paine coment il puissent avoir navie et estoire.
to-put pains how they may have navy and fleet

- 19 «En quel maniere? fait li dux. — En totes les manières,
In what manner says the doge In all the manners
 font li message, que vos lor saurez loer ne conseilier
say the envoys that you to-them will-know-how to-advise or to-counsel
 que il faire ne soffrir puissent. — Certes, fait li dux;
that they to-do or to-bear may Certainly says the doge
 grant chose nos ont requise, et bien semble que il
great thing of-us they-have asked and well it-seems that they
 béent à halt affaire; et nos vos en respondrons d'ui
aim at high business and we to-you thereof will-answer from-today
 à huit jorz. Et ne vos merveilliez mie se li termes
in eight days And not yourselves marvel at-all if the term
 est lons, quar il covient mult penser à si grant chose.»
is long for it behooves much to-think on so great thing

- 20 Al terme que li dux lor mist, il revindrent el
At-the term that the doge to-them set they came-back into-the
 palais. Totes les paroles qui là furent dites et retraites
palace All the words that there were said and recounted
 ne vos puis mie raconter; mais la fins dou parlement fu
not to-you I-can at-all recount but the end of-the parliament was

tels: «Seignor, fait li dux, nos vos dirons ce que nous
such Lords says the doge we to-you will-tell this that we
 avons pris à conseil, se nos i poons metre nostre grant
have taken at counsel if we thereto can bring our great
 conseil et le commun de la terre que il l'otroit; et vos
council and the commons of the land that it it-grant and you
 vos conseileroiz se vos le porroiz faire ne soffrir.

yourselves will-consider if you it will-be-able do or bear

«Nos ferons vuissiers à passer quatre mille et cinc 21

We will-make horse-transport to carry four thousand and five
 cenx chevaus, et neuf mille escuiers; et es nés quatre
hundred horses and nine thousand squires and in-the ships four
 mille et cinc cenx chevaliers et vint mille sergenz

thousand and five hundred knights and twenty thousand sergeants

à pié. Et à toz ces chevaus et ces genz iert telx la

on foot And to all these horses and these people will-be such the

convenance que il porteront viande à neuf mois. Tant

covenant that they will-carry victuals for nine months So-much

vos feromes al mains, en tel forme que on donra por

for-you we-will-do at-the least in such form that one will-give for

le cheval quatre mars, et por l'ome deus.

the horse four marks and for the-man two

«Et totes ces convenances que nos vos devisons, vos 22

And all these covenants that we to-you set-out to-you

tendron par un an, dès le jor que nos departirons del

we-will-hold for one year from the day that we shall-depart from-the

port de Venise à faire le service Dieu et la crestienté,

port of Venice to do the service (of-)God and (of-)the Christendom

en quelque leu que ce soit. La somme de cest avoir qui

in whatever place that it may-be The sum of this money which

ci est devant nomez, si monte quatre-vint-cinc mille mars.

here is before named so amounts-to fourscore-five thousand marks

23 «Et tant feromes nos plus que nos meteromes cinquante
And so-much will-do we more that we will-put fifty
 galées armées por l'amor de Dieu, par tel convenance que,
galleys armed for the-love of God by such covenant that
 tant con nostre compaignie durra, de totes conquestes que
as-long as our company will-last of all conquests that
 nos ferons de terre ne d'avoir, par mer ou par terre, la
we will-make of land or of-wealth by sea or by land the
 moitié en aurons, et vos l'autre. Or si vos conseilliez,
half thereof we-will-have and you the-other Now so yourselves consider
 se vos le porroiz faire ne soffrir.»

if you it will-be-able do or bear

24 Li message s'en vont, et distrent que il parleroient
The envoys themselves-thence go and said that they would-speak
 ensemble, et lor en respondront l'endemain. Conseillierent
together and to-them thereof will-answer the-next-day They-counseled
 soi et parlerent ensemble cele nuit, et si s'accorderent
themselves and spoke together that night and so themselves-agreed
 al faire; et demain vindrent devant le duc et distrent:
to-the doing and next-day came before the doge and said
 «Sire, nos somes prest d'aseurer ceste convenance.» Et li
Lord we are ready to-confirm this covenant And the
 dux dist qu'il en parleroit à la soe gent, et ce que
doge said that-be thereof would-speak to the his people and this that
 il troveroit, il le lor feroit savoir.

he would-find he it to-them would-have known

25 L'endemain al tierz jor, manda li dux, qui mult ere sages
The-next-day at-the third day summoned the doge who very was wise
 et proz, son grant conseil; et li conseils ere de quarante
and valiant his great council and the council was of forty
 homes des plus sages de la terre. Et il, par son sens et
men of-the most wise of the land And he by his sense and

par son engin, que il avoir mult cler et mult bon, les mist
by his wit that he had very clear and very good them brought
 en ce que il le loerent et voltrent. Ensi les mist, puis
to this that they it approved and wished Thus them he-brought then
 cent, puis deux cenx, puis mil, tant que tuit le creanterent
hundred then two hundred then thousand until that all it granted
 et loerent. Puis en assembla ensemble bien dix mil en
and approved Then thereof he-assembled together well ten thousand in
 la chapele de Saint-Marc, la plus bele qui soit; et si lor
the chapel of Saint-Mark the most fair that may-be and so to-them
 dist, que il oïssent messe del Saint-Esperit, et priassent
said that they should-bear mass of-the Holy-Spirit and should-pray
 Dieu que il les conseillast de la requeste as messages
God that he them might-counsel of the request of-the envoys
 que il lor avoient faite. Et il si firent mult volontiers.
that they to-them had made And they so did very willingly

The Treaty with Venice

III

In the minster Villehardouin makes the plea, and the envoys kneel weeping until the people cry that they grant it. The charters are drawn: the host is to go to Babylon, that is Egypt, though it is given out as overseas, and to be at Venice by Saint John's Day 1202. Doge and envoys swear, Pope Innocent confirms, and the envoys borrow five thousand marks to begin the fleet. On the Mont-Cenis Villehardouin meets Walter of Brienne bound for Apulia, whose men promise to join the host and never do.

Quant la messe fu dite, li dux manda aus messages, 26
When the mass was said the doge sent-word to-the envoys
 que il requaissent à tot le pueple humblement que il
that they should-ask of all the people humbly that they

volsissent que cele convenance fust faite. Li message
might-wish that that covenant should-be made The envoys
 vindrent el mostier. Mult furent esgardé de maintes
came into-the minster Much were looked-at by many
 genz qui nes avoient ainc mais veuz.

people who not-them had ever before seen

27 Joffrois de Vile-Hardoin li mareschaus de Champaigne

Geoffrey of Villebardouin the marshal of Champaigne

moustra la parole par l'acort et par la volenté as autres

set-forth the speech by the-accord and by the will of-the other

messages, et lor dist: «Seignor, li baron de France li

envoys and to-them said Lords the barons of France the

plus halt et li plus poesteif nos ont à vos envoiez; si

most high and the most powerful us have to you sent so

vos crient merci, que il vos preigne pitié de Jerusalem

you they-cry mercy that it you may-take pity of Jerusalem

qui est en servage de Turs, que vos por Dieu voilliez lor

which is in bondage of Turks that you for God may-wish them

compaignier à la honte Jesu-Crist vengier. Et por ce vos

to-accompany to the shame (of-)Jesus-Christ to-avenge And for this you

i ont eslis que il sevent que nule genz n'ont si grant

there they-have chosen that they know that any people not-have so great

pooir, qui sor mer soient, come vos et la vostre genz. Et

power who on sea may-be as you and the your people And

nos comanderent que nos vos en chaïssiens as piez, et

us they-commanded that we to-you thereof should-fall at-the feet and

que nos n'en leveïssiens jusques à tant que vos ariez

that we not-thence should-rise until to so-much that you would-have

otroïé que vos ariez pitié de la Terre sainte d'outremer.»

granted that you would-have pity of the Land holy of-overseas

Maintenant li six message s'agenoillent à lor piez mult plorant; 28

At-once the six envoys themselves-kneel at their feet much weeping

et li dux et tuit li autre s'escreverent à plorer de la pitié,

and the doge and all the others themselves-burst to weep of the pity

et s'escrierent tuit à une voiz, et tendirent lor mains en

and themselves-cried-out all with one voice and stretched their hands on

halt, et distrent: «Nos l'otrions, nos l'otrions!» Enqui ot si

high and said We it-grant we it-grant There was so

grant bruit et si grant noise, que il sembla que terre fondist.

great din and so great noise that it seemed that earth might-sink

Et quand cele granz noise remest, et cele granz pitiez (que 29

And when that great noise ceased and that great pity that

onques plus grant ne vit nus hom), li bons dux de Venise,

ever more great not saw any man the good doge of Venice

qui mult ere sages et proz, monta el leteri, et parla

who very was wise and valiant mounted into-the lectern and spoke

au pueple et lor dist: «Seignor, véez l'onor que Diex

to-the people and to-them said Lords see the-honor that God

vos a faite; que la meillor genz del monde ont guerpi

to-you has done that the best people of-the world have forsaken

tote l'autre gent, et ont requis vostre compaignie de si alte

all the-other people and have sought your company of so high

chose ensemble faire con de la rescosse Nostre Seignor.»

thing together to-do as of the rescue (of-)Our Lord

Des paroles que li dux dist bones et belles ne vos puis tout 30

Of-the words that the doge said good and fair not to-you I-can all

raconter; mais ensi fina la chose que de faire les chartres

recount but thus ended the matter that of making the charters

pristrent à l'endemain jor; et furent faites et devisées. Quant

they-took to the-next day and were made and drawn-up When

eles furent faites, si fu la chose devisée à conseil que on

they were made so was the matter agreed in private that one

iroit en Babiloine, por ce que par Babiloine poroient mielz
would-go to Babylon for this that by Babylon they-could better
 les Turs destruire que par altre terre. Et en oïance, fu devisé
the Turks destroy than by other land And in hearing was declared
 que il en iroient outremer. Il estoit adonc quaresmes; et
that they thence would-go overseas It was then Lent and
 de la saint Johan en un an, qui fu mil deus cenx ans
from the saint John in one year which was thousand two hundred years
 et deus après l'incarnation Jesu-Crist, devoient li baron et
and two after the-incarnation (of-)Jesus-Christ were-to the barons and
 li pelerin estre en Venise, et li vaissel appareillié contre als.
the pilgrims to-be in Venice and the vessels prepared for them

31 Quant eles furent faites et saellées, si furent aportées devant
When they were made and sealed so were brought before
 le duc el grant palais, où li granz conseils ere et
the doge into-the great palace where the great council was and
 li petiz. Et quant li dux lor livra les soes chartres, si
the small And when the doge to-them delivered the his charters so
 s'agenoilla moult plorant, et jura sor sainz à bone foi à bien
himself-knelt much weeping and swore on relics in good faith to well
 tenir les convenz qui erent es chartres, et toz ses conseils
hold the covenants which were in-the charters and all his council
 aisi, qui ere de quarante-six. Et li message rejurerent les lor
also which was of forty-six And the envoys swore-in-turn the their
 chartres à tenir, et les sairemenz à lor seignors et les lor,
charters to hold and the oaths of their lords and the their
 que il les tenroient à bone foi. Sachiez que là ot mainte
that they them would-hold in good faith Know that there was many-a
 larme plorée de pitié. Et maintenant envoierent lor messages
tear wept of pity And at-once sent their envoys

l'une partie et l'autre à Rome, à l'apostoile Innocent, pour
the-one party and the-other to Rome to the-pope Innocent for
 confermer ceste convenance; et il le fist mult volentiers.

to-confirm this covenant and he it did very willingly

Et alors emprunterent li message cinc mil mars d'argent 32

And then borrowed the envoys five thousand marks of-silver

en la vile, et si les bailerent le duc por comencier

in the town and so them banded (to-)the duke for to-begin

le navile. Ensi pristrent congié por raler en lor païs, et

the fleet Thus they-took leave for to-go-back into their country and

chevauchierent par lor journées tant que il vindrent à Plasence

rode by their day-stages so-far that they came to Piacenza

en Lombardie. Enqui se partirent: Joffrois li mareschaus

in Lombardy There themselves parted Geoffrey the marshal

de Champaigne et Alarz Makeriaus si s'en alerent

of Champagne and Alard Maquereau so themselves-thence went

droit en France; et li autre s'en alerent à Genne et

straight into France and the others themselves-thence went to Genoa and

à Pise por savoir quele aïe il feroient à la terre d'outremer.

to Pisa for to-know what help they would-do to the land of-overseas

Quant Joffrois li mareschaus de Champaigne passa Moncenis, 33

When Geoffrey the marshal of Champagne crossed Mont-Cenis

si encontra le conte Gautier de Brene, qui s'en aloit

so met the count Walter of Brienne who himself-thence went

en Puille conquerre la terre sa fame, que il avoit

into Apulia to-conquer the land (of-)his wife whom he had

espousée puis que il ot la croiz prise, et qui ere file

wedded since that he had the cross taken and who was daughter

le roi Tancre. Avec lui en aloit Gautiers de Monbeliard

(of-)the king Tancred With him thence went Walter of Montbéliard

et Eustaices de Conflans, Roberz de Joenvile, et granz
and Eustace of Conflans Robert of Joinville and great
 partie de la bone gent de Champaigne, qui croisié estoient.

part of the good people of Champagne who crossed were

34 Et quant il lor conta les noveles comme il avoient exploitié,

And when he to-them told the news how they had succeeded

mult en firent grant joie, et mult presierent l'afaire, et

much thereof they-made great joy and much praised the-business and

li distrent: «Nos sommes jà meu; et quant vos vendroiz,

to-him said We are already set-out and when you will-come

vos nos troveroiz toz prez.» Mais les aventures avienent ensi

you us will-find all ready But the chances happen thus

con Dieu plaist, ne n'orent nul pooir que plus assemblissent

as (to-)God pleases nor not-had any power that more they-might-assemble

en l'ost. Ce fu mult granz domaiges; que mult estoient preu

in the-host This was very great damage for very they-were worthy

et vaillant. Et ensi se partirent; si tint chascuns sa voie.

and valiant And thus themselves parted so held each his way

The Death of Count Thibaut

IV

Villehardouin finds Count Thibaut sick at Troyes; glad of the news, Thibaut rides once more and never again. He divides his wealth among men sworn to join the host at Venice, and many keep the oath badly. He dies young and much mourned, leaving Blanche of Navarre with a daughter and a son unborn. The Duke of Burgundy and the Count of Bar-le-Duc refuse to take his place, and at Soissons Villehardouin proposes Boniface, Marquis of Montferrat, who is summoned and comes.

Tant chevaucha Joffrois li mareschaus par ses journées que il 35
So-far rode Geoffrey the marshal by his day-stages that he
vint à Troies en Champagne, et trova son seignor le conte
came to Troyes in Champagne and found his lord the count
Tibaut malade et deshaitié; et si fu mult liez de sa venue.
Thibaut sick and ailing and so he-was very glad of his coming
Et quant cil li ot contée la novele coment il avoient
And when that-one to-him had told the news how they had
exploité, si fu si liez qu'il dist qu'il chevaucheroit, ce
succeeded so he-was so glad that-he said that-he would-ride this
qu'il n'avoit pieça fait; et leva sus et chevalcha. Alas! con
which-he not-had long-since done and rose up and rode Alas what
granz damages! car onques puis ne chevaucha que cele foiz.
great damage for ever after not he-rode but that time
Sa maladie crut et esforça tant que il fist sa devise et son 36
His sickness grew and strengthened so-much that he made his will and his
lais; et departi son avoir, que il devoit porter, à ses homes et à
legacy and divided his wealth which he was-to carry to his men and to
ses compaignons, dont il avoit mult de bons (nus hom à cel jor
his companions of-whom he had many of good any man at that day
n'en avoit plus). Et si commanda, si con chascuns recevroit
not-thereof had more And so be-commanded so as each would-receive

son avoir, que il jurerait sor sains l'ost de Venise à tenir, ensi
his wealth that he would-swear on relics the-host of Venice to hold so
 con il l'avoit promis. Mult i ot de cels qui malvaisement
as he it-had promised Many there had of those who badly
 le tindrent, et mult en furent blasmé. Une autre partie
it kept and much thereof were blamed An other part
 commanda li cuens de son avoir à retenir por porter en l'ost,
commanded the count of his wealth to retain for to-carry into the-host
 et por departir là où en verroit que il serroit miex employé.
and for to-distribute there where one would-see that it would-be better employed

37 Ensi morut li cuens; et fu uns des homes del monde qui
Thus died the count and was one of-the men of-the world who
 fist plus bele fin. Enqui ot mult grant pueple assemblé de
made more fair end There was very great people assembled of
 son lignage et de ses homes. Del duel ne convient mie
his lineage and of his men Of-the mourning not behooves at-all
 à parler qui illuec fu faiz; que onques plus granz ne fu
to speak which there was made for ever more great not was
 faiz por home; et il le dut bien estre, car onques hom de
made for man and it so ought well to-be for ever man of
 son aage ne fu plus amés de ses homes ne de l'autre gent.
his age not was more loved by his men nor by the-other people
 Enterrez fu delez son pere au mostier de monseignor Saint
Buried he-was beside his father at-the minster of my-lord Saint
 Estiene à Troies. La contesse remest, sa feme, qui Blanche
Stephen at Troyes The countess remained his wife who Blanche
 avoit nom, mult bele, mult bone, qui ere file le roi de
had name very fair very good who was daughter (of-)the king of
 Navarre, qui avoit de lui une filliette, et ere grosse d'un fil.
Navarre who had of him a little-daughter and was great with-a son

Quant li cuens fu enterrez, Mahius de Monmorenci, Symons 38

When the count was buried Matthew of Montmorency Simon
de Montfort, Joffrois de Joenvile qui ere seneschaus, et Joffrois
of Montfort Geoffrey of Joinville who was seneschal and Geoffrey
li mareschaus alerent al duc Oedon de Borgoine, et si li

the marshal went to-the duke Odo of Burgundy and so to-him

distrent: «Sire, tes cousins est morz; tu voiz le damage qui
said Lord thy cousin is dead thou seest the damage which

à la terre d'outremer est avenuz. Por Dieu te volons proier

to the land of-overseas is happened For God thee we-wish to-pray

que tu preignes la croiz et sequeures la terre d'outremer

that thou take the cross and succor the land of-overseas

el leu cestui; et nos te ferons tot son avoir baillier, et

in-the place (of-)this-one and we to-thee will-have all his wealth handed and

te jurerons sor sainz, et le te ferons aus autres jurer,

to-thee will-swear on relics and it to-thee will-have by-the others sworn

que nos te servirons à bone foi, als con nos feissiens lui.»

that we thee will-serve in good faith just as we would-do him

Telx fu sa volentés que il refusa. Sachiez que il peust bien 39

Such was his will that he refused Know that he might well

mielz faire. Joffroi de Joinville chargierent li message que

better do Geoffrey of Joinville charged the envoys that

altretel offre feist au conte de Bar-le-Duc Thibaut,

such-another offer he-should-make to-the count of Bar-le-Duc Thibaut

qui ere cosins al conte qui morz estoit; et refusa le autresi.

who was cousin to-the count who dead was and refused it likewise

Mult fu granz desconforz as pelerins et à toz cels qui 40

Very was great discomfort to-the pilgrims and to all those who

devoient aler el servise Dieu, de la mort le conte

were-to go into-the service (of-)God of the death (of-)the count

Thibaut de Champagne; et pristrent un parlement al chief

Thibaut of Champagne and they-took a parliament at-the end

del mois à Seissons, por savoir que il porroient faire. Enqui
of-the month at Soissons for to-know what they could do There
 furent li cuens Balduins de Flandres et de Hennaut, et li
were the count Baldwin of Flanders and of Hainault and the
 cuens Loeis de Blois et de Chartain, li cuens Joffrois del
count Louis of Blois and of Chartres the count Geoffrey of-the
 Perche, li cuens Hues de Saint-Pol, et maint autre preudome.

Perche the count Hugh of Saint-Pol and many another worthy-man

- 41 Joffrois li mareschaus lor mostra la parole, et l'offre que
Geoffrey the marshal to-them set-forth the speech and the-offer that
 il avoient faite le duc de Borgoigne et le conte de
they had made (to-)the duke of Burgundy and (to-)the count of
 Bar-le-Duc, et coment il l'avoient refusé. «Seignor, fait-il,
Bar-le-Duc and how they it-had refused Lords says-he
 escoltez; je vos loeroie une chose, se vos i acordez.
listen I to-you would-advise a thing if you thereto agree

Li marchis Bonifaces de Monferrat est mult prodom et
The marquis Boniface of Montferrat is very worthy-man and
 uns des plus proisiez qui hui cest jor vive. Se vos li
one of-the most esteemed who today this day may-live If you to-him
 mandiez que il venist ça et preist le signe de la croiz,
sent-word that he should-come here and should-take the sign of the cross
 et se meist el leu le conte de Champaigne, et
and himself should-put in-the place (of-)the count of Champagne and
 li donisiez la seigneurie de l'ost, assez tost la preudoit.»
to-him gave the lordship of the-host quite soon it he-would-take

- 42 Assez i ot paroles dites avant et ariere; mais la fins de
Plenty there had words said forward and back but the end of
 la parole fu telx que tuit s'i acorderent, li grant
the speech was such that all themselves-thereto agreed the great
 et li petit; et furent les letres escrites et li messaige
and the small and were the letters written and the envoys

eslit, et fu envoiez querre; et il vint, al jor que il
chosen and he-was sent for and he came at-the day that they
 li orent mis, par Champaigne et parmi France, où il
to-him had set through Champaigne and through France where he
 fu mult honorez, et par le roi de France, cui cosins il ere.
was very honored and by the king of France whose cousin he was

Boniface of Montferrat Takes the Cross

V

At Soissons the barons beg Boniface on their knees to lead the host, and he takes the cross in the church of Our Lady. At Cîteaux the Burgundians cross. Geoffrey of the Perche dies and leaves his men to his brother Stephen. After Easter the pilgrims set out over the Alps and gather on the island of Saint Nicholas at Venice. A Flemish fleet sworn to join them by way of Morocco keeps faith badly, and many shun Venice for other ports, above all Marseilles, to their shame.

Ensi vint à un parlement à Soissons qui nomez fu; et illuec 43
Thus he-came to a parliament at Soissons which named was and there
 fu la granz foisons des contes et des barons et des croisiez.
was the great abundance of-the counts and of-the barons and of-the crossed
 Con il oïrent que li marchis venoit, si alerent encontre lui; si
When they heard that the marquis came so they-went to-meet him so
 l'onorerent mult. Al matin si fu li parlemenz en un vergier
him-honored much At-the morning so was the parliament in an orchard
 à l'abaïe madame Sainte Marie de Soissons. Enqui requistrent
at the-abbey (of-)my-lady Saint Mary of Soissons There they-besought
 le marchis que il avoient mandé, et li prient por Dieu que
the marquis whom they had summoned and him they-pray for God that
 il preigne la croiz, et reçoive la seignorie de l'ost, et soit el
he take the cross and receive the lordship of the-host and be in-the

leu le conte Thibaut de Champaigne, et preigne son avoir
place (of-)the count Thibaut of Champagne and take his wealth
 et ses homes. Et l'en chaïrent as piez mult plorant; et il
and his men And him-thereof they-fell at-the feet much weeping and he
 lor rechiet as piez, et dit que il le fera mult volentiers.
to-them falls-in-turn at-the feet and says that he it will-do very willingly

- 44 Ensi fist li marchis lor proiere, et reçut la seigneurie
Thus did the marquis their prayer and received the lordship
 de l'ost. Maintenant li evesques de Soissons et missire
of the-host At-once the bishop of Soissons and my-lord
 Folques li bons hom, et dui blanc abé que il avoit
Fulk the good man and two white abbots whom he had
 amené de son païs, l'enmainent à l'iglyse Nostre-Dame, et
brought from his country him-lead to the-church (of-)Our-Lady and
 li atauchent la croiz à l'espaule. Ensi fina cis parlemenz;
to-him attach the cross at the-shoulder Thus ended this parliament
 et l'endemain si prist congié por raler en son païs
and the-next-day so he-took leave for to-go-back into his country
 et por atoner son affaire, et dist que chascuns atornast
and for to-prepare his business and said that each should-prepare
 le suen; que il seroit encontre als en Venise.
the his-own for he would-be to-meet them in Venice

- 45 Ensi s'en ala li marchis al chapitre à Cystials, qui
Thus himself-thence went the marquis to-the chapter at Cîteaux which
 est à la sainte Croiz en septembre. Enqui trova mult grant
is at the holy Cross in September There he-found very great
 plenté des abez et des barons et des autres genz de
plenty of-the abbots and of-the barons and of-the other people of
 Borgoigne; et missire Folques i ala por parler des croiz.
Burgundy and my-lord Fulk there went for to-speak of-the crosses
 Enqui se croisa Oedes li Champenois de Chanlite et
There himself crossed Odo the Champenois of Champlitte and

Guillaumes ses freres, Richars de Danpierre, Oedes ses freres,
William his brother Richard of Dampierre Odo his brother
 Guis de Pesmes, Haimmes ses freres, Guis de Covelans, et
Guy of Pesmes Aimo his brother Guy of Conflans and
 maintes bones genz de Borgoigne dont li non ne sont mie
many good people of Burgundy of-whom the names not are at-all
 en escrit. Après se croisa li evesques d'Ostun, Guigues li
in writing After himself crossed the bishop of-Autun Guigues the
 cuens de Forois, Hues de Bregi li peres et li fils, Hues
count of Forez Hugh of Bergi the father and the son Hugh
 de Colemi. Aval en Provence, se croisa Pierres Bromonz,
of Colemi Down in Provence himself crossed Peter Bromont
 et autres gens assez dont nos ne savons pas les noms.
and other people plenty of-whom we not know at-all the names
 Ensi s'atornerent parmi totes les terres li pelerin. Ha 46
Thus themselves-prepared through all the lands the pilgrims Ah
 las! con granz damages lor avint, el quaresme après,
alas what great damage to-them happened in-the Lent after
 devant ce que il durent movoir; que li cuens Joffrois del
before this that they were-to set-out for the count Geoffrey of-the
 Perche s'acocha de maladie, et fist sa devise en tel
Perche himself-took-to-bed of sickness and made his will in such
 maniere que il comanda que Estenes ses freres aust son
manner that he commanded that Stephen his brother should-have his
 avoir et menast ses homes en l'ost. De cest eschange
wealth and should-lead his men into the-host Of this exchange
 se soffrissent mult bien li perelin, se Diex volsist.
themselves would-have-forgone very well the pilgrims if God had-wished
 Ensi fina li cuens et morut, don granz damages fu; et
Thus ended the count and died whereof great damage was and

bien fu droiz, car mul ere hals ber et honorez, et bons
well was right for very he-was high baron and honored and good
 chevaliers. Mult fu grans dielx par tote sa terre.

knight Very was great mourning through all his land

47 Après la Pasque, entor la Pentecoste, encomencierent à movoir

After the Easter about the Pentecost began to set-out
 li pelerin de lor païs. Et sachiez que mainte lerne i fu
the pilgrims from their country And know that many-a tear there was
 plorée de pitié al departir de lor païs, de lor genz et de
wept of pity at-the departing from their country from their people and from
 lor amis. Ensi chevauchierent parmi Borgoigne et parmi les
their friends Thus they-rode through Burgundy and through the
 monz de Mongeu, et par Moncenis, et par Lombardie; et
mountains of Mont-Joux and by Mont-Cenis and by Lombardy and
 ensi comencierent à asembler en Venise, et se logierent
thus began to assemble in Venice and themselves lodged
 en une yse que on appelle Saint Nicolas enz el port.
in an isle that one calls Saint Nicholas within in-the port

48 En cel termine mut uns estoires de Flandres par mer

In that time set-out a fleet of Flanders by sea
 ù ot mult grant plenté de bone gent armée. De
where there-was very great plenty of good people armed Of
 cele estoire si fu chevetaignes Johans de Neele chastelains
that fleet so was captain John of Nesle castellan
 de Bruges, et Tyerris qui fu filz le conte Phelippe de
of Bruges and Thierry who was son (of-)the count Philip of
 Flandres, et Nicholes de Mailli. Et cil promistrent le
Flanders and Nicholas of Mailly And those promised (to-)the
 conte Baudoin, et jurerent sor sains, que il iroient par les
count Baldwin and swore on relics that they would-go by the
 destroiz de Marroc, et assembleroient à l'ost de Venise et
straits of Morocco and would-join to the-host of Venice and

à lui, en quelque leu que il oroient dire que il torneroit.

to him in whatever place that they would-hear say that he would-turn

Et por ce en envoierent li cuens et Henris ses freres de

And for this thereof sent the count and Henry his brother of

lor nés chargies de dras et de viande et d'autres choses.

their ships laden with cloths and with victuals and with-other things

Mult fu bele cele estoire et riche, et mult i avoit grant 49

Very was fair that fleet and rich and very there had great

fiance li cuens de Flandres et li perelin, porce que la

trust the count of Flanders and the pilgrims because that the

plus granz plentez de lor bons serjans s'en alerent

most great plenty of their good sergeants themselves-thence went

en cele estoire; mais malvaisement tindrent convent à lor

in that fleet but badly they-kept covenant to their

seignor et tuit li autre, porce que cist, et maint autre,

lord and all the others because that these and many another

douterent le grant peril que cil de Venise avoient enpris.

feared the great peril that those of Venice had undertaken

Ensi lor failli li evesques d'Ostun, Guigues li cuens de 50

Thus to-them failed the bishop of-Autun Guigues the count of

Forois, et Pierres Bromonz, et autre gent assez qui mult

Forez and Peter Bromont and other people plenty who much

en furent blasmé, et petit exploit firent là où il

thereof were blamed and little achievement made there where they

alerent. Et des François lor refaili Bernarz de Moruel,

went And of-the French to-them failed-in-turn Bernard of Moreuil

Hues de Chaumont, Henris d'Arraines, Johans de Vilers,

Hugh of Chaumont Henry of-Araines John of Villers

Gautiers de Saint Denise, Hues ses freres, et maint autre

Walter of Saint Denis Hugh his brother and many another

qui eschiverent le passage de Venise por le grant peril qui

who shunned the passage of Venice for the great peril which

i ere, et s'en alerent passer à Marseille; dont
there was and themselves-thence went to-cross at Marseilles whereof
 il reçurent grant honte, et mult en furent blasmé, et
they received great shame and much thereof were blamed and
 dont granz mesaventure lor en avint puis.
whereof great mischance to-them thereof happened after

The Host at Venice Cannot Pay

VI

At Venice word comes that many pilgrims are making for other ports, so Hugh of Saint-Pol and Villebardouin ride to Pavia, find Count Louis, and turn many toward Venice, though Vilain of Neuilly and others leave Piacenza for Apulia. The host is fine, and the fleet three times what it needs, but the passage money falls far short. The greater part will pay no more, while Baldwin, Louis, Boniface, and Hugh give their plate and all they can borrow, and still thirty-four thousand marks are owed.

- 51 Or vos lairons de cels, et dirons des pelerins dont granz
Now to-you we-will-leave of those and we-will-tell of-the pilgrims of-whom great
 partie ere jà venue en Venise. Li cuens Baudoins de Flandres
part was already come into Venice The count Baldwin of Flanders
 i ert jà venuz et maint des autres. Là lor vint novele
there was already come and many-a of-the others There to-them came news
 que mult des pelerins s'en aloient par autres chemins à
that many of-the pilgrims themselves-thence went by other roads to
 autres porz; et furent mult esmaïé, porce que il ne poroient la
other ports and they-were very dismayed because that they not could the
 convenance tenir ne l'avoir paier que il devoient as Venisiens.
covenant keep nor the-money pay that they owed to-the Venetians

Et pristrent conseil entr'els que il envoieroient bons 52

*And they-took counsel among-themselves that they would-send good
messages encontre les pelerins, et encontre le conte Loeys de
envoys to-meet the pilgrims and to-meet the count Louis of
Blois et de Chartein, qui n'ere mie encor venuz, por conforter
Blois and of Chartres who not-was at-all yet come for to-comfort
et por crier merci qu'il aussent pitié de la Terre d'oltremer,
and for to-cry mercy that-they should-have pity of the Land of-overseas
et que autres passages ne pooit nul preu tenir que cil de Venise.
and that other passage not could any profit bring than that of Venice*

A cel message fu esliz li cuens Hues de Saint Pol et Joffrois 53

*To that message was chosen the count Hugh of Saint Pol and Geoffrey
li mareschaus de Champaigne; et chevaucherent tresci que à
the marshal of Champagne and they-rode as-far that to
Pavie en Lombardie. Enqui troverent le conte de Loeys a
Pavia in Lombardy There they-found the count — Louis with
grant plenté de bons chevaliers, et de bones genz. Par lor
great plenty of good knights and of good people By their
confort et par lor proiere guenchirent genz assez en Venise,
comfort and by their prayer turned people plenty to Venice
qui s'en alassent as autres porz par autres chemins.
who themselves-thence would-have-gone to-the other ports by other roads*

Neporquant de Plaisance se partirent unes mult bones 54

*Nevertheless from Piacenza themselves parted some very good
genz qui s'en alerent par autres chemins en Puille.
people who themselves-thence went by other roads into Apulia
Là fu Villains de Nuilli qui ere uns des bons chevaliers
There was Vilain of Neuilly who was one of-the good knights
del monde, Henris d'Ardillieres, Reinarz de Danpierre,
of-the world Henry of-Ardillieres Renard of Dampierre
Henris de Lonc-Champ, Giles de Traseignies qui ere hom
Henry of Longchamp Giles of Trasignies who was man*

liges au conte Baudoin de Flandres et de Hennaut; et
liege to-the count Baldwin of Flanders and of Hainault and
 li avoit doné del suen cinc cenx livres por aler avec lui
to-him he-had given of-the his-own five hundred pounds for to-go with him
 el voiaje. Avec cels s'en alla mult granz plentés de
on-the voyage With those themselves-thence went very great plenty of
 chevaliers et de serjans dont li nom ne sunt mie en escrit.

knights and of sergeants of-whom the names not are at-all in writing

- 55 Mult fu granz descroisemenz à cels de l'ost qui en Venise
Very was great loss to those of the-host who into Venice
 aloient, et els en avint granz mesaventure, si con vos
went and them thereof befell great mischance so as you
 porroiz oïr avant.

will-be-able to-hear further-on

- 56 Ensi s'en ala li cuens Loeys et li autre baron en
Thus himself-thence went the count Louis and the other barons to
 Venise; et furent receu à grant feste et à grant joie, et
Venice and were received with great feast and with great joy and
 se logierent en l'isle Saint-Nicholas avec les autres. Mult
themselves lodged in the-isle Saint-Nicholas with the others Very
 fu li oz bele et de bones genz. Onques de tant de gent
was the host fair and of good people Ever of so-much of people
 nus hom plus belle ne vit; et li Venisien lor firent marchié
any man more fair not saw and the Venetians to-them made market
 si plenteuros con il convint de totes les choses que il covient
so plentiful as it behooved of all the things that it behooves
 à chevaus et à cors d'omes; et li navies que il orent
for horses and for bodies of-men and the fleet that they had
 appareillié fu si riches et si bels que onques nus hom crestiens
prepared was so rich and so fair that ever any man Christian

plus bel ne plus riche ne vit, si cum de nés et de galies et
more fair nor more rich not saw so as of ships and of galleys and
 de vissiers, bien à trois tanz que il n'aust en l'ost de genz.

of horse-transportes well at three times as it had in the-host of people

Ha! cum granz domages fu, quant li autre qui alerent as 57

Ab what great damage it-was when the others who went to-the

autres porz ne vindrent illuec! Bien fust la crestientez halcie

other ports not came there Well would-be the Christendom raised

et la terre des Turs abaissie! Mult orent bien attendues

and the land of-the Turks lowered Very had well kept

totes lor convenances li Venisien, et plus assez; et il

all their covenants the Venetians and more much and they

semonstrent les contes et les barons les lor à tenir, et que

summoned the counts and the barons the their to keep and that

li avoires lor fust renduz; que il estoient prest de movoir.

the money to-them should-be paid for they were ready to set-out

Porchaciez fu li passages par l'ost; et avoit assez de 58

Sought was the passage-money through the-host and there-was plenty of

cels qui disoient que il ne pooient mie paier lor passage,

those who said that they not could at-all pay their passage

et li baron em prenoient ce qu'il pooient avoir. Ensi

and the barons thereof took this that-they could have Thus

paierent ce que il en porent avoir. Quant il orent quis

they-paid this that they thereof could have When they had sought

et porchacié le passage, et quant il orent païé, si ne

and gathered the passage-money and when they had paid so not

furent ne en mi ne à sum.

they-were neither in half nor in sum

Et lors parlerent li baron ensemble et distrent: «Seignor, 59

And then spoke the barons together and said Lords

li Venisien nos ont mult bien attendues noz convenances,

the Venetians to-us have very well kept our covenants

et plus assez; mais nos ne somes mie tant de gent que
and more much but we not are at-all so-much of people that
 par noz passages paier poons les lor attendre; et ce est par
by our passages to-pay we-can the their keep and this is by
 la defaute de cels qui alerent as autres porz. Por Deu si
the default of those who went to-the other ports For God so
 mette chascuns de son avoir, tant que nos poissons paier
let-put each of his wealth so-much that we may pay
 noz convenances; que encore est-il mielz que nos metons
our covenants for still is-it better that we put
 toz noz avoires ci, que ce que nos perdissiens ce que nos
all our wealth here than this that we should-lose this that we
 i avons mie, et que nos defaillisiens de noz convenances;
there have put and that we should-fail of our covenants
 que se ceste os remaint, la rescosse d'oltremer est faillie.»
for if this host remains the rescue of-overseas is failed

60 Là ot grant descorde de la graindre partie des barons et
There was great discord of the greater part of-the barons and
 de l'autre gent, et distrent: «Nos avons païé noz passages;
of the-other people and they-said We have paid our passages
 s'il nos en volent mener, nos en iromes volentiers; et
if-they us thence wish to-take we thence will-go willingly and
 se il ne vuelent, nos nos porchacerons et irons à altres
if they not wish we ourselves will-provide and will-go to other
 passages.» Por ce le disoient que il volsissent que li os
passages For this it they-said that they would-wish that the host
 se departist, por aler en son païs chascun. Et l'autre
itself should-break-up for to-go into his country each And the-other
 partie dist: «Mielx voluns nos tot nostre avoir metre, et
party said Better wish we all our wealth to-put and

aler povre en l'ost, que ce que elle se departist ne
to-go poor into the-host than this that it itself should-break-up or
 faillist; quar Diex le nos rendra bien quant lui plaira.»
should-fail for God it to-us will-render well when him will-please
 Lors comence li cuens de Flandre à baillier quanque il 61
Then begins the count of Flanders to hand-over whatever he
 ot et quanque il pot enprunter, et li cuens Loeys, et li
had and whatever he could borrow and the count Louis and the
 marchis de Mont-Ferrat, et li cuens Hues de Saint-Pol, et
marquis of Montferrat and the count Hugh of Saint-Pol and
 cil qui à la lor partie se tenoient. Lors peussiez veoir
those who to the their party themselves held Then you-could see
 tante bele vaissellemente d'or et d'argent porter à l'ostel
so-much fair plate of-gold and of-silver carried to the-house
 le duc por faire paiement. Et quant il orent païé,
(of-)the doge for to-make payment And when they had paid
 si failli de la convenance trente-quatre mil mars d'argent;
so failed of the covenant thirty-four thousand marks of-silver
 et de ce furent mult lié cil qui lor avoir avoient mis
and of this were very glad those who their wealth had put
 arriere, ne n'i voldrent riens metre; que lors cuiderent-il
back nor not-there wished anything put for then thought-they
 bien que li os fust faillie et depeçast. Mais Diex, qui
well that the host would-be failed and would-break-up But God who
 les desconsiliez conseilie, ne le volt mie ensi soffrir.
the counsel-less counsels not it wished at-all thus to-suffer

The Doge Takes the Cross

VII

The doge proposes that the host help Venice retake Zara from the King of Hungary, the debt deferred until they conquer. In Saint Mark's the old, blind doge takes the cross himself, sewn on his cotton hat, and many Venetians follow. Villehardouin then tells how Alexius blinded and deposed his brother, the Emperor Sursac, and how Sursac's son Alexius escaped to Philip of Germany and now asks the host for help. Envoys go to Germany. Fulk of Neuilly dies, and German crusaders arrive.

62 Lors parla li dux à sa gent, et lor dist: «Seignor, ceste
Then spoke the doge to his people and to-them said Lords this
genz re nos puent plus paier; et quanque il nos ont
people not to-us can more pay and whatever they to-us have
païé, nos l'avons tot gaaignié por la convenance que il
paid we it-have all won by the covenant that they
ne nos puent mie tenir. Mais nostre droiz ne seroit mie
not to-us can at-all keep But our right not would-be at-all
par toz contez; si en recevriens grant blasme et nos
by all counted so thereof we-would-receive great blame both we
et nostre terre. Or lor querons un plait.
and our land Now to-them let-us-seek a bargain

63 «Li rois de Ungrie si nos tolt Jadres en Esclavonie, qui est une
The king of Hungary so from-us took Zara in Slavonia which is one
des plus forz citez del monde, ne jà, par pooir que nous aions,
of-the most strong cities of-the world nor ever by power that we may-have
recovrée ne sera se par ceste gent non. Querons lor qu'il le
recovered not will-be except by this people not Let-us-ask them that-they it
nos aïent à conquerre, et nos lor respiterons les trente-quatre
to-us help to conquer and we to-them will-defer the thirty-four
mil mars d'argent que il nos doivent, trosque adont que
thousand marks of-silver that they to-us owe until then that

Diex les nos laira conquerre ensamble nos et els.» Ensi fu

God them to-us will-let conquer together we and they Thus was

cis plais requis. Mult fu contraliez de cels qui volsissent que

this bargain sought Very it-was opposed by those who would-wish that

l'os se departist; mais totes-voies fu faiz li plaiz et otroiez.

the-host itself should-break-up but nevertheless was made the bargain and granted

Lors furent assemblé à un dimanche à l'iglise Saint-Marc. 64

Then were assembled on a Sunday in the-church Saint-Marc

Si ere une mult grans feste; et i fu li pueples de

So there-was a very great feast and there was the people of

la terre, et li plus des barons et des pelerins.

the land and the most of-the barons and of-the pilgrims

Devant ce que la granz messe commençast, li dux de Venise, 65

Before this that the great mass should-begin the doge of Venice

qui avoit nom Henris Dandole, monta el leteril, et parla

who had name Henry Dandolo mounted into-the lectern and spoke

al pueple et lor dist: «Seignor, acompaignié estes à

to-the people and to-them said Lords joined you-are to

la meilleur gent dou monde et por le plus halt afaire que

the best people of-the world and for the most high business that

onques genz entrepreissent; et je sui vialz hom et febles,

ever people undertook and I am old man and feeble

et auroie mestier de repos, et maaigniez sui de mon cors;

and would-have need of rest and maimed I-am of my body

mais je voi que nus ne vos sauroit si gouverner et si

but I see that anyone not you would-know-how so to-govern and so

maistrer com ge, qui vostre sire sui. Se vos voliez otroier

to-master as I who your lord am If you would-wish to-grant

que je preisse le signe de la croiz por vos garder et por vos

that I should-take the sign of the cross for you to-guard and for you

enseignier, et mes filz remansist en mon leu et gardast la
to-instruct and my son should-remain in my place and should-guard the
 terre, je iroie vivre ou morir avec vos et avec les pelerins.»
land I would-go to-live or to-die with you and with the pilgrims

66 Et quand cil l'oïrent, si s'escrierent tuit à une voiz:

And when those it-heard so themselves-cried-out all with one voice
 «Nos vos proions por Dieu que vos l'otroiez et que vos
We you pray for God that you it-grant and that you
 le façois, et que vos en viegne avec nos.»
it do and that you thence come with us

67 Mult ot illuec grant pitié del pueple de la terre et
Very there-was there great pity of-the people of the land and
 des pelerins, et mainte lerne plorée, porce que cil prodrom
of-the pilgrims and many-a tear wept because that that worthy-man
 aust si grant ochoison de remanoir; car viels hom ere;
should-have so great occasion to remain for old man he-was
 et si avoit les ialz en la teste biaux, et si n'en véoit gote;
and so had the eyes in the head fair and so not-thereof saw a-drop
 que perdue avoit la veue par une plaie qu'il ot el chief.
for lost he-had the sight by a wound that-he had in-the head
 Mult parere de grant cuer. Ha! cum mal le sembloient
Very much-was-be of great heart Ah how ill him resembled
 cil qui à autres porz estoient alé por eschiver le peril!
those who to other ports were gone for to-shun the peril

68 Ensi avala le literil, et ala devant l'autel et se mist à
Thus came-down-from the lectern and went before the-altar and himself put on
 genoilz mult plorant; et il li cousirent la croiz en un grant
knees much weeping and they to-him sewed the cross on a great
 chapel de coton par devant, porce que il voloit que la genz la
bat of cotton in front because that he wished that the people it
 veissent. Et Venisien se comencent à croiser à mult grant
should-see And Venetians themselves begin to take-the-cross in very great

foison et à grant plenté: en icel jor, encor i ot mult poi de
abundance and in great plenty on that day still there was very few of
 croisiez. Nostre pelerin orent mult grant joie et mult grant pitié
crossed Our pilgrims had very great joy and very great pity
 de cele croiz, por le sens et por la proesce que il avoit en lui.
of that cross for the sense and for the prowess that he had in him
 Ensi fu croisiez li dux con vos avez oï. Lors comença-en 69
Thus was crossed the doge as you have heard Then began-one
 à livrer les nés et les galies et les vissiers as barons
to deliver the ships and the galleys and the horse-transport to-the barons
 por movoir; et del termine fu ja tant alé que li
for to-set-out and of-the term was already so-much gone that the
 septembres aprocha.

September drew-near

Or oïez une des plus granz merveilles et des greignors 70
Now hear one of-the most great marvels and of-the greatest
 aventures que vos onques oïssiez. A cel tens, ot un
adventures that you ever may-have-heard At that time there-was an
 empereor en Costantinoble qui avoit à nom Sursac; et si
emperor in Constantinople who had as name Sursac and so
 avoit un frere qui avoit à nom Alexis, que il avoit rachaté
had a brother who had as name Alexius whom he had ransomed
 de prison de Turs. Icil Alexis si prist son frere l'empereor;
from prison of Turks That Alexius so took his brother the-emperor
 si li traist les ialz de la teste, et se fit empereor
so from-him drew the eyes from the head and himself made emperor
 en tel traïson cum vos avez oï. Ensi le tint longuement en
by such treason as you have heard Thus him held long in
 prison, et un sien fil qui avoit nom Alexis. Icil fils si eschapa
prison and a his son who had name Alexius That son so escaped
 de la prison, et si s'enfui en un vassel, trosque à une cité
from the prison and so himself-fled in a vessel as-far to a city

sor mer qui a nom Ancone. D'enqui s'en ala al roi
on sea which has name Ancona From-there himself-thence went to-the king
 Phelippe d'Alemaigne qui avoit sa seror à fame; si vint à
Philip of-Germany who had his sister to wife so he-came to
 Verone en Lombardie, et herberja en la vile, et trova des
Verona in Lombardy and lodged in the town and found of-the
 pelerins assez et des genz qui s'en aloient en l'ost.

pilgrims plenty and of-the people who themselves-thence went into the-host

71 Et cil qui l'avoient aidie à eschaper, qui estoient avec lui,

And those who him-had helped to escape who were with him

li distrent: «Sire, véez-ci un ost en Venise près de nos,

to-him said Lord see-here a host in Venice near to us

de la meillor gent et des meillors chevaliers del monde

of the best people and of-the best knights of-the world

qui vont oltre mer; quar lor crie merci; que il aient

who go over sea now to-them cry mercy that they may-have

de toi pitié et de ton pere, qui à tel tort iestes deserité.

of thee pity and of thy father who with such wrong you-are disinherited

Et se il te volent aidier, tu feras quanque il deviserunt

And if they thee wish to-help thou wilt-do whatever they will-devise

de bouche. Espoir il lor en prendra pitié.» Et il dist

of mouth Perhaps it to-them thereof will-take pity And he said

que il le fera mult volontiers, et que cis conseils est bons.

that he it will-do very willingly and that this counsel is good

72 Ensi prist ses messages; si les envoya al marchis Boniface

Thus took his envoys so them sent to-the marquis Boniface

de Montferrat qui sires ere de l'ost, et as autres barons.

of Montferrat who lord was of the-host and to-the other barons

Et quant li baron les virent, si se merveillèrent mult,

And when the barons them saw so themselves marveled much

et respondirent as messages: «Nos entendons bien que

and answered to-the envoys We understand well what

vos dites; nos envoie^{rons} al roi Philippe avec lui, où
you say we will-send to-the king Philip with him where
 il s'en va. Se cis nos vielt aidier la terre d'oltremer
he himself-thence goes If this-one us wishes to-help the land of-overseas
 à recovrer, nos li aiderons la soe terre à conquerre; que
to recover we him will-help the his land to conquer for
 nos savons qu'ele est tolue lui et son pere à tort.»
we know that-it is taken-from him and his father with wrong
 Ensi furent li message envoié en Alemaigne al valet de
Thus were the envoys sent into Germany to-the youth of
 Costantinople et al roi Phelippe d'Alemaigne.

Constantinople and to-the king Philip of-Germany

Devant ce que nos vos avons ici conté, si vint une novele 73

Before this that we to-you have here told so came a news
 en l'ost dont il furent mult dolent li baron et les
into the-host whereof they were very sorrowful the barons and the
 autres genz, que messire Folques li bons hom, li sains
other people that my-lord Fulk the good man the holy
 hom, qui parla premierement des croiz, fina et morut.

man who spoke first of-the crosses ended and died

Et après ceste aventure, lor vint une compagnie de mult bone 74

And after this adventure to-them came a company of very good
 gent de l'empire d'Alemaigne, dont il furent mult lié. Là vint
people of the-empire of-Germany whereof they were very glad There came
 li evesques de Havestat, et li cuens Bertous de Casseneleboghe,
the bishop of Halberstadt and the count Berthold of Katzenelnbogen
 Garniers de Borlande Tierris de Los, Henris d'Orme, Tierris de
Garnier of Borland Thierry of Loos Henry of-Ulmen Thierry of
 Diès, Rogiers de Suitre, Alixandres de Vilers, Orlis de Tone,
Diest Roger of Suitre Alexander of Villers Ulric of Tone
 et maintes autres bones genz qui ne sont mie retrait ou livre.
and many other good people who not are at-all related in-the book

The Siege of Zara

VIII

The fleet sails from Venice in October 1202 and on Saint Martin's Eve reaches Zara, whose walls astonish the pilgrims. They break the harbor chain and camp. Stephen of the Perche and others leave for Apulia. Zara offers to surrender to the doge, but the faction that wants the host broken up tells Zara's envoys the pilgrims will not attack, and the Abbot of Vaux forbids the assault in the pope's name. The barons keep faith with the doge, and after five days of bombardment and mining Zara asks again for the terms it refused.

75 Adonc furent departies les nés et li vissier par les barons.

Then were divided the ships and the horse-transporters among the barons

Ha! Diex, tant bon destrier i ot mis! Et quant les nés

Ab God so-many good chargers there was put And when the ships

furent chargies d'armes et de viandes et de chevaliers et de

were laden with-arms and with victuals and with knights and with

serjanz, et li escu furent portendu environ des borz et des

sergeants and the shields were bung around of-the gunwales and of-the

chastials des nés, et les banieres dont il avoit tant de belles.

castles of-the ships and the banners whereof there were so-many of fair-ones

76 Et sachiez que il porterent es nés de perieres et de

And know that they carried in-the ships of petreries and of

mangoniex plus de trois cenx, et toz les engins qui ont

mangonels more than three hundred and all the engines which have

mestier à vile prendre, à grant plenté. Ne onques plus bels

use for town to-take in great plenty Nor ever more fair

estores ne parti de nul port; et ce fu as octaves de

fleet not departed from any port and this was at-the octaves of

la feste saint Remi en l'an de l'incarnation Jesu-Crist

the feast (of-)saint Remi in the-year of the-incarnation (of-)Jesus-Christ

mil deus cenz anz et deus. Ensi partirent del port
thousand two hundred years and two Thus they-departed from-the port
 de Venise con vos avez oï.

of Venice as you have heard

La veille de la saint Martin vindrent devant Jadres en 77

The eve of the saint Martin they-came before Zara in
 Esclavonie, et virent la cité fermée de halz murs et de haltes
Slavonia and saw the city enclosed with high walls and with high
 torz; et por noiant demandesiez plus bele, ne plus fort, ne plus

towers and for nothing you-would-seek more fair nor more strong nor more
 riche. Et quant li perelin la virent, il se merveillerent
rich And when the pilgrims it saw they themselves marveled

mult, et distrent li un as autres: «Coment porroit estre
much and said the ones to-the others How could be
 prise tels ville par force, se Diex meismes nel fait?»

taken such town by force if God himself not-it does

Les premieres nés qui vindrent devant la ville aancrerent, 78

The first ships which came before the town anchored

et atendirent les autres. Et al maitin fist mult bel jor
and awaited the others And at-the morning made very fair day

et mult cler, et vinrent les galies totes et li vissier
and very clear and came the galleys all and the horse-transport

et les autres nés qui estoient arriers; et pristrent le port
and the other ships which were behind and took the port

par force, et rompirent la chaaine qui mult ere forz et
by force and broke the chain which very was strong and

bien atornée; et descendirent à terre, si que li porz fu
well arrayed and went-down to land so that the port was

entr'aus et la ville. Lor veissiez maint chevalier et maint
between-them and the town Then you-might-see many-a knight and many-a

serjant issir des nés, et maint bon destrier traire des

sergeant come-out of-the ships and many-a good charger drawn from-the

vissiers, et maint riche tré et maint paveilon. Ensi se
horse-transport and many-a rich tent and many-a pavilion Thus itself
 loja l'oz, et fu Jadres assegie le jor de la saint Martin.
lodged the-host and was Zara besieged the day of the saint Martin

79 A cele foiz ne furent mie venu tuit li baron; car encore n'ere
At that time not were at-all come all the barons for still not-was
 mie venuz li marchis de Monferat qui ere remés arriere por
at-all come the marquis of Montferrat who was remained behind for
 afaire que il avoit. Estenes del Perche fu remés malades en
business that he had Stephen of-the Perche was remained sick in
 Venise, et Mahius de Monmorenci; et quant il furent gari,
Venice and Matthew of Montmorency and when they were cured
 si s'en vint Mahius de Monmorenci après l'ost à Jadres.

so himself-thence came Matthew of Montmorency after the-host to Zara
 Mais Estenes del Perche ne le fist mie si bien; quar il guerpi
But Stephen of-the Perche not it did at-all so well for he forsook
 l'ost, et s'en ala en Puille sejourner. Avec lui s'en ala
the-host and himself-thence went into Apulia to-sojourn With him himself-thence went
 Rotres de Monfort, et Ive de la Jaille, et maint autre qui mult
Rotrou of Montfort and Ivo of the Jaille and many another who much
 en furent blasmé, et passerent au passage de marz en Surie.
thereof were blamed and crossed at-the passage of March into Syria

80 L'endemain de la saint Martin issirent de cels de Jadres, et
The-next-day of the saint Martin came-out of those of Zara and
 vindrent parler al duc de Venise qui ere en son paveillon,
came to-speak to-the doge of Venice who was in his pavilion
 et li distrent que il li randroient la cité et totes les
and to-him said that they to-him would-render the city and all the
 lor choses, sals lor cors, en sa merci. Et li dux dist qu'il
their things save their bodies at his mercy And the doge said that-be

n'enprendroit mie cestui plait ne autre, se par le conseil non
not-would-undertake at-all this bargain nor other except by the counsel not
 as contes et as barons, et qu'il en iroit à els parler.
of-the counts and of-the barons and that-be thence would-go to them to-speak
 Endementiers que il ala parler as contes et as barons, 81
While that he went to-speak to-the counts and to-the barons
 icele partie dont vos avez oï arrieres, qui voloit l'ost
that party of-which you have heard before which wished the-host
 depecier, parlerent as messages et lor distrent: «Porquoi
to-break-up spoke to-the envoys and to-them said Why
 volez-vos rendre vostre cité? Li pelerin ne vos assailiront
will-you render your city The pilgrims not you will-assail
 mie, ne d'aus n'avez-vos garde. Se vos vos poez defendre
at-all nor of-them not-have-you care If you yourselves can defend
 des Venisiens, dont estes-vos quite.» Et ensi pristrent un
from-the Venetians then are-you quit And thus they-took one
 d'aus meismes qui avoit nom Roberz de Bove, qui ala as
of-them themselves who had name Robert of Boves who went to-the
 murs de la ville et lor dist ce meismes. Ensi rentrerent
walls of the town and to-them said this same Thus went-back-in
 li message en la vile, et fu li plais remés.
the envoys into the town and was the bargain left-off
 Li dux de Venise, con il vint as contes et as barons, si 82
The doge of Venice when he came to-the counts and to-the barons so
 lor dist: «Seignor, ensi me voelent cil de là dedenz rendre
to-them said Lords thus me wish those of there within to-render
 la cité, sals lor cors, à ma merci, ne je n'enprendroie cestui
the city save their bodies at my mercy nor I not-would-undertake this
 plait ne autre, se par vostre conseil non.» Et li baron
bargain nor other except by your counsel not And the barons
 li respondirent: «Sire, nos vos loons que vos le preigneiz,
to-him answered Lord we you advise that you it take

et si le vos prions.» Et il dist que il le feroit; et il
and so it you we-pray And he said that he it would-do and they
 s'en tornerent tuit ensemble al paveillon le duc
themselves-thence turned all together to-the pavilion (of-)the doge
 por le plait prendre; et troverent que li message s'en
for the bargain to-take and found that the envoys themselves-thence
 furent alé par le conseil à cels qui voloient l'ost depecier.
were gone by the counsel of those who wished the-host to-break-up

- 83 Et dont se dreça uns abes de Vals de l'ordre de Cistials,
And then himself raised an abbot of Vaux of the-order of Citeaux
 et lor dist: «Seignor, je vos deffent, de par l'Apostole
and to-them said Lords I you forbid on behalf-of the-Pope
 de Rome, que vos ne assailliez ceste cité; car ele est de
of Rome that you — assail this city for it is of
 crestiens, et vos iestes perelin.» Et quant ce oï li dux,
Christians and you are pilgrims And when this heard the doge
 si fu mult iriez et destroiz, et dist as contes et as
so was-he very angry and distressed and said to-the counts and to-the
 barons: «Seignor, je avoie de ceste vile plait à ma volonté, et
barons Lords I had of this town bargain at my will and
 vostre gent le m'ont tolu; et vos m'aviez convent que vos
your people it from-me-have taken and you me-had covenant that you
 la m'aideriez à conquerre, et je vos semon que vos le façoiz.»
it me-would-help to conquer and I you summon that you it do

- 84 Maintenant li conte et li baron parlerent ensemble, et
At-once the counts and the barons spoke together and
 cil qui à la lor partie se tenoient, et distrent: «Mult
those who to the their party themselves held and said Very
 ont fait grant oltrage cil qui ont cest plait desfait, et il
have done great outrage those who have this bargain undone and there
 ne fu onques jorz que il ne meissent paine à ceste ost
not was ever day that they not should-put pains to this host

depecier. Or somes nos honi, se nos ne l'aidons à prendre.»

to-break-up Now are we shamed if we not it-help to take

Et il vienent al duc, et li dient: «Sire, nos le vos

And they come to-the duke and to-him say Lord we it for-you

aiderons à prendre por mal de cels qui le vuelent destorner.»

will-help to take for ill of those who it wish to-turn-aside

Ensi fu li consels pris; et al matin s'alerent logier 85

Thus was the counsel taken and at-the morning themselves-went to-lodge

devant les portes de la ville; et si drecierent lor perrieres

before the gates of the town and so raised their petrarries

et lor mangonials, et lor autres engins dont il avoient

and their mangonels and their other engines whereof they had

assez; et devers la mer drecierent les eschieles sor les

plenty and toward the sea raised the ladders on the

nés. Lor comencierent à jeter les perrieres as murs de

ships Then began to throw the petrarries at-the walls of

la ville et as tors. Ensi dura cil asals bien par cinq

the town and at-the towers Thus lasted that assault well for five

jorz; et lor si mistrent lor trencheors à une tour, et

days and then so they-put their sappers to a tower and

cil comencierent à trenchier le mur. Et quant cil dedenz

those began to cut the wall And when those within

virent ce, si quistrent plait tot atretel con il l'avoient

saw this so sought bargain all such as they it-had

refusé par le conseil à cels qui l'ost voloient depecier.

refused by the counsel of those who the-host wished to-break-up

Winter at Zara and the Offer of Alexius

IX

Zara surrenders and is divided between the Venetians and the French for the winter. Three days later a street fight between them nearly destroys the host, and Giles of Landas is killed before a week's labor makes peace. Boniface arrives, and the envoys from Philip of Germany bring young Alexius' offer: Greek obedience to Rome, two hundred thousand marks, victuals for the host, ten thousand men for a year against Babylon, and five hundred knights kept overseas for his life.

- 86 Ensi fu la vile rendue en la merci le duc de Venise, sals
Thus was the town rendered at the mercy (of-)the doge of Venice save
lor cors. Et lors vint li dux as contes et as barons,
their bodies And then came the doge to-the counts and to-the barons
et lor dist: «Seignor, nos avons ceste vile conquise, par
and to-them said Lords we have this town conquered by
la Dieu grace et par la vostre. Il est yverz entrez, et nos
the God's grace and by the yours It is winter entered and we
ne poons mais movoir de ci tresque à la Pasque; quar nos
not can more set-out from here until to the Easter for we
ne troveriens mie marchié en autre leu, et ceste vile si est
not would-find at-all market in other place and this town so is
mult riche et mult bien garnie de toz biens. Si la partirons
very rich and very well furnished with all goods So it we-will-divide
par mi: si en prendromes la moitié, et vos l'autre.»
by half so thereof we-will-take the half and you the-other
- 87 Ensi com il fu devisé, si fu fait. Li Venicien si orent la partie
Thus as it was devised so it-was done The Venetians so had the part
devers le port, où les nés estoient; et li François orent l'autre.
toward the port where the ships were and the French had the-other

Lors furent li ostel departi à chascun endroit soi, tel con

Then were the lodgings allotted to each for himself such as

il afferi; si se desloja l'os et vindrent herbergier en la vile.

it befitted so itself dislodged the-host and came to-lodge in the town

Et cum il furent tuit herbergié, al tierz jor après, si 88

And when they were all lodged at-the third day after so

avint une mult granz mesaventure en l'ost, endroit hore

happened a very great mischance in the-host about hour

de vespres; que une meslée comença des Venisiens et des

of vespers for a brawl began of-the Venetians and of-the

François, mult granz et mult fiere; et corurent as armes

French very great and very fierce and they-ran to-the arms

de totes parz. Et fu si granz la meslée, que poi i ot

from all sides And was so great the brawl that few there were

des rues où il n'eust grant estor d'espées et de lances et

of-the streets where it not-had great fight of-swords and of lances and

d'arbalestes et de darz; et mult i ot genz navrez et morz.

of-crossbows and of darts and many there were people wounded and dead

Mais li Venisien ne porent mie l'estor endurer, si comencierent 89

But the Venetians not could at-all the-fight endure so began

mult à perdre. Et li preudome qui ne voloient mie le mal,

much to lose And the worthy-men who not wished at-all the ill

vindrent tot armé à la meslée, et comencierent à dessevrer. Et

came all armed to the brawl and began to part And

cum il l'avoient dessevré en un leu, lors recomençoit en un

when they it-had parted in one place then it-began-again in an

altre. Issi dura, trosque à grant piece de la nuit; et à grant

other Thus it-lasting until to great part of the night and with great

travail et à grant martire le departirent tote-voie. Et sachiez

labor and with great torment it they-parted nevertheless And know

que ce fu la plus granz dolors qui onques avenist en ost; et par
that this was the most great sorrow that ever happened in host and by
 poi que l'os ne fu tote perdue. Mais Diex nel volt mie soffrir.

little that the-host — was all lost But God not-it wished at-all to-suffer

- 90 Mult i ot grant damage d'ambedeus parz. Là si fu
Much there was great damage from-both sides There so was
 morz uns hauz hom de Flandres qui avoit nom Giles de
dead a high man of Flanders who had name Giles of
 Landas; et fu feruz parmi l'uel, et de ce cop fu morz
Landas and was struck through the-eye and of this blow was dead
 à la mellée, et maint autre dont il ne fu mie si granz
in the brawl and many another of-whom there not was at-all so great
 parole. Lors orent li dux de Venise et li baron grant
talk Then had the doge of Venice and the barons great
 travail, tote cele semaine, de faire pais de cele mellée; et
labor all that week to make peace of that brawl and
 tant i travaillerent que pais en fu, Dieu merci!
so-much there labored that peace thereof was God's mercy

- 91 Après cele quinzaine vint li marchis Bonifaces de Monferrat,
After that fortnight came the marquis Boniface of Montferrat
 qui n'ere mie encores venuz, et Mahius de Monmorenci,
who not-was at-all yet come and Matthew of Montmorency
 et Pierres de Braiecuel, et maint autre prodome. Et après
and Peter of Bracieux and many another worthy-man And after
 une autre quinzaine, revindrent li message d'Alemaigne qui
an other fortnight came-back the envoys of-Germany who
 estoient al roi Phelippe et al valet de Costantinople.
were to-the king Philip and to-the youth of Constantinople
 Et assemblerent li baron et li dux de Venise en un palais
And assembled the barons and the doge of Venice in a palace
 où li dux ere à ostel. Et lors parlerent li message et
where the doge was at lodging And then spoke the envoys and

distrent: «Seignor, li rois Phelippes nos envoie à vos, et li
said Lords the king Philip us sends to you and the
 fils l'empereor de Constantinople, qui freres sa fame est.
son (of-)the-emperor of Constantinople who brother (of-)his wife is
 «Seignor, fait li rois, je vos envoie le frere ma fame; 92
Lords says the king I to-you will-send the brother (of-)my wife
 si le met en la Dieu main (qui le gart de mort!) et
so him I-put in the God's hand who him keep from death and
 en la vostre. Por ce que vos alez por Dieu et por droit
in the yours For this that you go for God and for right
 et por justise, si devez à cels qui sont desherité à tort
and for justice so you-ought to those who are disinherited with wrong
 rendre lor heritages, se vos poez. Et si vos fera la
to-render their heritages if you can And so to-you he-will-make the
 plus haute convenance qui onques fust faite à gent, et
most high covenant that ever was made to people and
 la plus riche aïe à la Terre d'oltremer conquerre.
the most rich help to the Land of-overseas to-conquer
 «Tot premierement, se Diex done que vos le remetez en son 93
All first if God grants that you him restore in his
 heritage, il metra tot l'empire de Romanie à la obediencia de
heritage he will-put all the-empire of Romania to the obedience of
 Rome, dont ele ere partie pieça. Après il set que vos avez
Rome whence it was parted long-since Next he knows that you have
 mis le vostre, et que vos iestes povre; si vos donra deus
spent the yours and that you are poor so to-you he-will-give two
 cent mil mars d'argent, et viande à toz cels de l'ost, à
hundred thousand marks of-silver and victuals to all those of the-host to
 petiz et à granz. Et il ses cors ira avec vos en la terre de
small and to great And he his body will-go with you into the land of
 Babiloine, ou envoie, se vos cuidiez que mielz sera, à toz
Babylon or will-send if you think that better it-will-be with all

dix mil homes à sa despense. Et cest servise vos fera par
ten thousand men at his expense And this service to-you he-will-do for
 un an; et à toz les jorz de sa vie tendra cinq cens chevaliers
one year and at all the days of his life will-keep five hundred knights
 en la Terre d'oltremer al suen, qui garderont la Terre.

in the Land of-overseas at-the his-own who will-guard the Land

94 «Seignor, de ce avons-nos plain pooir, font li message,

Lords of this have-we full power say the envoys

d'asseurer ceste convenance se vos la volez asseurer devers

to-confirm this covenant if you it wish to-confirm on-the-side-of

vos. Et sachiez que si halte convenance ne fu onques mais

you And know that so high covenant not was ever before

offerte à gent, ne n'a mie grant talant de conquerre, qui

offered to people nor not-has at-all great desire to conquer who

cesti refusera.» Et il dient que il en parleront; et

this-one will-refuse And they say that they thereof will-speak and

fu pris uns parlemenz à l'endemain; et quant il furent

was taken a parliament at the-next-day and when they were

ensemble, si lor fu ceste parole mostrée.

together so to-them was this speech set-forth

Discord in the Host

X

The Abbot of Vaux and his party refuse to fight Christians and demand Syria; the other party answers that Egypt or Greece is the road to the Holy Land, and the Abbot of Loos preaches the covenant. Boniface, Baldwin, Louis, and Hugh of Saint-Pol swear, only twelve Frenchmen in all. Through the winter deserters drown or are killed in Slavonia; Renaud of Montmirail goes to Syria sworn to return and never does, and the Flemish fleet sails from Marseilles for Syria instead of Modon.

Là ot parlé en maint endroit; et parla l'abes de Vals de 95
There was spoken in many-a place and spoke the-abbot of Vaux of
l'ordre de Cystiaus, et cele partie qui voloit l'ost depecier;
the-order of Citeaux and that party which wished the-host to-break-up
et distrent qu'il ne s'i accorderoient mie; que
and they-said that-they not themselves-thereto would-agree at-all for
ce ere sor crestiens, et il n'estoient mie por ce meu,
this was against Christians and they not-were at-all for this set-out
ainz voloient aler en Surie.

but wished to-go into Syria

Et l'autre partie lor respondi: «Bel seignor, en Surie ne 96
And the-other party to-them answered Fair lords in Syria not
poez vos rien faire; et si le verroiz bien à cels meismes
can you anything do and so it you-will-see well by those same
qui nos ont deguerpiz, et sont alé as autres porz. Et
who us have forsaken and are gone to-the other ports And
sachez que par la terre de Babiloine ou par Grece iert
know that by the land of Babylon or by Greece will-be
recovrée la Terre d'oltremer, s'ele jamais est recovrée. Et se
recovered the Land of-overseas if-it ever is recovered And if
nos refusons ceste convenance, nos somes honi à toz jorz.»
we refuse this covenant we are shamed for all days

97 Ensi ere l'oz en discorde con vous oez. Et ne vos
Thus was the-host in discord as you hear And not yourselves
 merveilliez mie se la laie genz ere en discorde; que li blanc
marvel at-all if the lay people was in discord for the white
 moine de l'ordre de Cistiaus erent altressi en discorde en
monks of the-order of Citeaux were likewise in discord in
 l'ost. Li abes de Loz, qui mult ere sainz hom et prodom,
the-host The abbot of Loos who very was holy man and worthy-man
 et altre abbé qui à lui se tenoient, prechoient et crioient
and other abbots who to him themselves held preached and cried
 merci à la gent, que il por Dieu tenissent l'ost ensamble,
mercy to the people that they for God should-hold the-host together
 et que il feissent ceste convenance; «car ce est la chose par
and that they should-make this covenant for this is the thing by
 quoi on puet mielz recovrer la Terre d'oltremer.» Et l'abbes
which one can better recover the Land of-overseas And the-abbot
 de Vaus, et cil qui à lui se tenoient, repreecheoient
of Vaux and those who to him themselves held preached-in-turn
 mult sovent, et disoient que tot ce ere mals; mais alassent
very often and said that all this was evil but they-should-go
 en la terre de Surie, et feissent ce que il porroient.
into the land of Syria and should-do this that they could

98 Lors vint li marchis Bonifaces de Monferrat, et Baudoins li
Then came the marquis Boniface of Montferrat and Baldwin the
 cuens de Flandres et de Hennaut, et li cuens Loeys, et li
count of Flanders and of Hainault and the count Louis and the
 cuens Hues de Saint-Pol, et cil qui à elx se tenoient; et
count Hugh of Saint-Pol and those who to them themselves held and
 distrent que il feroient ceste convenance; que il seroient honi
said that they would-make this covenant for they would-be shamed
 se il la refusoient. Ensi s'en alerent à l'ostel le duc,
if they it refused Thus themselves-thence went to the-lodging (of-)the doge

et furent mandé li més; et asseuerent la convenance, si con
and were summoned the envoys and confirmed the covenant so as
 vos l'avez oï arriere, par sairemenz et par chartres pendanz.

you it-have heard before by oaths and by charters sealed

Et tant vos retrait li livres que il ne furent que doze qui 99

And so-much to-you relates the book that there not were but twelve who

les sairemenz jurerent de la partie des François; ne plus n'en

the oaths swore of the party of-the French nor more not-thereof

pooient avoir. De cels si fu li uns li marchis de Monferrat,

they-could have Of those so was the one the marquis of Montferrat

li cuens Baudoins de Flandres, li cuens Loeys de Blois et

the count Baldwin of Flanders the count Louis of Blois and

de Chartein, et li cuens de Saint-Pol, et huit altre qui à elx

of Chartres and the count of Saint-Pol and eight others who to them

se tenoient. Ensi fu la convenance faite et les chartres

themselves held Thus was the covenant made and the charters

baillies, et mis li termes quant li vallez de Costantinoble

handed and set the term when the youth of Constantinople

vendroit; et ce fu à la quinzaine de Pasques après.

would-come and this was at the fortnight of Easter after

Ensi sejourna l'oz des François à Jadres tot cel yver, contre 100

Thus sojourned the-host of-the French at Zara all that winter against

le roi de Hongrie. Et sachiez que li cuer des genz ne furent

the king of Hungary And know that the hearts of-the people not were

mie en pais; que l'une des parties se travailla à ce que li oz

at-all in peace for the-one of-the parties itself labored at this that the host

se departist, et li autre à ce qu'ele se tenist ensemble.

itself should-break-up and the other at this that-it itself should-hold together

Maint s'en emblerent des menues genz es nés des 101

Many themselves-thence stole-away of-the lesser people in-the ships of-the

mercheanz. En une nef s'en emblerent bien cinq cenx; si

merchants In one ship themselves-thence stole-away well five hundred so

noierent tuit et furent perdu. Une altre compaignie s'en
drowned all and were lost An other company themselves-thence
 embla par terre, et si s'en cuida aler par Esclavonie; et li
stole-away by land and so itself-thence thought to-go through Slavonia and the
 paisant de la terre les assaillirent et en ocistrent assez; et li
peasants of the land them assailed and of-them killed plenty and the
 altre s'en reparièrent fuiant arriere en l'ost. Ensi s'en
others themselves-thence returned fleeing back into the-host Thus itself-thence
 aloit li oz forment en amenuissant chascun jor. En cel termine,
went the host greatly in dwindling each day In that time
 se travailla tant uns halz hom de l'ost qui ere d'Alemaigne,
himself labored so-much a high man of the-host who was of-Germany
 qui avoit non Garniers de Borlande, que il s'en ala en une
who had name Garnier of Borland that he himself-thence went in a
 nef de marcheanz, et guerpì l'ost; dont il reçut grant blasme.
ship of merchants and forsook the-host whereof he received great blame

102 Après ne tarda gaires que uns hauz ber de France qui ot à
After not delayed much that a high baron of France who had as
 non Renauz de Monmirail pria tant, par l'aïe le conte
name Renaud of Montmirail begged so-much by the-help (of-)the count
 Loeys, que il fu envoiez en Surie en message en une des nés de
Louis that he was sent into Syria in message in one of-the ships of
 l'estoire; et si jura sor sains de son poing destre, et il et tuit
the-fleet and so he-swore on relics of his hand right and he and all
 li chevalier qui avec lui alerent, que dedenz la quinzaine que
the knights who with him went that within the fortnight that
 il seroient arivé en Surie, et auroient fait lor message, que il
they would-be arrived in Syria and would-have done their message that they
 repaireroient arrieres en l'ost. Par ceste convenance se departi
would-return back into the-host By this covenant himself departed
 de l'ost, et avec lui Hervis del Castel ses niés, Guillaume li
from the-host and with him Hervé of-the Châtel his nephew William the

visdames de Chartres, Gefrois de Belmont, Johans de Froeville,
vidame of Chartres Geoffrey of Beaumont John of Frouville
 Pierres ses freres, et maint altre. Et li sairement que il firent
Peter his brother and many another And the oaths that they made
 ne furent mie bien tenu; que il ne repairierent pas en l'ost.
not were at-all well kept for they not returned at-all into the-host
 Lors revint une novelle en l'ost qui fu mult volentiers oïe: 103
Then came-back a news into the-host which was very willingly heard
 que li estoires de Flandres, dont vos avez oï arrieres, ere
that the fleet of Flanders of-which you have heard before was
 arivez à Marseille. Et Johans de Neele chastelains de Bruges
arrived at Marseilles And John of Nesle castellan of Bruges
 qui ere chevetaines de cel ost, et Tierris qui fu filz le
who was captain of that host and Thierry who was son (of-)the
 conte Phelippe de Flandres, et Nicholes de Mailli, manderent
count Philip of Flanders and Nicholas of Mailly sent-word-to
 le conte de Flandres lor seignor que il ivernoient à Marseille,
the count of Flanders their lord that they were-wintering at Marseilles
 et que il lor mandast sa volenté; que il feroient ce
and that he to-them should-send-word his will for they would-do this
 que il lor manderoit. Et il lor manda, par le conseil
that he to-them would-send-word And he to-them sent-word by the counsel
 del duc de Venise et des autres barons, que il meussent
of-the doge of Venice and of-the other barons that they should-set-out
 à l'issue de marz, et venissent encontre lui au port de
at the-issue of March and should-come to-meet him to-the port of
 Mouçon en Romanie. Halas! il l'attendirent si malvaisement,
Modon in Romania Alas they him-awaited so badly
 que onques covent ne lor tindrent; ainz s'en alerent
that ever covenant not to-them they-kept but themselves-thence went
 en Surie, où il savoient que il ne feroient nul exploit.
into Syria where they knew that they not would-do any achievement

Absolution from Rome and the Voyage to Corfu

XI

The barons send to Rome for absolution over Zara. Robert of Boves betrays the mission, but the pope absolves the host, bids it hold together, and gives the Bishop of Soissons and John of Noyon power to bind and loose. The Venetians raze Zara. Simon of Montfort, the Abbot of Vaux, and Enguerrand of Boves go over to the King of Hungary. The fleet sails ahead to Corfu; young Alexius reaches the doge at Zara, is received at Durazzo, and is welcomed at Corfu with great honor.

104 Or poez savoir, seignor, que se Diex ne amast ceste ost,
Now you-can know lords that if God not had-loved this host
qu'ele ne peust mie tenir ensemble, à ce que tant de
that-it not could at-all hold together for this that so-many of
gent li queroient mal.

people it sought ill

105 Lors parlerent li baron ensemble, si distrent qu'il envoieroient
Then spoke the barons together so said that-they would-send
à Rome à l'apostoile, porce que il lor savoit mal gré de la
to Rome to the-pope because that he to-them knew ill will of the
prise de Jadres; et eslistrent messages deus chevaliers et deus
taking of Zara and they-chose envoys two knights and two
clers, telx qu'il savoient qui bon fussent à cest message. Des
clerks such that-they knew who good would-be for this message Of-the
deus clers, fu li uns Neveles li evesques de Soisons, et maistre
two clerks was the one Nivelon the bishop of Soissons and master
Johans de Noion, qui ere chanceliers le conte Baudoin de
John of Noyon who was chancellor (of-)the count Baldwin of
Flandres; et des chevaliers, fu li uns Johans de Friaize et
Flanders and of-the knights was the one John of Friaize and

Roberz de Bove. Et cil jurerent sor sains loialment que il
Robert of Boves And those swore on relics loyally that they
 feroient le message en bone foi, et que il repairoient à l'ost.

would-do the message in good faith and that they would-return to the-host

Mult le tindrent bien li troi, et li quarz malvaisement; et

Very it held well the three and the fourth badly and

ce fu Roberz de Bove. Car il fist le message al pis qu'il

this was Robert of Boves For he did the message at-the worst that-he

pot, et s'en parjura, et s'en ala en Surie après les

could and himself-thereof forswore and himself-thence went into Syria after the

autres. Et li autre troi le firent mult bien, et distrent lor

others And the other three it did very well and said their

message ensi con manderent li baron, et distrent à l'apostoile:

message thus as commanded the barons and said to the-pope

«Li baron merci vos crient de la prise de Jadres; que il le

The barons mercy you cry of the taking of Zara for they it

fistrent comme cil qui mielz ne pooient faire, por la defaute

did as those who better not could do for the default

de cels qui estoient alé aus autres porz, et que autrement

of those who were gone to-the other ports and that otherwise

ne pooient tenir l'ost ensemble. Et sor ce mandent à

not they-could hold the-host together And upon this they-send-word to

vos comme à lor bon pere, que vos à lor commandoiz

you as to their good father that you to them command

vostre commandement que il sont prest de faire.»

your commandment which they are ready to do

Et li apostoiles dist aus messages qu'il savoit bien que, par

And the pope said to-the envoys that-he knew well that by

la defaute des autres, lor couvint grant meschief à faire;

the default of-the others to-them behooved great mischief to do

si en ot grant pitié. Et lors manda as barons et as

so thereof he-had great pity And then he-sent to-the barons and to-the

106

107

pelerins salut, et qu'il les asolt comme ses filz, et lor
pilgrims greeting and that-he them absolved as his sons and them
 commandoit et prioit que il tenissent l'ost ensemble; car
commanded and prayed that they should-hold the-host together for
 il savoit bien que sans cele ost ne pooit li servises Dieu
he knew well that without that host not could the service (of-)God
 estre fais. Et dona plain pooir à Nevelon l'evesque de
be done And he-gave full power to Nivelon the-bishop of
 Soisons et à maistre Johan de Noion, de lier et de deslier
Soissons and to master John of Noyon to bind and to loose
 les pelerins trosqu'adonc que li cardonax vendroit en l'ost.

the pilgrims until-then that the cardinal would-come into the-host
 108 Ensi fu jà del tens passé tant que li quaresmes fu;
Thus was already of-the time passed so-much that the Lent was
 et atorerent lor navile por movoir à la Pasque. Quant
and they-prepared their fleet for to-set-out at the Easter When
 les nés furent chargies, l'endemain de la Pasque, si se
the ships were laden the-next-day of the Easter so themselves
 logierent li pelerin fors de la vile sor le port; et li
lodged the pilgrims outside of the town on the port and the
 Venisien firent abatre la vile et les tors et les murs.

Venetians had pulled-down the town and the towers and the walls
 109 Et dont avint une aventure dont mult pesa à cels de l'ost;
And then happened an adventure whereof much weighed on those of the-host
 que uns des halz barons de l'ost, qui avoit nom Symons de
that one of-the high barons of the-host who had name Simon of
 Monfort, ot fait son plait al roi de Ungrie qui anemis
Montfort had made his bargain with-the king of Hungary who enemy
 estoit à cels de l'ost; et il s'en ala à lui et guerpi
was to those of the-host and he himself-thence went to him and forsook
 l'ost. Avec lui ala Guis de Monfort ses freres, Symons de
the-host With him went Guy of Montfort his brother Simon of

Neafle, et Roberz Malvoisins, et Druis de Cresonessart,
Neauphle and Robert Mauvoisin and Dreux of Cressonsacq
 et l'abes de Vals qui ere moines de l'ordre de Cystiaus,
and the-abbot of Vaux who was monk of the-order of Cîteaux
 et maint autre. Et ne tarda guaires après, que s'en
and many another And not delayed much after that himself-thence
 ala uns autres halz hom de l'ost au roi de Ungrie, qui
went an oter high man of the-host to-the king of Hungary who
 Engelranz de Boves ere apelez, et Hues ses freres, et les
Enguerrand of Boves was called and Hugh his brother and the
 genz de lor país ce que il en porent mener.
people of their country this that they thereof could lead

Ensi partirent cil de l'ost con vos avez oï: mult fu 110
Thus departed those from the-host as you have heard very was
 granz domages à l'ost, et granz honte à cels qui le
great damage to the-host and great shame to those who it
 firent. Lors comencierent à movoir les nés et li vissier;
did Then began to set-out the sbips and the horse-transport
 et fu devisé que il prendroient port à Corfol, une yslé
and was devised that they would-take port at Corfu an isle
 en Romenie, et li premier attendroient les darraiens tant
in Romania and the first would-await the last until
 qu'il seroient ensemble; et il si fistrent.
that-they would-be together and they so did

Ainz que li dux ne li marchis partissent del port de 111
Before that the doge nor the marquis should-depart from-the port of
 Jadres, ne les galies, vint Alexis li fils l'empereor Sursac de
Zara nor the galleys came Alexius the son (of-)the-emperor Sursac of
 Costantinople. Et l'i envia li rois Phelippes d'Alemaigne;
Constantinople And him-there sent the king Philip of-Germany
 et fu receuz à mult grant joie et à mult grant honor;
and he-was received with very great joy and with very great honor

et li bailla li dux les galies et les vaissials tant con
and to-him handed the doge the galleys and the vessels so-much as
 lui convint. Et ensi partirent del port de Jadres, et
to-him behooved And thus they-departed from-the port of Zara and
 orent bon vent; et alerent tant que il pristrent port à
had good wind and went so-long that they took port at
 Duraz. Enqui rendirent cil de la terre la ville à lor seignor
Durazzo There rendered those of the land the town to their lord
 (quant il le virent) mult volentiers, et li firent fealté.
when they him saw very willingly and to-him did fealty

- 112 Et d'enqui s'en partirent et vindrent à Corfol, et
And from-there themselves-thence departed and came to Corfu and
 troverent l'ost qui ere logie devant la vile; et avoient tenduz
found the-host which was lodged before the town and they-had pitched
 trez et paveillons, et les chevaus traiz des vissiers
tents and pavilions and the horses drawn from-the horse-transport
 por refraichir. Et cum il oïrent que li filz l'empereor
for to-refresh And when they heard that the son (of-)the-emperor
 de Constantinople ere arrivez al port, si veissiez maint
of Constantinople was arrived at-the port so you-might-see many-a
 bon chevalier et maint bon serjant aler encontre, et mener
good knight and many-a good sergeant go to-meet and lead
 maint bel destrier. Ensi le recurent à mult grant joie et
many-a fair charger Thus him they-received with very great joy and
 à mult grant honor. Et il fist son tré tendre enmi l'ost;
with very great honor And he had his tent pitched amid the-host
 et li marchis de Monferrat le suen delez, en cui garde li
and the marquis of Montferrat the his-own beside in whose keeping the
 rois Phelippes l'avoit commandé, qui sa seror avoit à fame.
king Philip him-had commended who his sister had to wife

The Barons Hold the Host Together

XII

On Corfu more than half the host plots to stay behind and cross to Brindisi. The leaders, with young Alexius and the clergy, fall weeping at the malcontents' feet, and these agree to stay until Michaelmas if promised ships for Syria within a fortnight of asking. On Pentecost Eve 1203 the fleet sails, a sight Villehardouin swears was never equaled. Off Cape Malea a sergeant quits a ship returning from Syria to join the fleet. Andros submits, Guy of Coucy dies at sea, and the host gathers at Abydos.

Ensi sejournerent en cele yse trois semaines, qui mult ere 113
Thus they-sojourned in that isle three weeks which very was
 riche et plenteuroise. Et dedenz cel sejour lor avint une
rich and plentiful And within that sojourn to-them happened a
 mesaventure qui fu pesme et dure; que une granz partie de
mischance which was grievous and hard that a great part of
 cels qui voloient l'ost depecier, et qui avoient autrefois esté
those who wished the-host to-break-up and who had formerly been
 encontre l'ost, parlerent ensemble et distrent que cele chose
against the-host spoke together and said that that thing
 lor sembloit estre mult longe et mult perillouse, et que
to-them seemed to-be very long and very perilous and that
 il remanroient en l'isle, et en lairoient l'ost aler; et par
they would-remain in the-isle and thence would-let the-host go and by
 le conduit à cels de Corfol (et quant l'ost en seroit alée),
the safe-conduct of those of Corfu and when the-host thence would-be gone
 envoieroient au conte Gautier de Breine, qui adonc tenoit
they-would-send to-the count Walter of Brienne who then held
 Brandiz, qu'il lor envoiait vaissiaus por aler à Brandiz.
Brindisi that-be to-them should-send vessels for to-go to Brindisi

- 114 Je ne vos puis mie toz cels nomer qui à ceste ouvre faire
I not to-you can at-all all those name who to this work to-do
 furent, mais je vos en nomerai une partie, des plus maistres
were but I to-you thereof will-name a part of-the most master
 chevetains. De cels fu li uns Odes li Champenois de Chamlite,
captains Of those was the one Odo the Champenois of Champlitte
 Jaques d'Avennes, Pierres d'Amiens, Guis li chastelains de Coci,
James of-Avesnes Peter of-Amiens Guy the castellan of Coucy
 Ogiers de Saint-Cheron, Guis de Cappes et Clarembaus ses
Ogier of Saint-Chéron Guy of Chappes and Clarembaud his
 niés, Guillaume d'Aunoi, Pierres Coiseaus, Guis de Pesmes et
nephew William of-Aunoy Peter Coiseau Guy of Pesmes and
 Haimmes ses freres, Guis de Couvelans, Richars de Danpierre,
Aimo his brother Guy of Conflans Richard of Dampierre
 Odes ses freres, et maint autre qui lor avoient creanté par
Odo his brother and many another who to-them had promised from
 derriere qu'il se tenroient à lor partie, qui ne l'osoient
behind that-they themselves would-hold to their party who not it-dared
 mostrer pardevant por la honte; si que li livres tesmoigne bien
show in-front for the shame so that the book testifies well
 que plus de la moitié de l'ost se tenoient à lor acort.
that more than the half of the-host themselves held to their accord
- 115 Et quant ce oït li marchis de Monferat, et li cuens
And when this heard the marquis of Montferrat and the count
 Baudoins de Flandres, et li cuens Loeys, et li cuens de
Baldwin of Flanders and the count Louis and the count of
 Saint-Pol, et li baron qui se tenoient à lor acort, si
Saint-Pol and the barons who themselves held to their accord so
 furent mult esmaié et distrent: «Seignor, nos sommes mal
they-were very dismayed and said Lords we are ill
 bailli. Se ceste gens se partent de nos avec cels qui
served If these people themselves part from us with those who

s'en sunt parti par maintes foiz, nostre os sera failie;

themselves-thence are parted by many times our host will-be failed

et nos ne porons nule conquete faire. Mais alons à els et

and we not will-be-able any conquest to-make But let-us-go to them and

lor cheons as piez, et lor crions merci; que il aient

to-them let-us-fall at-the feet and to-them let-us-cry mercy that they may-have

por Dieu pitié d'els et de nos, et que il ne se

for God pity of-themselves and of us and that they not themselves

honissent, et que il ne nos toillent la rescosse d'oltremer.»

shame and that they not from-us take the rescue of-overseas

Ensi fu li consels acordez; et alerent tuit ensemble en une 116

Thus was the counsel agreed and they-went all together into a

valée où cil tenoient lor parlement, et menerent avec als

valley where those held their parliament and they-led with them

le fil l'empereor de Costantinople, et toz les evesques et toz

the son (of-)the-emperor of Constantinople and all the bishops and all

les abez de l'ost. Et cum il vindrent là, si descendirent à

the abbots of the-host And when they came there so they-dismounted on

pié. Et cil, cum il les virent, si descendirent de lor cheaus

foot And those when they them saw so dismounted from their horses

et alerent encontre. Et li baron lor chéirent as piez,

and went to-meet And the barons to-them fell at-the feet

mult plorant; et distrent que il ne se movroient tresque

much weeping and said that they not themselves would-move until

cil aroient creanté que il ne se movroient d'els.

those would-have promised that they not themselves would-move from-them

Et quant cil virent ce, si orent mult grant pitié et plorerent 117

And when those saw this so they-had very great pity and wept

mult durement quant il virent lor seignors et lor parenz et

very bitterly when they saw their lords and their kinsmen and

lor amis chaoir à lor piez. Si distrent que il en parleroient;

their friends fall at their feet So they-said that they thereof would-speak

et traistrent à une part, et parlerent ensemble. Et la summe
and drew to one side and spoke together And the sum
 de lor conseil fut tels que il seroient encor avec els tresque à
of their counsel was such that they would-be still with them until to
 la saint-Michel, par tel convent que il lor jureroient sor sainz
the Michaelmas by such covenant that they to-them would-swear on relics
 loialment que dès enqui en avant, de quel eure que il les en
loyally that from there on forward of what hour that they them thereof
 semonroient, dedenz les quinze jors que il lor donroient navie
would-summon within the fifteen days that they to-them would-give navy
 à bone foi, sanz mal engin, dont il porroient aler en Surie.
in good faith without ill wile whereby they could go into Syria

118 Ensi fut otroié et juré; et lors ot grant joie par
Thus was-it granted and sworn and then there-was great joy through
 tote l'ost. Et se recueillirent es nés, et li cheval
all the-host And themselves gathered into-the ships and the horses
 furent mis es vissiers.
were put in-the horse-transport

119 Ensi se partirent del port de Corfol la veille de
Thus themselves departed from-the port of Corfu the eve of
 Pentecoste, qui fu mil et deus cens anz et trois après
Pentecost which was thousand and two hundred years and three after
 l'incarnation Nostre-Seignor Jesu Crist. Et enqui furent totes
the-incarnation (of-)Our-Lord Jesus Christ And there were all
 les nés ensemble, et tuit li vissier et totes les galies
the ships together and all the horse-transport and all the galleys
 de l'ost, et assez d'autres nés de marcheanz qui avec aus
of the-host and plenty of-other ships of merchants which with them
 s'erent aroutées. Et li jorz fu bels et clers, et li
themselves-were joined And the day was fair and clear and the
 venz dolz et soés; et il laissent aler les voiles al vent.
wind soft and gentle and they let go the sails to-the wind

Et bien tesmoigne Joffrois li mareschaus de Champaigne, 120

And well testifies Geoffrey the marshal of Champagne
 qui cestre œuvre dita (qui ainc n'i menti de mot à son
who this work dictated who ever not-there lied of word to his
 escient, si con cil qui à toz les conseils fu), que onc si
knowledge so as he who at all the councils was that ever so
 bele chose ne fu vue. Et bien sembloit estoire qui terre
fair thing not was seen And well it-seemed fleet which land
 deust conquerre; que tant que on pooit veoir à oil, ne
ought to-conquer for as-far as one could see with eye not
 pooit-on veoir se voiles non de nés et de vaissiaus, si
could-one see except sails not of ships and of vessels so
 que li cuer des homes s'en esjoïssioient mult.

that the hearts of-the men themselves-thereof rejoiced much

Ensi corurent par mer tant que il vindrent à Cademelée, à 121

Thus they-ran by sea so-long that they came to Cape-Malea to
 un trespas qui sor mer siet. Et lors encontrerent deus nés de
a strait which on sea lies And then they-met two ships of
 pelerins et de chevaliers et de serjanz qui repairoient de Surie;
pilgrims and of knights and of sergeants who were-returning from Syria
 et ce estoient de cels qui estoient alé al port de Marseille
and these were of those who were gone to-the port of Marseilles
 passer. Et quant il virent l'estoire si bele et si riche, si orent
to-cross And when they saw the-fleet so fair and so rich so they-had
 tel honte que il ne s'ouserent mostrer. Et li cuens Baudoins
such shame that they not themselves-dared show And the count Baldwin
 de Flandres et de Hennaut envia la barge de sa nef por
of Flanders and of Hainault sent the boat of his ship for
 savoir quels genz ce estoient; et il distrent qu'il estoient.
to-know what people these were and they said who-they were

- 122 Et uns serjanz se lait correr contreval de la nef en la barge,
And a sergeant himself lets slide down from the ship into the boat
 et dist à cels de la nef: «Je vos claim cuite ce qui remaint
and said to those of the ship I to-you declare quit this which remains
 en la nef dou mien; quar je m'en irai avec cez: quar il
in the ship of-the my-own for I myself-thence will-go with these for it
 semble bien que il doivent terre conquerre.» A grant bien fu
seems well that they must land conquer At great good was
 atorné al serjant, et mult fu volentiers en l'ost veuz. Et
reckoned to-the sergeant and very he-was willingly in the-host seen And
 por ce, dit hom que de mil males voies puet-on retorner.
for this says one that from thousand bad roads can-one turn-back
- 123 Ensi corut l'oz trosque à Nigre. Nigre si est une mult bone
Thus ran the-host as-far to Negro Negro so is a very good
 ysle, et une mult bone citez que on appelle Nigrepont. Enqui
isle and a very good city which one calls Negropont There
 si pristrent conseil li baron. Si s'en ala li marchis
so took counsel the barons So himself-thence went the marquis
 Bonifaces de Monferrat et li cuens Baudoins de Flandres
Boniface of Montferrat and the count Baldwin of Flanders
 et de Hennaut, à grant partie de vissiers et de galies,
and of Hainault with great part of horse-transport and of galleys
 avec le fil l'empereor Sursac de Constantinoble, en une ysle
with the son (of-)the-emperor Sursac of Constantinople into an isle
 que on apele Andre, et descendirent à terre. Si s'armerent
which one calls Andros and went-down to land So themselves-armed
 li chevalier et corurent en la terre; et la genz del país
the knights and ran into the land and the people of-the country
 vindrent à merci al fil l'empereor de Constantinoble, et
came to mercy to-the son (of-)the-emperor of Constantinople and
 li donerent tant dou lor que pais firent à lui.
to-him gave so-much of-the theirs that peace they-made with him

Et rentrerent en lor vaissiaus et corrurent par mer. Lors lor 124
And went-back into their vessels and ran by sea Then to-them
 avint uns granz domaiges; que uns halz hom de l'ost, qui avoit
befell a great damage that a high man of the-host who had
 nom Guis li chastelains de Coci, morut et fu gitez en la mer.
name Guy the castellan of Coucy died and was cast into the sea
 Les autres nés qui n'erent mie cele part guenchies, furent 125
The other ships which not-were at-all that way turned were
 entrées en boche d'Avie; et ce est là où li Braz-Saint-Jorge
entered into moubt of-Abydos and tthis is there where the Arm-Saint-George
 chiet en la grant mer. Et corurent contremont le Braz
falls into the great sea And they-ran up the Arm
 tresque à une cité que on apele Avie, qui siet sor le
as-far to a city which one calls Abydos which lies on the
 Braz-Saint-George devers la Turquie, mult bele et mult bien
Arm-Saint-George toward the Turkey very fair and very well
 asise. Et enqui pristrent port et descendirent à terre; et cil
situated And there they-took port and went-down to land and those
 de la cité vindrent encontre els et lor rendirent la vile, si
of the city came to-meet them and to-them rendered the town so
 con cil qui ne s'osoient defendre. Et il si firent mult bien
as those who not themselves-dared defend And they so had very well
 garder, si que cil de la vile n'i perdirent vaillant un denier.
guarded so that those of the town not-there lost worth a penny
 Ensi sejournerent enqui huit jorz por atendre les nés et 126
Thus they-sojourned there eight days for to-await the ships and
 les galies et les vissiers qui estoient encor à venir.
the galleys and the horse-transportes which were still to come
 Et dedenz cel sejour pristrent des blez en la terre, que
And within that sojourn they-took of-the wheats in the land for
 il ere moissons; et il en avoient grant mestier, quar
it was harvest and they thereof had great need for

il en avoient pou. Et dedenz ces huit jors furent venu
they thereof had little And within these eight days were come
 tuit li vaissel et li baron. Et Diex lor dona bon tens.
all the vessels and the barons And God to-them gave good weather

Saint Stephen and the Landing at Chalcedon

XIII

The fleet sails up the Arm of Saint George and on Saint John's Eve anchors at the abbey of Saint Stephen, three leagues from Constantinople, whose walls and palaces make every man tremble. The doge advises taking the islands first for victuals, but God overturns the plan: next morning the fleet sails past the city walls under fire and lands on the Asian shore at Chalcedon, where the host lodges in an imperial palace and gathers the harvest. It then moves to Scutari, and the Emperor Alexius camps opposite.

127 Lors se partirent del port d'Avie tuit ensemble. Si
Then themselves departed from-the port of-Abydos all together So
 peussiez veoir flori le Braz-Saint-Jorge contremont de nés
you-might see flowered the Arm-Saint-George upward with ships
 et de galies et de vissiers; et mult granz mervoille
and with galleys and with horse-transport and very great marvel
 ere la bialtez à regarder. Et ensi corurent contremont le
was the beauty to behold And thus they-ran up the
 Braiz-Saint-Jorge, tant que il vindrent, la veille de la saint
Arm-Saint-George so-far that they came the eve of the saint
 Jehan-Baptiste en juin, à Saint-Estiene, à une abbaïe qui
John-the-Baptist in June to Saint-Stephen to an abbey which
 ere à trois lieues de Costantinoble. Et lors virent tot
was at three leagues from Constantinople And then saw all

à plain Costantinoble cil des nés et des galies et des
in full Constantinople those of-the ships and of-the galleys and of-the
 vissiers; et pristrent port, et aancrerent lor vaissiaus.

horse-transports and took port and anchored their vessels

Or poez savoir que mult esgarderent Costantinoble cil qui 128

Now you-can know that much gazed-at Constantinople those who
 onques mais ne l'avoient veue; que il ne pooient mie cuidier

ever before not it-had seen for they not could at-all believe

que si riche vile peust estre en tot le monde, cum il virent

that so rich town could be in all the world when they saw

ces halz murs et ces riches tours dont ele ere close tot entor

these high walls and these rich towers wherewith it was enclosed all around

à la reonde, et ces riches palais et ces haltes yglises, dont il

in the round and these rich palaces and these high churches of-which it

i avoit tant que nuls nel poist croire, se il ne le veist à

there had so-many that anyone not-it could believe if he not it should-see with

l'oïl, et le lonc et le lé de la vile qui de totes les autres ere

the-eye and the length and the breadth of the town which of all the others was

soveraine. Et sachiez que il n'i ot si hardi cui la chars ne

sovereign And know that it not-there had so bold whose the flesh not

fremist; et ce ne fu mie mervoille; que onques si granz affaires

trembled and this not was at-all marvel for ever so great business

ne fu enpris de nulle gent, puis que li monz fu estorez.

not was undertaken by any people since that the world was established

Lors descendirent à terre li conte et li baron et li dux de 129

Then went-down to land the counts and the barons and the doge of

Venise; et fu li parlemenz ou mostier Saint-Estiene. Là ot

Venice and was the parliament in-the minster Saint-Stephen There was

maint conseil pris et doné. Totes les paroles qui là furent dites

many-a counsel taken and given All the words that there were said

ne vos contera mie li livres; mais la summe del conseil si fu
not to-you will-recount at-all the book but the sum of-the counsel so was
 tiels, que li dux de Venise se dreça en estant et lor dist:

such that the doge of Venice himself raised in standing and to-them said
 130 «Seignor, je sai plus del convine de cest païs que vos
Lords I know more of-the state of this country than you
 ne faites, car altre foiz i ai esté. Vos avez le plus
— do for other times there I-have been You have the most
 grant afaire et le plus perillos entrepris que onques genz
great business and the most perilous undertaken that ever people
 entrepreissent; por ce si covendroit que on ovrast sagement.
undertook for this so it-would-behoove that one should-work wisely

Sachiez, se nos alons à la terre ferme, la terre est granz et
Know if we go to the land firm the land is great and
 large, et nostre gent sont povre et diseteus de la viande. Si
wide and our people are poor and needy of the victuals So
 s'espandront par la terre por querre la viande; et il i
themselves-will-spread through the land for to-see the victuals and it there
 a mult grant plenté de la gent el païs; si ne porriens tot
has very great plenty of the people in-the country so not we-could all
 garder que nos n'en perdissiens. Et nos n'avons mestier de
guard that we not-thereof should-lose And we not-have need to
 perdre; que mult avons poi de gent à ce que nos volons faire.
lose for very we-have few of people for this that we wish to-do

131 «Il a isles ci près, que vos poez veoir de ci, qui sont
It has isles here near which you can see from here which are
 habitées de genz, et laborées de blez et de viandes et
inhabited with people and tilled with wheats and with victuals and
 d'autres biens. Alons iqui prendre port, et recuillons les
with-other goods Let-us-go there to-take port and let-us-gather the
 blez et les viandes del païs; et quand nos aurons les
wheats and the victuals of-the country and when we shall-have the

viandes recueillies, alomes devant la vile, et faisons ce que
victuals gathered let-us-go before the town and let-us-do this that
 Nostre Sires aura porveu. Quar plus seurement guerroe
Our Lord will-have provided For more surely makes-war
 cil qui a la viande que cil qui n'en a point.» A cel
he who has the victuals than he who not-thereof has at-all To that
 conseil s'acorderent li conte et li baron, et s'en
counsel themselves-agreed the counts and the barons and themselves-thence
 ralerent tuit à lor nés chascuns et à ses vaissiaus.

went-back all to their sbips each and to bis vessels

Ensi repouserent cele nuit. Et al maitin, le jor de la 132

Thus they-rested that night And at-the morning the day of the
 feste monseignor saint Johan-Baptiste, en juing, furent drecies
feast (of-)my-lord saint John-the-Baptist in June were raised
 les banieres et li confanon es chastials des nés, et les
the banners and the pennons on-the castles of-the sbips and the
 houces ostées des escuz, et portendu li bort des nés.
covers removed from-the sbields and hung the gunwales of-the sbips
 Chascuns regardoit ses armes tels con à lui convint; que
Each looked-to his arms such as to him behooved for
 de fi sevent que par tens en aront mestier.

of certain they-know that in time thereof they-will-have need

Li marinier traient les ancras et laissent les voiles al 133

The mariners draw the anchors and let the sails to-the
 vent aler; et Diex lor done bon vent tel con à els
wind go and God to-them gives good wind such as to them
 convint. Si s'en passent très pardevant Constantinople,
behooved So themselves-thence pass right before Constantinople
 si près des murs et des tours que à maintes de lor
so near to-the walls and to-the towers that at many of their

nés traist-on. Si i avoit tant de gent sor les murs et
ships shot-one So there had so-many of people on the walls and
 sor les tors, que il sembloit que il n'aust se là non.
on the towers that it seemed that there not-was except there not

- 134 Ensi lor bestorna Diex Nostre Sires le conseil qui fu pris
Thus to-them overturned God Our Lord the counsel which was taken
 le soir de torner es ysles, ausi con se chascuns n'en aust
the evening to turn to-the isles just as if each not-thereof had
 onques oï parler. Et maintenant traient à la ferme terre plus
ever heard speak And at-once they-draw to the firm land more
 droit que il onques puent; et pristrent port devant un palais
straight than they ever can and took port before a palace
 l'empereor Alexi, dont li leus estoit apelez Chalcidoines; et
(of-)the-emperor Alexius whereof the place was called Chalcedon and
 fu endroit Costantinoble, d'autre part del Braz, devers la
was opposite Constantinople on-other side of-the Arm toward the
 Turquie. Cil palais fu un des plus biaux et des plus delitables
Turkey That palace was one of-the most fair and of-the most delightful
 que unques oel peussent esgarder, de toz les deliz que il
that ever eye could behold of all the delights that it
 covient à cors d'ome, que en maison de prince doit avoir.
behooves for body of-man that in house of prince ought to-have

- 135 Et li conte et li baron descendirent à la terre, et se
And the counts and the barons went-down to the land and themselves
 erbergierent el palais et en la vile entor; et li plusor
lodged in-the palace and in the town around and the most
 tendirent lor pavillons. Lors furent li cheval trait fors des
pitched their pavilions Then were the horses drawn out of-the
 vissiers, et li chevalier et li serjant descendirent à la
horse-transport and the knights and the sergeants went-down to the
 terre à totes les armes, si que il ne remest es vaissiaus
land with all the arms so that there not remained in-the vessels

que li marinier. La contrée fu bele et riche et planteuse

but the mariners The country was fair and rich and plentiful

de toz biens, et les moies des blez (qui estoient messoné)

of all goods and the stacks of-the wheats which were reaped

parmi les champs; tant que chascuns on volt prendre

through the fields so-much that each thereof wished to-take

si en prist, con cil qui grant mestier en avoient.

so thereof took as those who great need thereof had

Ensi sejournerent en cel palais l'endemain, et al tierz jor 136

Thus they-sojourned in that palace the-next-day and at-the third day

lor dona Diex bon vent; et cil marinier resachent lor

to-them gave God good wind and those mariners draw-up-again their

ancre et drecent lor voiles al vent. Ensi s'en vont

anchors and raise their sails to-the wind Thus themselves-thence go

contremont le Braz, bien une lieue desor Constantinople,

up the Arm well a league above Constantinople

à un palais qui ere l'empereor Alexi, qui ere apelez

to a palace which was (of-)the-emperor Alexius which was called

l'Escutaire. Enqui se ancreerent les nés et li vissier

the-Scutari There themselves anchored the ships and the horse-transport

et totes les galies; et la chevalerie qui ere erbergie el

and all the galleys and the knighthood which was lodged in-the

palais de Calcedoine, ala encoste par terre.

palace of Chalcedon went alongside by land

Ensi se herbergierent sor le Braiz Saint-Jorge, à 137

Thus themselves lodged on the Arm Saint-George at

l'Escutaire et contremont, l'os des François. Et quant

the-Scutari and upward the-host of-the French And when

ce vit l'emperere Alexis, si fist la soe ost issir de

this saw the-emperor Alexius so had the his host come-out of

Costantinoble; si se herberja sor l'autre rive, d'autre part,

Constantinople so itself lodged on the-other bank on-other side

endroit als; si fist tendre ses paveillons, por ce que cil ne
opposite them so had pitched his pavilions for this that those not
 peussent prendre terre par force sor lui. Ensi sejorna l'os
could take land by force upon him Thus sojourned the-host
 des François par neuf jorz; et se pourchaça de viande
of-the French for nine days and himself provided with victuals
 cil qui mestier en ot; et ce furent tuit cil de l'ost.
he who need thereof had and these were all those of the-host

The Foragers and the Emperor's Message

XIV

While foragers scour the country, a company of eighty knights guarding the host routs the Greek grand duke's five hundred at the foot of the mountain and brings back rich booty. The emperor's envoy, the Lombard Nicholas Roux, asks why Christians bound for the Sepulcher invade a Christian land, offers victuals and money if they leave, and threatens them. Conon of Béthune answers that the land belongs to the emperor's nephew and that the usurper should submit to him, and tells the envoy not to return without that answer.

138 Dedenz cel sejour, issi une compagnie de mult bone gent por
Within that sojourn came-out a company of very good people for
 garder l'ost, que on ne li feist mal; et li forier cerchierent
to-guard the-host that one not to-it should-do ill and the foragers searched
 la contrée. En cele compagnie fu Odes li Champenois de
the country In that company was Odo the Champenois of
 Chanlite et Guillaumes ses freres, et Ogiers de Saint-Cheron,
Champlitte and William his brother and Ogier of Saint-Chéron
 et Manassiers de l'Isle, et li cuens Girarz (uns cuens de
and Manasses of the-Isle and the count Gerard a count of

Lombardie qui ert de la maisnie le marchis de Monferrat);

Lombardy who was of the household (of-)the marquis of Montferrat

et orent bien avec als quatre-vins chevaliers de mult bone gent.

and they-had well with them fourscore knights of very good people

Et choisirent el pié de la montaigne paveillons bien à

And they-spied at-the foot of the mountain pavilions well at

trois liues de l'ost; et ce estoit li megedux l'empereor de

three leagues from the-host and this was the grand-duke (of-)the-emperor of

Constantinoble, qui bien avoit cinq cenx chevaliers de Grius.

Constantinople who well had five hundred knights of Greeks

Quant nostre gent les virent, si ordenerent lor genz en quatre

When our people them saw so they-ordered their people in four

batailles; et fu lor conselx tielx que il iroient combatre à

battalions and was their counsel such that they would-go to-fight with

els. Et quant li Grieu les virent, si ordenerent lor batailles, et

them And when the Greeks them saw so they-ordered their battalions and

se rengierent pardevant lor paveillons et les attendirent;

themselves ranged in-front-of their pavilions and them awaited

et nostre gent les alerent ferir mult vigueroisement.

and our people them went to-strike very vigorously

A l'aïe de Dieu Nostre Seignor, petit dura cil estors,

With the-help of God Our Lord little lasted that fight

et li Grieu lor tornerent les dos; si furent desconfit à

and the Greeks to-them turned the backs so they-were routed at

la premiere assemblée, et li nostre les enchaucierent bien

the first encounter and the ours them pursued well

une liue grant. Là gaaignerent assez chevaus et roncins

a league great There they-won many horses and nags

et palefroiz, et muls et mules, et tentes et paveillons,

and palfreys and mules and she-mules and tents and pavilions

et tel gaing con à tel besoigne aferoit. Ensi s'en

and such gain as to such business befitted Thus themselves-thence

139

140

reviendrent en l'ost, où il furent mult volentiers veu,

came-back into the-host where they were very willingly seen

et departirent lor gaing si con il durent.

and divided their gain so as they ought

141 A l'autre jor après, envoia l'emperere Alexis un message

At the-other day after sent the-emperor Alexius a envoy

as contes et as barons et ses letres. Cil messages avoit

to-the counts and to-the barons and his letters That envoy had

nom Nicholas Rous, et ere nez de Lombardie; et trova

name Nicholas Roux and was born of Lombardy and found

les barons el riche palais del Scutaire où il estoient

the barons in-the rich palace of-the Scutari where they were

à un conseil, et les salua de par l'empereor Alexi de

at a council and them greeted on behalf-of the-emperor Alexius of

Constantinoble, et tendi ses letres le marchis Boniface de

Constantinople and held-out his letters (to-)the marquis Boniface of

Monferrat; et cil les reçut. Et furent leues les letres devant

Montferrat and he them received And were read the letters before

toz les barons; et paroles i ot de maintes manieres es

all the barons and words there had of many manners in-the

lettres que li livres ne raconte mie; et après les autres

letters which the book not recounts at-all and after the other

paroles qui furent, si furent de créance, que l'om creist

words which were so they-were of credence that one should-believe

celui qui les avoit aportées, qui Nicholas Rous avoit nom.

him who them had brought who Nicholas Roux had name

142 «Biels sire, font-il, nous avons veues voz letres, et nos

Fair lord say-they we have seen your letters and to-us

dient que nos vous créons; et nos vous créons bien. Or

they-say that we you believe and we you believe well Now

dites ce que vos plaira.»

say this that to-you will-please

Et li messages estoit devant les barons en estant, et parla: 143

And the envoy was before the barons in standing and spoke
 «Seignor, fait-il, l'emperere Alexis vos mande que bien
Lords says-he the-emperor Alexius to-you sends-word that well
 set que vos iestes la meillor gens qui soient sanz corone,
he-knows that you are the best people who may-be without crown
 et de la meillor terre qui soit. Et mult se merveille por
and of the best land which may-be And much himself marvels for
 quoi ne à quoi vos iestes venu en sa terre ne en son regne;
why nor for what you are come into bis land nor into bis realm
 que vos estes crestien, et il est crestiens; et bien set
for you are Christians and he is Christian and well he-knows
 que vos iestes meu por la sainte Terre d'oltremer, et por la
that you are set-out for the holy Land of-overseas and for the
 sainte-Croiz et por le Sepulcre rescure. Se vos iestes povre ne
holy-Cross and for the Sepulcher to-rescue If you are poor or
 diseteus, ils vos donra volontiers de ses viandes et de son
needy he to-you will-give willingly of bis victuals and of bis
 avoir, et vos li vuidiez sa terre. Ne vos voldroit autre mal
wealth and you to-him empty his land Nor to-you would-be other ill
 faire, et neporquant si en a-il le pooir; car se vos estiez
do and nevertheless so thereof has-be the power for if you were
 vint tant de gent, ne vos en porriez vos aler (se
twenty times-as-much of people not yourselves thence could you go if
 il mal vos voloit faire) que vos ne fussiez tout desconfit.»
he ill to-you wished to-do that you not should-be all routed

Par l'acort et le conseil aus autres barons et le duc 144

By the-accord and the counsel of-the other barons and (of-)the doge
 de Venise, se leva en piez Coenes de Bethune, qui bons
of Venice himself raised on feet Conon of Béthune who good
 chevaliers et sages estoit, et bien eloquens; et respont al
knight and wise was and well eloquent and answers to-the

message: «Bel sire, vos nos avez dit que vostre sire se
envoy Fair lord you to-us have said that your lord himself
 merveille mult pourquoi nostre seignor et nostre baron sont
marvels much why our lords and our barons are
 entré en son regne ne en sa terre. En sa terre il ne sont mie
entered into his realm nor into his land Into his land they not are at-all
 entré, quar il la tient à tort et à pechié, contre Dieu et
entered for he it holds with wrong and with sin against God and
 contre raison; ainz est son nevou qui ci siet entre nos sor
against reason but it-is (of-)his nephew who here sits among us on
 une chaïere, qui est fils de son frere l'empereor Sursac. Mais
a chair who is son of his brother the-emperor Sursac But
 s'il voloit à la merci son nevou venir, et li rendoit la
if-he wisbed to the mercy (of-)his nephew to-come and to-him rendered the
 corone et l'empire, nos li proieriens que il li pardonast,
crown and the-empire we him would-pray that he to-him should-pardon
 et li donast tant que il peust vivre richement. Et se vos
and to-him should-give so-much that he could live richly And if you
 por cestui message n'i revenez altre foiz, ne soiez si hardiz
for this message not-there return other time not be so bold
 que vos plus i revegniez.» Ensi se parti li messages; et
that you more there come-back Thus himself departed the envoy and
 s'en rala ariere en Constantinoble à l'empereor Alexi.
himself-thence went-back back into Constantinople to the-emperor Alexius

The Young Alexius Shown to the City

xv

The doge and Boniface sail young Alexius beneath the walls and proclaim him the rightful lord, but no Greek dares own him. On horseback in the fields the barons form seven battalions, Baldwin of Flanders in the vanguard and Boniface in the rear, and the host confesses and makes wills. On the appointed morning the knights come out of the transports and leap into the sea to the waist, and the Greeks flee the shore before the lances are lowered.

Li baron parlerent ensemble l'endemain et distrent qu'il 145
The barons spoke together the-next-day and said that-they
mostreroient Alexi, le fil l'empereor de Constantinoble, al
would-show Alexius the son (of-)the-emperor of Constantinople to-the
pueple de la cité. Et dont firent ariver les galies totes. Li
people of the city And then they-had arrive the galleys all The
dux de Venise et li marchis de Monferat entrerent en une,
doge of Venice and the marquis of Montferrat entered into one
et mistrent avec alx Alexi, le fil l'empereor Sursac; et
and put with them Alexius the son (of-)the-emperor Sursac and
es autres galies entrerent li chevalier et li baron qui volt.
in-the other galleys entered the knights and the barons who wished
Ensi s'en alerent rez à rés des murs de Costantinople, 146
Thus themselves-thence went close to close with-the walls of Constantinople
et mostrerent al pueple des Grés le valet, et distrent:
and showed to-the people of-the Greeks the youth and said
«Véez ici vostre seignor naturel; et sachiez nos ne venimes
See here your lord natural and know we not came
mie por vos mal faire, ainz venimes por vos garder et por
at-all for you ill to-do but we-came for you to-guard and for
vos deffendre, se vos faites ce que vos devez. Car cil cui
you to-defend if you do this that you ought For he whom

vos obeïssiez cum à seignor, vos tient à tort et à pechié,
you obey as to lord you holds with wrong and with sin
 contre Dieu et contre raison. Et bien savez con il a
against God and against reason And well you-know how he has
 desloiaument ovré vers son seignor et vers son frere; que
disloyally wrought toward his lord and toward his brother for
 il li a les els traiz, et tolu son empire à tort et à
he from-him has the eyes drawn and taken his empire with wrong and with
 pechié. Et véez ci le droit oir; se vos vos tenez à lui,
sin And see here the rightful heir if you yourselves bold to him
 vos feroiz ce que vos devroiz: et se vos nel faites, nos vos
you will-do this that you ought and if you not-it do we to-you
 ferons le pis que nos porrons.» Onques nus de la terre ne
will-do the worst that we can Ever anyone of the land nor
 de la cité ne fist semblant que il se tenist à lui, por la
of the city not made semblance that he himself held to him for the
 cremor et por la dotance de l'empereor Alexi. Ensi s'en
fear and for the dread of the-emperor Alexius Thus themselves-thence
 revindrent en l'ost ariere, et alerent chascuns à sa heberge.
came-back into the-host back and went each to his lodging

147 L'endemain, quant il orent la messe oïe, s'assemblerent à
The-next-day when they had the mass heard themselves-assembled at
 parlement; et fu li parlemenz à cheval en mi les champs.
parliament and was the parliament on horseback in mid the fields
 Là peussiez veoir maint bel destrer et maint bon chevalier
There you-might see many-a fair charger and many-a good knight
 desus. Et fu li conseils des batailles deviser, quantes et
above And was the counsel of-the battalions to-devise how-many and
 quels il en auroient. Bestance i ot assez d'une part
which they thereof would-have Dispute there was plenty on-one side
 et d'autre; mais la fins del conseil fu tels: que al
and on-other but the end of-the counsel was such that to-the

conte Baudoin de Flandres fu otroïe l'avangarde, porce que
count Baldwin of Flanders was granted the-vanguard because that
 il avoit mult grant plenté de bones genz et d'archiers et
he had very great plenty of good people and of-archers and
 d'arbalestiers, plus que nuls qui en l'ost fust.

of-crossbowmen more than anyone who in the-host might-be

Et après fu devisé que l'autre bataille feroit Henris ses 148

And after was devised that the-other battalion would-make Henry his
 freres, et Mahius de Walaincourt et Balduins de Belveoir,
brother and Matthew of Walincourt and Baldwin of Beauvoir
 et maint autre bon chevalier de lor terre et de lor païs
and many another good knight of their land and of their country
 qui avec els estoient.

who with them were

La tierce bataille fist li cuens Hues de Saint Pol, Pierres 149

The third battalion made the count Hugh of Saint Pol Peter
 d'Amiens ses niés, Eustaices de Canteleu, Ansiaus de Kaeu,
of-Amiens his nephew Eustace of Canteleux Anseau of Cayeux
 et maint bon chevalier de lor terre et de lor païs.

and many-a good knight of their land and of their country

La quarte bataille fist li cuens Loeys de Blois et de 150

The fourth battalion made the count Louis of Blois and of
 Chartain, qui mult fu granz et riche et redotée; que il i
Chartres which very was great and rich and dreaded for it there
 avoit mult grant plenté de bons chevaliers et de bone gent.

had very great plenty of good knights and of good people

La quinte bataille fist Mahius de Mommorenci, et li 151

The fifth battalion made Matthew of Montmorency and the
 Champenois. Joffrois li mareschaus de Champagne fu en cele.

Champenois Geoffrey the marshal of Champagne was in that-one

Ogiers de Saint-Cheron, Manessiers de l'Isle, Miles li Braibanz,

Ogier of Saint-Chéron Manasses of the-Isle Miles the Brabançon

Machaires de Sainte-Menehalt, Johans Foisonns, Guis de Capes,
Macaire of Sainte-Menebould John Foison Guy of Chappes
 Clarembauz ses niez, Roberz de Ronçoi: totes ces genz fisent
Clarembaud his nephew Robert of Ronsoy all these people made
 la quinte bataille. Sachiez que il i ot maint bon chevalier.
the fifth battalion Know that it there had many-a good knight

- 152 La siste bataille firent les gens de Borgoigne. En celi
The sixth battalion made the people of Burgundy In this-one
 fu Odes li Champenois de Chanlite, Guillaumes ses freres,
was Odo the Champenois of Champlitte William his brother
 Guis de Pesmes, Haimmes ses freres, Othes de la Roche,
Guy of Pesmes Aimé his brother Otto of the Roche
 Richars de Dompierre, Odes ses freres, Guis de Covlans,
Richard of Dampierre Odo his brother Guy of Conflans
 et les gens de lor terre et de lor país.
and the people of their land and of their country

- 153 La setime bataille fist li marchis Bonifaces de Monferrat, qui
The seventh battalion made the marquis Boniface of Montferrat which
 mult fu granz. Là furent li Lombart et li Toscain et li
very was great There were the Lombards and the Tuscans and the
 Aleman, et totes les genz qui furent dès le mont de Moncenis
Germans and all the people who were from the mountain of Mont-Cenis
 trosque à Lion sor le Rone. Tuit cil furent en la bataille
as-far to Lyons on the Rhone All those were in the battalion
 le marchis; et fu devisé que il feroit l'ariere-garde.
(of-)the marquis and was devised that he would-make the-rearguard

- 154 Li jors fu devisez quant il se recueilleroient es
The day was devised when they themselves would-gather into-the
 nés et es vaissiaus, por prendre terre par force, ou por
ships and into-the vessels for to-take land by force either for
 vivre ou por morir; et sachiez que ce fu une des plus
to-live or for to-die and know that this was one of-the most

doutoses choses à faire qui onques fust. Lors parlerent li
dreadful things to do that ever might-be Then spoke the
 evesque et li clergie al pueple, et lor mostrerent que
bishops and the clergy to-the people and to-them showed that
 ils fussent confez et feist chascuns sa devise; que il ne
they should-be confessed and should-make each his will for they not
 savoient quant Diex feroit son commandement d'els. Et il
knew when God would-do his commandment of-them And they
 si firent mult volentiers par tote l'ost, et mult pitusement.
so did very willingly through all the-host and very piteously
 Li termes vint si con devisez fu; et li chevalier furent 155
The term came so as devised it-was and the knights were
 es vissiers tuit avec lor destriers; et furent tuit armé,
in-the horse-transport all with their chargers and were all armed
 les helmes laciez, et li cheval covert et enselé. Et les autres
the helms laced and the horses covered and saddled And the other
 genz qui n'avoient mie si grant mestier en bataille, furent es
people who not-had at-all so great need in battle were in-the
 granz nés tuit; et les galées furent armées et atornées totes.
great ships all and the galleys were armed and arrayed all
 Et li matins fu biels, un poi après le soleil levant; et 156
And the morning was fair a little after the sun rising and
 l'emperieres Alexis les attendoit à granz batailles et à
the-emperor Alexius them awaited with great battalions and with
 granz corroiz de l'autre part. Et on sone les bozines; et
great arrays on the-other side And one sounds the trumpets and
 chascune galie fu à un vissier liée por passer oltre plus
each galley was to a horse-transport tied for to-pass over more
 delivréement. Il ne demandent mie chascuns qui doit aler
freely They not ask at-all each who ought to-go
 devant; mais qui ançois puet, ançois arive. Et li chevalier
before but who sooner can sooner arrives And the knights

issirent des vissiers, et saillirent en la mer trosque à la
came-out of-the horse-transport and leaped into the sea as-far as the
 çainture tuit armé, les hielmes laciez et les glaives es mains;
waist all armed the helms laced and the lances in-the hands
 et li bon archier et li bon serjant et li bon arbalestrier,
and the good archers and the good sergeants and the good crossbowmen
 chascuns à sa compaignie, là endroit où ele ariva.

each with his company there in-place where it arrived

157 Et li Greu firent mult grant semblant del retenir; et quant

And the Greeks made very great semblance of-the holding and when
 ce vint as lances baissier, li Grieu lor tornerent les dos: si
it came to-the lances lowering the Greeks to-them turned the backs so
 s'en vont fuiant, et lor laissent le rivage. Et sachiez

themselves-thence go fleeing and to-them leave the shore And know
 que onques plus orgueilleusement nuls porz ne fu pris. Adonc
that ever more proudly any port not was taken Then

comencent li marinier à ovrir les portes des vissiers, et
begin the mariners to open the doors of-the horse-transport and

à giter les ponz fors; et on comence les chevax à traire;
to throw the bridges out and one begins the horses to draw

et li chevalier comencent à monter sor lor chevaux; et
and the knights begin to mount on their horses and

les batailles se comencent à rengier si com il devoient.
the battalions themselves begin to range so as they ought

The Tower of Galata

XVI

The Greeks abandon their camp. To force the harbor chain the host lodges before the tower of Galata; a sally from it is driven back, James of Avesnes is wounded in the face, and the tower is taken, the harbor won, and the fleet brought into it. The Venetians will attack from the sea and the French by land. The barons repair a broken bridge and camp between Blachernae and the castle of Bohemond, before one gate only, short of food and armed six or seven times a day.

Li cuens Baudoins de Flandres et de Hennaut chevaucha, 158

*The count Baldwin of Flanders and of Hainault rode
qui l'avangarde faisoit, et les autres batailles après, chascune
who the-vanguard made and the other battalions after each
si cum eles chevauchier devoient; et alerent trosque là
so as they to-ride ought and went as-far-as there
où l'emperere Alexis avoit esté logiez. Et il s'en
where the-emperor Alexius had been lodged And he himself-thence
fu tornez vers Costantinoble, et lascia tenduz très et
was turned toward Constantinople and left pitched tents and
paveillons; et là gaignerent nostre gent assez.*

pavilions and there won our people much

De nostres barons fut tels li conseils que il se 159

*Of our barons was such the counsel that they themselves
hebergeroient sor le port devant la tor de Galathas, où la
would-lodge on the port before the tower of Galata where the
chaïene fermoit qui movoit de Costantinoble. Et sachiez de
chain closed which went from Constantinople And know of
voir que par cele chaïene covenoit entrer qui al port de
truth that by that chain behooved to-enter who to-the port of
Constantinoble voloit entrer. Et bien virent nostre baron, se
Constantinople wished to-enter And well saw our barons if*

il ne prenoient cele tor et rompoient cele chaiene, que
they not took that tower and broke that chain that
 il estoient mort et mal bailli. Ensi se herbergierent
they were dead and ill served Thus themselves lodged
 la nuit devant la tor et en la juerie que l'on apele
the night before the tower and in the jewry that one calls
 l'Estanor, où il avoit mult bone vile et mult riche.
the-Estanor where it had very good town and very rich

- 160 Bien se fissent la nuit eschaugaitier; et l'endemain, quant
Well themselves had the night watched and the-next-day when
 fu hore de tierce, si firent une assaillie cil de la tor de
it-was hour of tierce so made a sally those of the tower of
 Galathas, et cil qui de Constantinoble lor venoient aidier
Galata and those who from Constantinople to-them came to-help
 en barges; et nostre gent corent as armes. Là assembla
in barges and our people run to-the arms There joined-battle
 premiers Jaques d'Avesnes et la soe maisnie à pié; et sachiez
first James of-Avesnes and the his household on foot and know
 que il fu mult chargiez, et fu feruz parmi le vis d'un glaive,
that he was very pressed and was struck through the face with-a lance
 et en aventure de mort. Et uns suens chevaliers fu montez à
and in chance of death And one his-own knight was mounted on
 cheval, qui avoit nom Nicholes de Janlain; et secorrut mult bien
horse who had name Nicholas of Jenlain and succored very well
 son seignor, et le fist mult bien, si que il en ot grant pris.
his lord and it did very well so that he thereof had great praise
- 161 Et li criz fu levez en l'ost; et nostre gent viennent de totes
And the cry was raised in the-host and our people come from all
 parz et les mistrent enz mult laidement, si que assez en i
sides and them drove in very foully so that plenty of-them there
 ot de morz et de pris; si que de tels i ot qui ne guenchirent
were of dead and of taken so that of such there were who not turned

mie à la tor; ainz alerent as barges dunt il erent venu; et
at-all to the tower but went to-the barges whence they were come and
 là en i ot assez de noiez, et alquant en eschaperent.

there of-them there were plenty of drowned and some thereof escaped

Et cels qui guenchirent à la tor, cil de l'ost les tindrent si

And those who turned to the tower those of the-host them held so

près que il ne porent la porte fermer. Enqui refu granz

near that they not could the gate shut There again-was great

li estors à la porte; et la lor tollirent par force, et les

the fight at the gate and it from-them took by force and them

pristrent laienz. Là en i ot assez de morz et de pris.

took therein There of-them there were plenty of dead and of taken

Ensi fu li chastiaus de Galathas pris, et li porz gaigniez 162

Thus was the castle of Galata taken and the port won

de Costantinoble par force. Mult en furent conforté cil de

of Constantinople by force Much thereof were comforted those of

l'ost, et mult en loerent Dam Dieu, et cil de la vile

the-host and much thereof praised Lord God and those of the town

desconforté. Et l'endemain furent enz el port traies les

discomforted And the-next-day were within in-the port drawn the

nés et li vaissel et les galies et li vissier. Et donc

ships and the vessels and the galleys and the horse-transport And then

pristrent cil de l'ost conseil ensemble por savoir quel chose

took those of the-host counsel together for to-know what thing

il porroient faire, s'il asauoient la vile par mer ou par

they could do if-they would-assault the town by sea or by

terre. Mult s'acorderent li Venisien que les eschieles fussient

land Much themselves-agreed the Venetians that the ladders should-be

dreciées es nés, et que toz li assaus fust par devers la

raised on-the ships and that all the assault should-be on toward the

mer. Li François disoient que il ne se savoient mie si

sea The French said that they not themselves knew-how at-all so

bien aidier sor mer com il savoient par terre; mais quant il
well to-help on sea as they knew-how by land but when they
 aroient lor chevaus et lor armes, il se sauroient mielz
would-have their horses and their arms they themselves would-know-how better
 aidier par terre. Ensi fu la fins del conseil que li Venisien
to-help by land Thus was the end of-the counsel that the Venetians
 assauroient par mer, et li baron et cil de l'ost par terre.
would-assault by sea and the barons and those of the-host by land
 163 Ensi sejournerent par quatre jorz. Al cinquiesme jor après,
Thus they-sojourned for four days At-the fifth day after
 s'arma tote l'oz; et chevauchierent les batailles si con eles
itself-armed all the-host and rode the battalions so as they
 erent ordenées, tot par desor le port, trosque endroit le palais
were ordered all along above the port as-far-as opposite the palace
 de Blaquerne; et li naviles vint par dedenz le port dès ci
of Blachernae and the fleet came by within the port from here
 que endroit els; et ce fu près del chief del port. Et là si
until opposite them and this was near to-the head of-the port And there so
 a un flum qui fiert en la mer, que on n'i puet passer se
is a river which strikes into the sea that one not-there can pass except
 par un pont de pierre non. Li Grieu avoient le pont colpé; et
by a bridge of stone not The Greeks had the bridge cut and
 li baron firent tote jor l'ost laborer et tote la nuit por le
the barons had all day the-host labor and all the night for the
 pont afaitier. Ensi fu li ponz afaitiez, et les batailles armées
bridge to-repair Thus was the bridge repaired and the battalions armed
 au maitin; et chevauchierent li uns après l'autre, si con
at-the morning and rode the ones after the-other so as
 il erent ordené. Et vont devant la vile; et nus de la cité
they were ordered And go before the town and anyone of the city

n'issi fors encontre als, et fu mult granz merveille; que por
not-came out against them and it-was very great marvel for for
 un que il estoient en l'ost, estoient-il dui cent en la vile.
one that they were in the-host were-they two hundred in the town
 Lors fu li conseils des barons telx que il se hebergeroient 164
Then was the counsel of-the barons such that they themselves would-lodge
 entre le palais de Blaquerne et le chastel Buimont, qui
between the palace of Blachernae and the castle (of-)Bohemond which
 ere une abaïe close de murs. Et lors furent tendu li tref
was an abbey enclosed with walls And then were pitched the tents
 et li paveillon; et bien fu fiere chose à regarder: que de
and the pavilions and well was-it proud thing to behold for of
 Costantinoble, qui tenoit trois liues de front par devers la
Constantinople which held three leagues of front on toward the
 terre, ne pot tote l'oz asseger que l'une des portes. Et
land not could all the-host besiege but one of-the gates And
 li Venisien furent en la mer es nés et es vaissiaus; et
the Venetians were on the sea in-the ships and in-the vessels and
 drecierent les eschieles et les mangoniaus et les perieres, et
raised the ladders and the mangonels and the petreries and
 ordenerent lor assaut mult bien. Et li baron ratornerent le
ordered their assault very well And the barons arrayed-in-turn the
 lor par devers la terre et de perrieres et de mangoniaus.
theirs on toward the land and with petreries and with mangonels
 Et sachiez que il n'estoient mie en pais; que il n'ere hore 165
And know that they not-were at-all in peace for there not-was hour
 de nuit ne de jor que l'une des batailles ne fust armée
of night nor of day that one of-the battalions not should-be armed
 par devant la porte por garder les engins et les assaillies.
in front-of the gate for to-guard the engines and the sallies
 Et por tot ce ne remanoit mie que il n'en feissent assez
And for all this not remained at-all that they thereof should-make plenty

par cele porte et par autres, si que il les tenoient si
by that gate and by others so that they them held so
 corz, que six fois ou sept les convenoit le jor armer par
short that six times or seven them behooved the day to-arm through
 tote l'ost; ne n'avoient pooir que il porchaçassent viande
all the-host nor not-had power that they might-forage victuals
 quatre arbalestées loing de l'ost. Et il en avoient mult
four crossbow-shots away from the-host And they thereof had very
 poi, se de farine non et de bacons; et de cel avoient
little except of flour not and of bacons and of salt they-had
 poi, et de char fresche nulle chose, se il ne l'avoient des
little and of flesb fresh no thing if they not it-had of-the
 chevaux que on lor ocioit. Et sachiez que il n'avoient
horses that one to-them killed And know that they not-had
 viande comunement à tote l'ost por trois semaines. Et
victuals commonly for all the-host for three weeks And
 mult estoient perillosement; que onques par tant poi de
very they-were perilously for ever by so few of
 gent ne furent assegié tant de gent en nule vile.
people not were besieged so-many of people in any town

The Assault on the Walls

XVII

The host fences its camp with palisades and throws back constant sallies; Constantine Lascaris is taken and William of Champlitte's arm broken. After ten days four battalions assault the walls by land while three guard the camp, and fifteen knights and sergeants gain the wall near the sea but are thrown down by its English and Danish guards. The doge sets his ships in one line against the harbor walls, and the din is as if earth and sea were sinking.

Lors se porpenserent de un mult bon engin; que il 166
Then themselves they-bethought of a very good device for they
fermerent tote l'ost de bones lices et de bons merriens
enclosed all the-host with good palisades and with good timbers
et de bones barres; et si en furent mult plus fort
and with good bars and so thereof were much more strong
et plus seur. Li Grieu lor faisoient si sovent assaillies
and more secure The Greeks to-them made so often sallies
que il nes laissoient reposer; et cil de l'ost les
that they not-them let rest and those of the-host them
remetoient arriers mult durement; et totes foiz que il
put-back back very hard and all times that they
issoient fors, i perdoient li Grieu.
came out there lost the Greeks

Un jor feissoient li Borgueignon l'agait, et li Grieu lor 167
One day made the Burgundians the-watch and the Greeks to-them
firent une assaillie; et issirent de lor meilleurs gens une partie
made a sally and came-out of their best people a part
fors. Et cil lor recorrent sus, si les remistrent enz mult
out And those to-them ran-in-turn upon so them put-back in very
durement; et les menerent si près de la porte que granz
hard and them led so near to the gate that great

fès de pierres lor getoit-on sor als. Là ot pris un des
loads of stones on-them threw-one upon them There was taken one of-the
 meillors Grex de laienz, qui ot non Constantins li Ascres;
best Greeks of there-within who had name Constantine the Lascaris
 et le prist Gautiers de Nuilli tot monté sor le cheval. Et
and him took Walter of Neuilly all mounted on the horse And
 enqui ot Guillaumes de Chanlite brisié le braz d'une pierre;
there had William of Champlitte broken the arm with-a stone
 dont granz damages fu, que il ere mult preuz et mult vailanz.
whereof great damage was for he was very worthy and very valiant

- 168 Toz les cops et toz les bleciez et toz les morz ne vos pui mie
All the blows and all the wounded and all the dead not to-you I-can at-all
 raconter; mais ainz que li estorz parfinast, vint uns chevaliers
recount but before that the fight should-end came a knight
 de la masnie Henri, le frere le conte Baudoin de Flandres
of the household (of-)Henry the brother (of-)the count Baldwin of Flanders
 et de Hennaut, qui ot nom Eustaices dou Marchois; et ne
and of Hainault who had name Eustace of-the Marchais and not
 fu armez que d'un gamboison et d'un chapel de fer, son escu
was armed but with-a gambeson and with-a hat of iron his shield
 à son col; et le fist mult bien à l'enz metre, si que grant pris
at his neck and it did very well at the-in putting so that great praise
 l'en dona l'on. Poi ere jorz que on ne feist assaillies,
to-him-thereof gave one Seldom was day that one not made sallies
 mais ne vos puis totes retraire. Tant les tenoient près que
but not to-you I-can all relate So them they-held near that
 ne pooient dormir, ne reposer, ne mengier, s'armé non.
not they-could sleep nor rest nor eat except-armed not

- 169 Une autre assaillie firent par une porte desore, où li Greu
An other sally they-made by a gate above where the Greeks
 reperdirent assez. Mais là si fu morz uns chevaliers qui ot
lost-again much But there so was dead a knight who had

nom Guillaumes del Gi; et là le fist mult bien Mahius de
name William of-the Gi and there it did very well Matthew of
 Valencort, et perdi son cheval al pont de la porte, qui li
Walincourt and lost his horse at-the bridge of the gate which to-him
 fu morz; et maint le firent mult bien qui à celle mellée furent.
was killed and many it did very well who at that brawl were
 A cele porte desus le palais de Blaquerne, où il issoient plus
At that gate above the palace of Blachernae where they came-out most
 soventes fois, en ot Pierres de Braieciel plus le pris que
oft times thereof had Peter of Bracieux more the praise than
 nus, porce que il ere plus prez logiez et plus sovent i avint.
anyone because that he was most near lodged and most often there came
 Ensi lor dura cil perils et cil travaus près de dix jorz, tant 170
Thus to-them lasted that peril and that travail near of ten days until
 que un joesdi matin fu lor assaus atornez, et les eschieles; et
that a Thursday morning was their assault arrayed and the ladders and
 li Venisien rorent le lor appareillié par mer. Ensi fu devisez
the Venetians had-in-turn the their prepared by sea Thus was devised
 li assaus que les trois batailles des sept garderoient l'ost par
the assault that the three battalions of-the seven would-guard the-host by
 defors, et les quatre iroient à l'asaut. Li marchis Bonifaces
outside and the four would-go to the-assault The marquis Boniface
 de Monferat garda l'ost par devers les chans, et la bataille
of Montferrat guarded the-host on toward the fields and the battalion
 des Borgoignons, et la bataille des Champenois, et Mahius
of-the Burgundians and the battalion of-the Champenois and Matthew
 de Monmorenci. Et li cuens Baudoins de Flandres et de
of Montmorency And the count Baldwin of Flanders and of
 Hennaut ala assaillir, et la soe gens, et Henris ses freres; et
Hainault went to-assail and the his people and Henry his brother and

- li cuens Loeys de Blois et de Chartain, et li cuens Hues de
the count Louis of Blois and of Chartres and the count Hugh of
 Saint Pol, et cil qui à els se tenoient, alerent à l'asaut.
Saint Pol and those who to them themselves held went to the-assault
- 171 Et drecierent à une barbecane deus eschieles enprès la
And they-raised against a barbican two ladders near the
 mer; et li murs fu mult garniz d'Englois et de Danois,
sea and the wall was very manned with-English and with Danes
 et li assauz forz et bons et durs. Et par vive force
and the assault strong and good and hard And by living force
 monterent des chevaliers sor les eschieles et dui serjant, et
mounted of-the knights on the ladders and two sergeants and
 conquistrent le mur sor als; et monterent sor le mur bien
conquered the wall upon them and mounted on the wall well
 quinze, et se combatoient main à main as haches et
fifteen and themselves fought hand to hand with-the axes and
 as espées. Et cil dedenz se refforcierent mult; si les
with-the swords And those within themselves strenghtened much so them
 metent fors mult laidement, si que il en retindrent deus.
put out very foully so that they thereof retained two
 Et cil qui furent retenu de la nostre gent, si furent mené
And those who were retained of the our people so were led
 devant l'empereor Alexi; s'en fu mult liez. Ensi remest
before the-emperor Alexius himself-thereof was very glad Thus remained
 li assauz devers les François; et en i ot assez de
the assault on-the-side-of the French and of-them there were plenty of
 bleciez et de quassee; s'en furent mult irié li baron.
wounded and of bruised themselves-thereof were very angered the barons
- 172 Et li dux de Venise ne se fu mie obliés; ainz ot ses nés
And the doge of Venice not himself was at-all forgotten but had his ships
 et ses vissiers et ses vaissiaus ordenez d'un front, et cil
and his borse-transport and his vessels ordered in-one front and that

fronz duroit bien trois arbalestrées; et comencent la rive à
front lasted well three crossbow-shots and they-begin the shore to
 aprochier qui desoz les murs et desoz les tors estoit. Lors
approach which below the walls and below the towers was Then
 veissiez mangoniaus giter des nés et des vissiers,
you-might-see mangonels throw from-the ships and from-the horse-transport
 et quarriaus d'arbalestre traire, et ces ars traire mult
and quarrels of-crossbow shoot and these bows shoot very
 delivrement; et cels dedenz desfendre des murs et des
freely and those within defend from-the walls and from-the
 tours mult durement, et les eschieles des nés aprochier si
towers very hard and the ladders of-the ships approach so
 durement que en plusors leus s'entreferoient d'espées et de
hard that in several places each-other-they-struck with-swords and with
 lances; et li huz ere si granz que il sembloit que terre et
lances and the shout was so great that it seemed that earth and
 mers fondist. Et sachiez que les galies n'osoient terre prendre.
sea might-sink And know that the galleys not-dared land take

The Emperor Declines Battle

XVIII

The blind doge, armed in his prow under the banner of Saint Mark, has his galley run ashore, and the Venetians seize twenty-five towers. When the Emperor Alexius comes out with some forty battalions against the host's six, the doge gives up his towers to live or die with the pilgrims, and after a long standoff the emperor withdraws.

Or porroiz oïr estrange proesce; que li dux de Venise, 173
Now you-will-be-able to-hear strange prowess that the doge of Venice
 qui vialz hom ere et gotte ne véoit, fu toz armez, el
who old man was and a-drop not saw was all armed in-the

chief de la soe galie, et ot le gonfanon Saint Marc par
head of the his galley and had the gonfanon (of-)Saint Mark in
 devant lui; et escrioit as suens que il le meissent à
front-of him and cried to-the his-own that they him should-put on
 terre, ou se ce non il feroit jutise de lor cors. Et il
land or if this not he would-do justice of their bodies And they
 si firent; que la galie prent terre, et il saillent fors; si
so did that the galley takes land and they leap out so
 portent le confanon Saint Marc par devant lui à la terre.
carry the gonfanon (of-)Saint Mark in front-of him to the land

174

Et quant li Venisien voient le confanon Saint Marc à la
And when the Venetians see the gonfanon (of-)Saint Mark on the
 terre, et la galie lor seignor qui ot terre prise devant als,
land and the galley (of-)their lord which had land taken before them
 si se tint chascuns à honi, et vont à la terre tuit; et cil
so himself held each for shamed and they-go to the land all and those
 des vissiers saillent fors et vont à la terre, et cil des
of-the horse-transport leap out and go to the land and those of-the
 granz nés entrent es barges et vont à la terre, qui ainz ainz,
great ships enter into-the barges and go to the land who sooner sooner
 qui mielz mielz. Lors veissiez assaut grant et merveillox;
who better better Then you-might-see assault great and marvelous
 et ce tesmoigne Joffrois de Vile-Harduin li mareschaus de
and this testifies Geoffrey of Villehardouin the marshal of
 Champaigne, qui ceste ovre trata, que plus de quarante li
Champagne who this work composed that more than forty to-him
 distrent por verité que il virent le confanon Saint Marc de
said for truth that they saw the gonfanon (of-)Saint Mark of
 Venise en une des tors, et mie ne sorent qui l'i porta.
Venice on one of-the towers and at-all not knew who it-there carried

Or oiez estrange miracle: et cil dedenz s'enfuient, si
Now hear strange miracle and those within themselves-flee so
 guerpissent les murs; et cil entrent enz, qui ainz ainz, qui mielz
forsake the walls and those enter in who sooner sooner who better
 mielz, si que il saississent vint-cinq des tors et garnissent
better so that they seize twenty-five of-the towers and furnish
 de lor gent. Et li dux prant un batel, si mande messages as
with their people And the doge takes a boat so sends envoys to-the
 barons de l'ost, et lor fait assavoir que il avoient vint-cinq
barons of the-host and to-them makes to-know that they had twenty-five
 tors, et seussent por voir que il nes pooient reperdre. Li
towers and should-know for truth that they not-them could lose-again The
 baron sont si lié que il nel pooient croire que ce soit voirs;
barons are so glad that they not-it could believe that this may-be true
 et li Venicien comencent à envoyer chevaus et palefroiz à
and the Venetians begin to send horses and palfreys to
 l'ost en batiaus de cels que il avoient gaaignez dedenz la vile.
the-host in boats of those that they had won within the town
 Et quant li empereres Alexis vit que il furent ensi entré
And when the emperor Alexius saw that they were thus entered
 dedenz la vile, si comence ses genz à envoyer à si grant
within the town so begins his people to send in so great
 foison vers els que cil virent que il nes porroient
abundance toward them that those saw that they not-them could
 soffrir. Si mistrent le feu entr'els et les Grex; et li
withstand So they-set the fire between-themselves and the Greeks and the
 venz venoit de vers nos genz; et li feus comence si granz
wind came from toward our people and the fire begins so great
 à naistre, que li Gré ne pooient veoir noz genz. Ensi se
to rise that the Greeks not could see our people Thus themselves
 retraistrent à lor tors que il avoient saisies et conquises.
drew-back to their towers that they had seized and conquered

175

176

- 177 A donc issi l'emperere Alexis de Costantinoble à tote sa
At then came-out the-emperor Alexis from Constantinople with all his
 force fors de la cité, par autres portes bien loing de une leue
force out of the city by other gates well far of a league
 de l'ost; et comence si granz genz à issir que il sembloit
from the-host and begins so great people to come-out that it seemed
 que ce fust toz li monz. Lors fist ses batailles ordener
that this might-be all the world Then he-had his battalions ordered
 parmi la campagne, et chevauchent vers l'ost; et quant noz
through the plain and they-ride toward the-host and when our
 François les voient, si saillent as armes de totes parz. Cel
French them see so they-leap to-the arms from all sides That
 jor, faisoit Henris li freres le conte Baudoin de Flandres et
day made Henry the brother (of-)the count Baldwin of Flanders and
 de Hennaut, l'agit as engins devant la porte de Blaquerne,
of Hainault the-watch at-the engines before the gate of Blachernae
 et Mahius de Vaslaincourt et Baudoins de Belveoir, et
and Matthew of Walincourt and Baldwin of Beauvoir and
 lor gens qui à els se tenoient. Endroit aus, avoit
their people who to them themselves held Opposite them had
 l'empereres Alexis atorné granz genz qui saldroient par trois
the-emperor Alexis arrayed great people who would-sally by three
 portes fors, con il se ferroit en l'ost par d'autre part.
gates out when he himself would-strike into the-host by on-other side
- 178 El lors issirent les six batailles qui furent ordenées, et
And then came-out the six battalions which were ordered and
 se rengent par devant lor lices; et lor serjant et
themselves range in front-of their palisades and their sergeants and
 lor escuier à pié par derriere les cropes de lor chevaux,
their squires on foot by behind the cruppers of their horses
 et li archier et li arbalestier par devant als; et firent
and the archers and the crossbowmen in front-of them and made

bataille de lor chevaliers à pié, dont il avoient bien deus
battalion of their knights on foot of-whom they had well two
 cenz qui n'avoient mais nul cheval. Et ensi se tindrent
hundred who not-had more any horse And thus themselves held
 quoi devant lor lices; et fu mult granz sens; que se il
quiet before their palisades and it-was very great sense for if they
 alassent à la campagne assembler à els, cil avoient si
had-gone to the plain to-join with them those had so
 grant foison de gent, que tuit fuissiens noié entr'aus.
great abundance of people that all we-would-have-been drowned among-them
 Il sembloit que tote la campagne fust couverte de batailles; et
It seemed that all the plain were covered with battalions and
 venoient le petit pas tuit ordené. Bien sembloit perillose chose;
they-came the little pace all ordered Well it-seemed perilous thing
 que cil n'avoient que six batailles, et li Grien en avoient
for those not-had but six battalions and the Greeks thereof had
 bien quarante; et il n'i avoit celi qui ne fust grandre
well forty and it not-there had that-one which not might-be greater
 que une des nos. Mais li nostre estoient ordené en tel
than one of-the ours But the ours were ordered in such
 manere que on ne pooit à els venir, se par devant non. Et
manner that one not could to them come except by front not And
 tant chevaucha l'enperiere Alexis qu'il fu si près que on traioit
so-far rode the-emperor Alexis that-he was so near that one shot
 des uns aus autres. Et quant ce oï il dux de Venise, si fist
from-the ones to-the others And when this heard the doge of Venice so had
 ses gens retraire et guerpir les tors que il avoient conquises,
his people draw-back and forsake the towers that they had conquered
 et dist que li voloit vivre ou morir avec les pelerins. Ensi
and said that he wished to-live or to-die with the pilgrims Thus

179

s'en vint devers l'ost, et descendi il meismes toz premiers

himself-thence came toward the-host and went-down he himself all first

à la terre, et ce que il i en pot traire de la soe gent fors.

to the land and this that he there thereof could draw of the his people out

180 Ensi furent longuement les batailles des pelerins et des Grius

Thus were long the battalions of-the pilgrims and of-the Greeks

vis-à-vis; que li Gré ne s'oserent venir ferir en lor estal,

face-to-face for the Greeks not themselves-dared come to-strike into their position

et cil ne volrent eslongnier les lices. Et quant l'empereres

and those not wished go-far-from the palisades And when the-emperor

Alexis vit ce, si comença ses genz à retraire; et quant il ot

Alexius saw this so began his people to draw-back and when he had

ses gens raliez, si s'en retorna ariere. Et quant ce vit li

his people rallied so himself-thence turned back And when this saw the

hos des pelerins, si comença à chevaucher le petit pas vers

host of-the pilgrims so began to ride the little pace toward

lui; et les batailles des Grés comencent à aler en voie; et

him and the battalions of-the Greeks begin to go on way and

se traistrent ariers à un palais qui ere apelez li Philippos.

themselves drew back to a palace which was called the Philopatium

181 Et sachiez que onques Diex ne traist de plus grant peril

And know that ever God not drew from more great peril

nule gent con il fist cels de l'ost cel jor; et sachiez qu'il

any people as he did those of the-host that day and know that-it

n'i ot si hardi qui n'aust grant joie. Ensi se remest

not-there had so bold who not-had great joy Thus itself remained

cele bataille cel jor; que plus n'i ot fait, si con Diex

that battle that day for more not-there was done so as God

le volt. L'empereres Alexis s'en retorna en la vile, et

it wished The-emperor Alexius himself-thence turned into the town and

cil de l'ost alerent à lor herberges: si se desarmerent,

those of the-host went to their lodgings so themselves disarmed

que erent mult las et travaillié; et poi mangierent et
for they-were very weary and toiled and little ate and
 poi burent, car poi avoient de viande.
little drank for little they-had of victuals

Isaac Restored

XIX

That night the usurper flees with his treasure, and the city brings the blind Sursac from prison and seats him on the throne. The host rejoices but, wary, sends Matthew of Montmorency, Villehardouin, and two Venetians to demand that the father confirm the son's covenant. Past ranks of English and Danish axemen they reach Sursac, and in private Villehardouin recites the terms. Sursac calls them very great and hard to fulfill, but confirms them under a golden seal.

Or oiez les miracles Nostre Seignor, com eles sont beles 182
Now hear the miracles (of-)Our Lord how they are fair
 tot partot là où li plaist! Cele nuit domaignement,
all everywhere there where to-him pleases That night precisely
 l'emperieres Alexis de Costantinoble prist de son tresor ce
the-emperor Alexius of Constantinople took of his treasure this
 qu'il en pot porter, et mena de ses gens avec lui qui aler
that-he thereof could carry and led of his people with him who to-go
 s'en voldrent; si s'enfui et laissa la cité. Et cil de
themselves-thence wished so himself-fled and left the city And those of
 la vile remestrent mult esbahi; et traistrent à la prison où
the town remained very dismayed and drew to the prison where
 l'emperiere Sorsac estoit, qui avoit les ialz traiz. Si le vestent
the-emperor Sursac was who had the eyes drawn So him they-clothe
 emperialment; si l'emporterent el halt palais de Blacquerne,
imperially so him-carried into-the high palace of Blachernae

et l'asistrent en la halte chaïere, et li obéirent come lor
and him-seated in the high chair and to-him obeyed as their
 seignor. Et dont pristrent messages par le conseil l'empeor
lord And then they-took envoys by the counsel (of-)the-emperor
 Sursac, et envoierent à l'ost; et manderent le fil l'empeor
Sursac and sent to the-host and sent-word-to the son (of-)the-emperor
 Sursac et les barons que l'empereres Alexis s'en ere
Sursac and the barons that the-emperor Alexius himself-thence was
 fuiz, et si avoient relevé à empeor l'empeor Sursac.
fled and so they-had raised to emperor the-emperor Sursac

183 Quant li valez le sot, si manda le marchis Boniface de Monferat,
When the youth it knew so sent-for the marquis Boniface of Montferrat
 et li marchis manda les barons par l'ost. Et quant il furent
and the marquis sent-for the barons through the-host And when they were
 assamblé al paveillon le fil l'empeor Sursac, si lor
assembled at-the pavilion (of-)the son (of-)the-emperor Sursac so to-them
 conte ceste novele; et quant il l'oïrent, de la joie qu'il orent
he-tells this news and when they it-heard of the joy that-they had
 ne convient mie à parler; que onques plus granz joie ne fu faite
not behooves at-all to speak for ever more great joy not was made
 el monde. Et mult fu Nostre Sire loez pitousement par as
in-the world And much was Our Lord praised piteously by them
 toz de ce que en si petit de terme les ot secoruz, et de si
all of this that in so little of time them he-had succored and from so
 bas con il estoient les ot mis al desore. Et por ce puet-on
low as they were them had put to-the top And for this can-one
 bien dire: «Qui Diex vielt aidier, nuls hom ne li puet nuire.»
well say Whom God wishes to-help any man not him can harm

184 Lors comença à ajorner, et l'ouz se comença à armer; si
Then began to dawn and the-host itself began to arm so
 s'armerent tuit par l'ost, porce que il ne créoient mie
themselves-armed all through the-host because that they not believed at-all

bien les Grex. Et messaige comencent à issir dui ou trois
well the Greeks And messengers begin to come-out two or three
 ensemble, et content ces noveles meismes. Li consels as
together and tell these news same The counsel of-the
 barons et as contes fu tels, et cil al duc de Venise,
barons and of-the counts was such and that of-the doge of Venice
 que il envoieroient messaiges laienz savoir coment li affaires
that they would-send envoys therein to-know how the affair
 i estoit; et se ce estoit voirs que on lor avoit dit, que
there was and if this was true that one to-them had said that
 on requerroit le pere que il asseurast altelx convenances con
one should-ask the father that he should-confirm such covenants as
 li filz avoit faites, ou il ne lairoient mie entrer le fil en
the son had made or they not would-let at-all enter the son into
 la vile. Eslit furent li message: si en fu li uns Mahius
the town Chosen were the envoys so of-them was the one Matthew
 de Monmorenci, et Geffrois li mareschaus de Champaigne
of Montmorency and Geoffrey the marshal of Champagne
 fu li autres, et dui Venetien de par le duc de Venise.
was the other and two Venetians on behalf-of the doge of Venice
 Ensi furent li message conduit trosqu'à la porte, et on
Thus were the envoys conducted as-far-as-to the gate and one
 lor ovri la porte, et descendirent à pié. Et li Grifon
to-them opened the gate and they-dismounted on foot And the Griffons
 orent mis d'Englois et de Danois à totes les haches à
had put of-English and of Danes with all the axes from
 la porte, tres ci que al palais de Blaquerne. Einsint les
the gate right here until to-the palace of Blachernae Thus them
 amenerent dès ci au haut palais; là troverent l'empereor
they-led from here to-the high palace there they-found the-emperor
 Sursac (si richement vestu que por noient demandast-on
Sursac so richly clothed that for nothing would-one-see

185

home plus richement vestu), et l'empereriz sa fame dejuste
man more richly clothed and the-empress his wife beside
 lui, qui ere mult bele dame, suer le roi de Ongrie. Des
him who was very fair lady sister (of-)the king of Hungary Of-the
 autres hanz homes et des haltes dames i avoit tant
other high men and of-the high ladies there had so-many
 que on n'i pooit son pié torner, si richement acesmées
that one not-there could his foot turn so richly adorned
 que eles ne pooient plus. Et tuit cil qui avoient esté le
that they not could more And all those who had been the
 jor devant contre lui, estoient cel jor tot à sa volenté.
day before against him were that day all at his will

- 186 Li message vindrent devant l'empeoreur Sursac; l'emperere et
The envoys came before the-emperor Sursac the-emperor and
 tuit li autre les honorerent mult. Et distrent li message
all the others them honored much And said the envoys
 que il voloient parler à lui privèement de par son fil
that they wished to-speak to him privately on behalf-of his son
 et de par les barons de l'ost. Et il se dreça, si
and on behalf-of the barons of the-host And he himself raised so
 s'en entra en une chambre, et n'enmena avec lui que
himself-thence entered into a chamber and not-led with him but
 l'empereris, et son chancelier, et son druguemant, et les
the-empress and his chancellor and his interpreter and the
 quatre messages. Par l'acort as autres messages, mostra
four envoys By the-accord of-the other envoys set-forth
 Joffrois de Ville Hardoin li mareschaus de Champagne la
Geoffrey of Ville Hardouin the marshal of Champagne the
 parole, et dist à l'empeoreur Sursac:
speech and said to the-emperor Sursac

«Sire, tu vois le servise que nos avons fait à ton fil, et 187

Lord thou seest the service that we have done to thy son and
 conbien nos li avons sa convenance tenue. Ne il ne puet
how-well we to-him have his covenant kept Nor he not can
 çaiens entrer trosque adonc qu'il ara fait nostre creant
here-within enter until then that-he shall-have made our pledge
 des convenz qu'il nos ha; et à toi mande, comme tes filz,
of-the covenants that-he to-us has and to thee sends-word as thy son
 que tu nos assure la convenance en tel forme et en tel
that thou to-us confirm the covenant in such form and in such
 maniere con il nos a fait. — Quelx est la convenance?» fait
manner as he to-us has made What is the covenant says
 l'empereres. — «Telx com je vos dirai,» respont li messagiers.
the-emperor Such as I to-you shall-tell answers the envoy

«Tot el premier chief, metre tot l'empire de Romanie à 188

All in-the first head to-put all the-empire of Romania to
 l'obedience de Rome, dont il est partiz pieça; après, doner
the-obedience of Rome whence it is parted long-since after to-give
 deus cens mil mars d'argent à celx de l'ost, et viande
two hundred thousand marks of-silver to those of the-host and victuals
 à un an à petiz et à granz; et mener dix mil homes
for one year to small and to great and to-lead ten thousand men
 à pié et à cheval (telx à pié com nos vorrons, et telx à
on foot and on horse such on foot as we will-wish and such on
 cheval com nos vorrons) en ses vaissiaus et à sa despense
horse as we will-wish in his vessels and at his expense
 en la terre de Babiloine, et tenir par un an; et en la Terre
into the land of Babylon and to-hold for one year and in the Land
 d'oltremer à tenir cinq cens chevaliers à sa despense tote sa
of-overseas to keep five hundred knights at his expense all his
 vie, qui garderont la Terre. Telx est la convenance que vostre
life who will-guard the Land Such is the covenant that your

fils nos a; et si la nos a aseurée par saremenz et par
son to-us has and so it to-us has confirmed by oaths and by
 chartes pendanz, et par le roi Phelippe d'Alemaigne qui vostre
charters sealed and by the king Philip of-Germany who your
 file a. Icestui convenant volons-nos que vos asseurez alsì.

daughter has This covenant wish-we that you confirm likewise

189 « — Certes,» fait l'empereres, «la convenance est mult granz,

Certainly says the-emperor the covenant is very great
 ne je ne voi comment elle puisse estre ferme; et ne por
nor I not see how it may be fulfilled and not for
 quant, vos l'avez tant servi, et moi et lui, que se on vos
all-that you it-have so-much served both me and him that if one to-you
 en donoit trestot l'empire, si l'ariez-vos bien deservi.» En
thereof gave all the-empire so it-would-have-you well deserved In
 maintes manieres i ot paroles dites et retraites; mais la
many manners there had words said and recounted but the
 fins si fu telx, que li peres asseura les convenances, si con li
end so was such that the father confirmed the covenants so as the
 fils les avoit asseurées, par sairemens et par chartes pendanz
son them had confirmed by oaths and by charters sealed
 bullées d'or. La charte fu delivrée as messages. Ensi
with-bulls of-gold The charter was delivered to-the envoys Thus
 pristrent congié à l'empeor Sursac, et tornerent en l'ost
they-took leave of the-emperor Sursac and turned into the-host
 arriere, et distrent as barons qu'il avoient la besoigne faite.
back and said to-the barons that-they had the business done

The Coronation of the Young Alexius

XX

Young Alexius enters the city to his father, and at the two emperors' request the host lodges across the harbor, and many visit the city's churches and relics. Crowned on the first of August, Alexius begins to pay what he owes, and each pilgrim repays his passage as it was paid at Venice. He tells the barons privately that the Greeks hate him for their sake and asks them to stay until March, offering to extend the Venetian fleet a year at his cost. The barons put it to the host.

Lors monterent li baron à cheval et amenerent le vallet 190

Then mounted the barons on horse and led the youth

à mult grant joie en la cité à son pere; et li Gré li

with very great joy into the city to his father and the Greeks to-him

ovrirent la porte, et le reçurent à mult grant joie et à

opened the gate and him received with very great joy and with

mult grand feste. La joie del pere et del fil fu mult granz,

very great feast The joy of-the father and of-the son was very great

que il ne s'estoient pieça entreveu, et que de si grant

for they not themselves-had long-since seen-each-other and that from so great

poverté et de si grant essil furent torné à si grant haltesce,

poverty and from so great exile they-were turned to so great height

par Dieu avant et par les pelerins après. Ensi fu la joie mult

by God before and by the pilgrims after Thus was the joy very

granz dedenz Constantinoble et en l'ost defors des pelerins,

great within Constantinople and in the-host outside of-the pilgrims

de l'honor et de la victoire que Diex lor ot donnée.

of the-honor and of the victory that God to-them had given

Et l'endemain proia l'empereres as contes et as barons 191

And the-next-day prayed the-emperor to-the counts and to-the barons

et ses fils meismes que il por Dieu s'alassent herbergier

and his son himself that they for God themselves-should-go to-lodge

d'autre part del port devers l'Estanor et devers Galatas; que
on-other side of-the port toward the-Estanor and toward Galata for
se il se heberjoient en la vile, il doteroient la mellée
if they themselves lodged in the town they would-fear the brawl
d'als et des Grius, et bien en porroit la citez estre
of-them and of-the Greeks and well thereof could the city be
destruite. Et il dient que il l'avoient tant servi en mainte
destroyed And they say that they him-had so-much served in many-a
maniere, que il ne refuseroient jà chose qu'il lor proiaist.
manner that they not would-refuse ever thing that-he of-them should-ask
Ensi s'en alerent herbergier d'autre part: ensi sejournerent
Thus themselves-thence went to-lodge on-other side thus they-sojourned
en pais et en repos, en grant plenté de bones viandes.
in peace and in rest in great plenty of good victuals

192 Or poez savoir que mult de cels de l'ost alerent à veoir
Now you-can know that many of those of the-host went to see
Costantinople, et les riches palais et les altes yglises dont
Constantinople and the rich palaces and the high churches of-which
il avoit tant, et les granz richesses (que onques en nule vile
there were so-many and the great riches for ever in any town
tant n'en ot). Des saintuaires ne covient mie à parler;
so-much not-thereof there-was Of-the relics not behooves at-all to speak
que autant en avoit-il à ice jor en la vile cum el remanant
for as-much thereof had-it at that day in the town as in-the remnant
dou monde. Ensi furent mult comunel li Grieu et li François
of-the world Thus were very in-common the Greeks and the French
de totes choses, et de mercheandises et d'autres biens.
in all things and in merchandise and in-other goods

193 Par le commun conseil des Frans et des Grez fu devisé que
By the common counsel of-the Franks and of-the Greeks was devised that
li noviaus emperere seroit encoronez à la feste monseignor
the new emperor would-be crowned at the feast (of-)my-lord

saint Pere, entrant august. Ensi fu devisé, et ensi fu fait.

saint Peter entering August Thus was-it devised and thus was-it done

Coronez fu si haltement et si honoréement con l'em faisoit

Crowned he-was so highly and so honorably as one made

les emperours grex à cel tens. Après comença à paier l'avoir

the emperors Greek at that time After he-began to pay the-money

que il devoit à cels de l'ost; et il le departirent par l'ost, et

that he owed to those of the-host and they it divided through the-host and

rendi chascuns son passage tel con il l'avoient païé en Venise.

rendered each his passage such as they it-had paid in Venice

Li novials emperere ala sovent veoir les barons en l'ost, et

The new emperor went often to-see the barons in the-host and

mult les honora, tant cum il pot plus faire; et il le dut bien

much them honored as-much as he could more do and he it ought well

faire, quar il l'avoient mult bien servi. Un jor vint en l'ost

to-do for they him-had very well served One day he-came into the-host

as barons privéement, en l'ostel le conte Baudoin de

to-the barons privately in the-lodging (of-)the count Baldwin of

Flandres et de Hennaut. Enqui fu mandez li dux de Venise,

Flanders and of Hainault There was summoned the doge of Venice

et li halt baron privéement; et il lor mostra une parole et

and the high barons privately and he to-them set-forth a speech and

dist: «Seignor, je sui emperere par Dieu et par vos; et fait

said Lords I am emperor by God and by you and done

m'avez le plus halt servise que onques gens feissent mais

to-me-have-you the most high service that ever people did before

à nul home crestien. Sachiez que assez genz me mostrent bel

to any man Christian Know that many people to-me show fair

semblant, qui ne m'aiment mie; et mult ont li Grieu grant

semblance who not me-love at-all and much have the Greeks great

despit, quant je par voz forces sui entrez en mon heritage.

spite when I by your forces am entered into my heritage

194

195 «Vostre termes est près que vos vos en devez raler, et la
Your term is near that you yourselves thence must go-back and the
 compaignie de vos et des Venisiens ne dure que trosque à
company of you and of-the Venetians not lasts but until to
 la feste saint Michel. Dedenz si cort terme ne puis vostre
the feast (of-)saint Michael Within so short term not can-I your
 convent assovir. Sachiez, se vos me laissez, li Grieu me
covenant fulfill Know if you me leave the Greeks me
 héent por vos; je reperdrai la terre, et si m'ociront. Mais
bate for you I will-lose-again the land and so me-will-kill But
 faites une chose que je vos dirai: demoressiez trosque al
do a thing that I to-you will-say remain until to-the
 marc, et je vos alongeroie votre estoire de la feste saint
March and I to-you would-lengthen your fleet from the feast (of-)saint
 Michel en un an, et paieroie le costement as Venisiens,
Michael in one year and would-pay the cost to-the Venetians
 et vos donroie ce que mestiers vos seroit trosque à la
and to-you would-give this that need to-you would-be until to the
 Pasque. Et dedenz cel termine aroie ma terre si mise à
Easter And within that term I-would-have my land so put to
 point que je ne la poroie reperdre; et vostre convenance si
point that I not it could lose-again and your covenant so
 seroit atendue, que je auroie l'avoir païé, qui me vendroit
would-be fulfilled for I would-have the-money paid which to-me would-come
 de par totes mes terres; et je seroie si atornez de navile
on behalf-of all my lands and I would-be so furnished with fleet
 de aler avec vos ou d'envoier, si con je le vos ai convent;
to go with you or to-send so as I it to-you have covenanted
 et lors ariez l'esté de lonc en lonc por ostoier.»
and then you-would-have the-summer from length into length for to-make-war

Li baron distrent que il en parleroient ensemble sanz lui. 196

The barons said that they thereof would-speak together without him

Il conurent bien que c'ere voirs que il disoit, et que c'ere

They knew well that it-was true what he said and that it-was

mielz por l'empereor et por als. Et il respondirent que il

better for the-emperor and for them And they answered that they

nel pooient faire se par le comun esgart de l'ost non; et

not-it could do except by the common judgment of the-host not and

il en parleroient à cels de l'ost, et l'en respondroient

they thereof would-speak to those of the-host and him-thereof would-answer

ce que il poroient trover. Ensi s'en parti l'empereres

this that they could find Thus himself-thence departed the-emperor

Alexis d'els, et s'en rala en Constantinople arieres.

Alexius from-them and himself-thence went-back into Constantinople back

Et il remestrent en l'ost, et pristrent l'endemain un

And they remained in the-host and took the-next-day a

parlement. Et furent mandé tuit li baron et li chevetaigne

parliament And were summoned all the barons and the captains

de l'ost, et des chevaliers la graindre partie; et lors fu à

of the-host and of-the knights the greater part and then was to

toz ceste parole retraite, si con l'emperere lor ot requise.

all this speech related so as the-emperor to-them had requested

The Emperor's Progress

XXI

The old Corfu faction demands its ships for Syria; the others plead that winter is near and the Holy Land better won from a secure empire in spring. The Venetians agree to serve another year from Michaelmas, the emperor paying, and peace returns. Matthew of Montmorency dies and is buried in the Hospitallers' church. Alexius sets out with Boniface and other barons to subdue his empire, and all the Greeks submit except Johanitsa, the Vlach king of Wallachia and Bulgaria.

- 197 Lors ot mult grant descorde en l'ost, si cum il avoit eu
Then there-was very great discord in the-host so as there had been
maintes foiz de cels qui volsissent que li oz se departist;
many times from those who would-wish that the host itself should-break-up
que il lor sembloit que ele durast trop. Et cele partie
for it to-them seemed that it lasted too-long And that party
qui à Corfol avoit meu la descorde, semostrent les autres
which at Corfu had stirred the discord summoned the others
de lor sairemenz, et distrent: «Bailiez nos les vaissiauz, si
of their oaths and said Hand to-us the vessels so
con vos le nos avez juré; car nos en volons aler en Surie.»
as you it to-us have sworn for we thence wish to-go into Syria
- 198 Et li autre lor crioient merci, et distrent: «Seignor, por
And the others to-them cried mercy and said Lords for
Dieu, ne perissons la grant honor que Diex nos a faite. Se
God not let-us-destroy the great honor that God to-us has done If
nos alons en Surie, l'entrée de l'iver ert quant nos y
we go into Syria the-beginning of the-winter will-be when we there
vendrons, ne nos ne porons ostoier; ensinque ert la besoigne
shall-come nor we not will-be-able to-make-war so-that will-be the business
Nostre Seignor perdue. Mais se nos atendons trosque al
(of-)Our Lord lost But if we wait until to-the

marz, nos lairons cest empereor en bon estat, et nos en irons
March we will-leave this emperor in good state and we thence will-go
 riche d'avoir et de viande; et puis nos en irons en Surie, et
rich in-wealth and in victuals and then we thence will-go into Syria and
 corrons en la terre de Babiloine. Et nostre estoires nos durra
will-run into the land of Babylon And our fleet to-us will-last
 trosque à la saint Michiel, et de la saint Michiel trosque
until to the saint Michael and from the saint Michael until
 à la Pasque, porce que il ne se poront partir de nos
to the Easter because that they not themselves will-be-able to-part from us
 por l'iver. Et ensi porra estre la Terre d'oltre-mer aqoise.»
for the-winter And thus will-be-able to-be the Land of-overseas won

Il ne chaloit à cels qui l'ost voloient depecier de meillor 199
It not mattered to those who the-host wished to-break-up of better
 ne de peior, mais que li oz se departist. Et cil qui
nor of worse but that the host itself should-break-up And those who
 l'ost voloient tenir ensemble, travaillerent tant, à l'aïe
the-host wished to-hold together labored so-much with the-help
 de Dieu, que li afaires fu mis à fin en tel maniere que
of God that the affair was brought to end in such manner that
 li Venisien rejurerent un an, de la feste saint Michiel,
the Venetians swore-in-turn one year from the feast (of-)saint Michael
 à retenir l'estoire, et l'enpereres Alexis lor dona tant
to keep the-fleet and the-emperor Alexius to-them gave so-much
 que fait fu; et li pelerin lor rejurerent la compaignie
that done it-was and the pilgrims to-them swore-in-turn the company
 à tenir, si con il avoient fait autrefois, à cel termine
to keep so as they had done formerly at that term
 meismes. Et ensi fu la concorde et la pais mise en l'ost.
same And thus was the concord and the peace put in the-host

- 200 Lors lor avint une mult granz mesaventure en l'ost; que
Then to-them befell a very great mischance in the-host that
 Mahius de Monmorenci, qui ere uns des meillors chevaliers
Matthew of Montmorency who was one of-the best knights
 del roiaume de France, et des plus prisiez et des plus amez,
of-the kingdom of France and of-the most esteemed and of-the most loved
 acoucha de maladie, et agrava tant sa maladie que fu morz.
took-to-bed of sickness and worsened so-much his sickness that he-was dead
 Et ce fu granz diels et granz damages, uns des greignors
And this was great mourning and great damage one of-the greatest
 qui avenist en l'ost d'un sol home. Et fu enterrez à une
that might-happen in the-host from-a single man And he-was buried in a
 yglise de monseignor Saint Johan de l'Hospital de Jerusalem.
church of my-lord Saint John of the-Hospital of Jerusalem
- 201 Après, par le conseil des Grius et des François,
After by the counsel of-the Greeks and of-the French
 issi l'empereres Alexis, à mult grant compaignie, de
came-out the-emperor Alexius with very great company from
 Costantinople por l'empire aquiter et metre à sa volenté. Avec
Constantinople for the-empire to-subdue and to-put at his will With
 lui en ala granz partie des barons, et l'autre remest por
him thence went great part of-the barons and the-other remained for
 l'ost garder. Li marchis Bonifaces de Monferat ala avec lui,
the-host to-guard The marquis Boniface of Montferrat went with him
 et li cuens Hues de Saint Pol, et Henris li freres le conte
and the count Hugh of Saint Pol and Henry the brother (of-)the count
 Baudoin de Flandres et de Hennaut, et Jaques d'Avesnes,
Baldwin of Flanders and of Hainault and James of-Avesnes
 Guillaumes de Chanlite, et Hues de Colemi, et altres genz
William of Champlitte and Hugh of Colemi and other people
 assez dont li livres ore se taist. En l'ost remaint li cuens
plenty of-whom the book now itself is-silent In the-host remains the count

Baudoins de Flandres et de Hennaut, et li cuens Loeys

Baldwin of Flanders and of Hainault and the count Louis

de Blois et de Chartein, et la graindre partie des pelerins.

of Blois and of Chartres and the greater part of-the pilgrims

Et sachiez que en cele ost où l'empereres ala, que tuit 202

And know that in that host where the-emperor went that all

li Grieu de l'une part et de l'altre del Braz vindrent à

the Greeks from the-one side and from the-other of-the Arm came to

lui, et à son comandement et à sa volenté, et li firent

him and to his command and to his will and to-him did

fealté et homage con à lor seignor, fors solement Johanis

fealty and homage as to their lord except only Johanitsa

qui ere rois de Blaquie et de Bougrie. Et cil Johanis si

who was king of Wallachia and of Bulgaria And that Johanitsa so

ere uns Blas qui ere revelez contre son pere et contre son

was a Vlach who was rebelled against his father and against his

oncle; et si les avoit guerroiez vint anz, et avoit tant de

uncle and so them had warred twenty years and had so-much of

la terre conquis sor als que rois s'en ere faiz riches.

the land conquered upon them that king himself-thereof was made rich

Et sachiez que de cele partie del Braz Saint George devers

And know that of that side of-the Arm Saint George toward

occident, poi en failloit que il ne l'en avoit tolu près

west little thereof lacked that he — him-thereof had taken near

de la moitié. Icil ne vint pas à sa volenté ne à sa merci.

of the half That-one not came at-all to his will nor to his mercy

The Great Fire, and Alexius Breaks Faith

XXII

While the emperor is away, a brawl between Greeks and Latins ends in a fire that burns for two days across the city to Saint Sophia, and fifteen thousand Latins flee to the host. The Abbot of Loos dies. Alexius returns at Martinmas grown proud, stops visiting the barons, and lets his payments dwindle to nothing despite Boniface's reproaches, so the barons resolve to send envoys to demand the covenant or defy him.

- 203 Endementiers que l'enpereres Alexis fu en cele ost, si
While that the-emperor Alexius was in that host so
ravint une mult granz mesaventure en Costantinople;
happened-in-turn a very great mischance in Constantinople
que une meslée comença de Griens et des Latins qui erent
for a brawl began of Greeks and of-the Latins who were
en Constantinople estagier; dont il en i avoit mult. Et
in Constantinople resident of-whom it thereof there had many And
ne sai quex genz, por mal, mistrent le feu en la vile; et cil
not I-know what people for ill set the fire in the town and that
feus fu si granz et si orribles que nus hom nel pot esteindre
fire was so great and so horrible that any man not-it could extinguish
ne abaissier. Et quant ce virent li baron de l'ost, qui estoient
nor abate And when this saw the barons of the-host who were
herbergié d'autre part del port, si furent mult dolent et
lodged on-other side of-the port so they-were very sorrowful and
mult en orent grant pitié, cum il virent ces haltes yglises
much thereof had great pity when they saw these high churches
et ces palais riches fondre et abaissier, et ces granz rues
and these palaces rich collapse and fall and these great streets
marcheandes ardoir à feu; et il n'en pooient plus faire.
of-merchants burn with fire and they not-thereof could more do

Ensi porprist li feus desus le port à travers, tres ci que 204

Thus seized the fire above the port at crosswise right here until

parmi le plus espès de la vile et trosque en la mer d'autre

through the most thick of the town and as-far into the sea on-other

part, rez à rez del mostier Sainte-Sophie. Et dura deus jorz

side close to close with-the minster Saint-Sophia And it-lasting two days

et deus nuis; que onques ne pot estre estainz par home;

and two nights that ever not could be extinguished by man

et tenoit bien li frons del feu, si cum il aloit ardant, demie

and held well the front of-the fire so as it went burning half

lieue de terre. Del damage, ne de l'avoir, ne de la richesce

league of land Of-the damage nor of the-wealth nor of the riches

qui là fu perdue, ne vos porroit nus conter, et des

which there was lost not to-you could anyone recount and of-the

homes et des fames et des enfanz, dont il ot mult ars.

men and of-the women and of-the children of-whom there were many burned

Tuit li Latin qui estoient hebergié dedenz Costantinoble, de 205

All the Latins who were lodged within Constantinople from

quelque terre que il fussent, n'i osserent plus demorer,

whatever land that they might-be not-there dared more remain

ainz pristrent lor fames et lor anfan, et lor avoirs que

but took their wives and their children and their goods that

il en porent traire del feu ne eschamper; et entrèrent

they thereof could draw from-the fire or rescue and entered

en barges et en vaissiaus, et passerent le port devers

into barges and into vessels and crossed the port toward

les pelerins. Et ne furent mie pou, que il furent bien

the pilgrims And not were at-all few for they were well

quinze mil, que petit que grant; et puis fu il granz

fifteen thousand as-well small as great and afterward was it great

mestiers as pelerins que il fussent oltre passé. Ensi furent

need to-the pilgrims that they were over crossed Thus were

desacointié li Franc et li Grec; que il ne furent mie si
estranged the Franks and the Greeks for they not were at-all so
 comunel con il avoient esté devant: si ne s'en sorent
common as they had been before so not themselves-thereof knew
 à cui prendre; qu'il lor pesa d'une part et d'autre.

to whom to-take for-it to-them weighed on-one side and on-other

206 En cel termine, lor avint une chose dont li baron et
In that time to-them happened a thing whereof the barons and
 cil de l'ost furent mult irié; que li abbes de Los, qui
those of the-host were very angered for the abbot of Loos who
 ere sainz hom et prodom, fu morz, et qui avoit volu
was holy man and worthy-man was dead and who had wished
 le bien de l'ost; et ere moines de l'ordre de Cistials.

the good of the-host and was monk of the-order of Cîteaux

207 Ensi demora l'enpereres Alexis mult longuement en l'ost où
Thus remained the-emperor Alexius very long in the-host where
 il fu issuz, trosque à la saint Martin; et lors revint en
he was gone-out until to the saint Martin and then came-back into
 Constantinoble ariere. Mult fu granz joie de lor venue; que li
Constantinople back Very was great joy of their coming for the
 Grieu et les dames de Costantinoble alerent encontre lor amis
Greeks and the ladies of Constantinople went to-meet their friends
 à granz chevauchies; et li pelerin ralerent encontre les lor,
in great cavalcades and the pilgrims went-in-turn to-meet the theirs
 dont il orent mult grant joie. Ensi s'en reentra l'empereres
whereof they had very great joy Thus himself-thence re-entered the-emperor
 en Constantinoble el palais de Blaquerne; et li marchis
into Constantinople into-the palace of Blachernae and the marquis
 de Monferat et li altre baron s'en reparierent en l'ost.
of Montferrat and the other barons themselves-thence returned into the-host

L'empereres, qui mult ot bien fait son afaire et mult cuida 208

The-emperor who very had well done his business and much thought
 estre au desseure, s'enorgueilli vers les barons et vers
to-be at-the above himself-grew-proud toward the barons and toward
 cels qui tant de bien li avoient fait; ne ne les ala mie
those who so-much of good to-him had done nor not them went at-all
 veoir en l'ost si com il soloit faire. Et il envéioient à
to-see in the-host so as he was-wont to-do And they sent to
 lui, et prioient que il lor feist paiement de lor avoir,
him and prayed that he to-them should-make payment of their money
 si con il lor avoit convent. Et il les mena de respit
so as he to-them had covenant And he them led from delay
 en respit, et lor faisoit d'ores en altres petiz paiemenz
into delay and to-them made from-time to time small payments
 et povres; et en la fin devint noienz li paiemenz.
and poor and in the end became nothing the payment

Li marchis Bonifaces de Monferrat, qui plus l'avoit des 209

The marquis Boniface of Montferrat who more him-had than-the
 autres servi et mielz ere de lui, i ala mult sovent; et
others served and better was with him there went very often and
 li blasmoit le tort que il avoit vers els, et reprovoit
him blamed (for-)the wrong that he had toward them and reproached
 le grant service que il li avoient fait; que onques si
the great service that they to-him had done for ever so
 granz ne fu faiz à nul home. Et il les menoit par respit,
great not was done to any man And he them led by delay
 ne chose qu'il lor creantast ne tenoit; tant que il virent
nor thing that-he to-them promised not he-kept so-much that they saw
 et conurent clerement que il ne queroit se mal non.
and knew clearly that he not sought except ill not

- 210 Et pristrent li baron de l'ost un parlement, et li dux
And took the barons of the-host a parliament and the doge
 de Venise; et distrent qu'il conossoient que cil ne
of Venice and said that-they knew that that-one not
 lor atendroit nul covent, et si ne lor disoit onques
to-them would-keep any covenant and so not to-them said ever
 voir; et que il envoiassent bons messages por requerre
truth and that they should-send good envoys for to-require
 lor convenance, et por reprover lou servise que il li
their covenant and for to-reproach the service that they to-him
 avoient fait; et se il le voloit faire, preissent le; et s'il
had done and if he it wished to-do let-them-take it and if-he
 nel voloit faire, desfiassent le de par als, et bien li
not-it wished to-do let-them-defy him on behalf-of them and well to-him
 deissent qu'il pourchaceroient le lor si come il poroient.
let-them-say that-they would-pursue the theirs so as they could

The Defiance and the Fireships

XXIII

Conon of Béthune, Villehardouin, Miles the Brabançon, and three Venetians ride to Blachernae and, before both emperors, demand the covenant on pain of defiance. The Greeks are outraged that anyone should defy the emperor in his own chamber, and the envoys barely escape. War begins. In midwinter the Greeks loose seventeen fireships at night against the fleet, but the Venetians tow them burning out of the harbor, losing only a Pisan merchantman. Such is Alexius' reward for their service.

- 211 A cel message fu esliz Coenes de Betune et Geoffrois de
To that message was chosen Conon of Béthune and Geoffrey of
 Ville-Hardoin li mareschaus de Champaigne, et Miles li
Villehardouin the marshal of Champagne and Miles the

Braibanz de Provins; et li dux de Venise i envia trois
Brabançon of Provins and the doge of Venice there sent three
 hals homes de son conseil. Ensi monterent li message sor lor
high men of his council Thus mounted the envoys on their
 chevaux, les espées çaintes; et chevaucherent ensemble trosque
horses the swords girt and rode together as-far
 al palais de Blaquerne. Et sachiez que il alerent en grant
to-the palace of Blachernae And know that they went in great
 peril et en grant aventure, selon la traïson as Grés.
peril and in great bazard according-to the treason of-the Greeks
 Ensique descendirent à la porte et entrerent el palais, et 212
Thus-so they-dismounted at the gate and entered into-the palace and
 troverent l'empereor Alexi et l'empereor Sursac son père seanz
found the-emperor Alexius and the-emperor Sursac his father sitting
 en deus chaires lez-à-lez. Et delez aus seoit l'empereris qui
on two chairs side-by-side And beside them sat the-empress who
 ere fame al pere et marastre al fil, et ere suer al roi
was wife to-the father and stepmother to-the son and was sister to-the king
 de Hongrie, bele dame et bone. Et furent à grant plenté
of Hungary fair lady and good And there-were in great plenty
 de haltes genz, et mult sembla bien corz à riche prince.
of high people and very seemed well court of rich prince
 Par le conseil as autres messages mostra la parole Coenes de 213
By the counsel of-the other envoys set-forth the speech Conon of
 Betune, qui mult ere sages et bien enparlez: «Sire, nos somes
Béthune who very was wise and well spoken Lord we are
 à toi venu de par les barons de l'ost et de par le duc de
to thee come on behalf-of the barons of the-host and on behalf-of the doge of
 Venise. Et saches tu que il te reprovent le grant servise que
Venice And know thou that they thee reproach-with the great service that
 il t'ont fait, con la gens sevent et cum il est apparisant.
they to-thee-have done as the people know and as it is apparent

Vos lor avez juré, vos et vostre peres, la convenance à
You to-them have sworn you and your father the covenant to
 tenir que vos lor avez convent; et vos chartes en ont.
keep that you to-them have covenanted and your charters thereof they-have
 Vos ne lor avez mie si bien tenue com vos deussiez.

You not to-them have at-all so well kept as you ought

- 214 «Semont vos en ont maintes foiz, et nos vos en
Summoned you thereof they-have many times and we you thereof
 semonons, voiant toz voz barons, de par als, que vos lor
summon seeing all your barons on behalf-of them that you to-them
 taignoiz la convenance qui est entre vos et als. Se vos le
keep the covenant which is between you and them If you it
 faites, mult lor ert bel; et se vos nel faites, sachiez
do much to-them it-will-be fair and if you not-it do know
 que dès hore en avant il ne vos tiennent ne por seignor ne
that from this-hour on forward they not you hold nor for lord nor
 por ami; ainz porchaceront que il auront le leur en totes
for friend but will-pursue that they will-have the theirs in all
 les manieres que il porront. Et bien vos mandent-il que il
the manners that they can And well you send-word-they that they
 ne feroient ne vos ne altrui mal, tant que il l'aussent
not would-do neither to-you nor to-another ill until that they him-had
 desfié; que il ne firent onques traïson, ne en lor terre n'est-il
defied for they not did ever treason nor in their land not-is-it
 mie acostumé que il le facent. Vos avez bien oï que nos
at-all accustomed that they it do You have well heard what we
 vos avons dit, et vos vos conseilleroiz si con vos plaira.»
to-you have said and you yourselves will-consider so as to-you will-please

- 215 Mult tindrent li Gré à grant mervoille et à grant oltrage
Much held the Greeks to great marvel and to great outrage
 ceste desfiance; et distrent que onques mais nus n'avoit
this defiance and said that ever before anyone not-had

esté si ardiz qui ossast l'empereor de Constantinople desfier
been so bold who dared the-emperor of Constantinople defy
 en sa chambre meismes. Mult fist as messages malvais
in his chamber itself Much made to-the envoys bad
 semblant l'empereres Alexis, et tuit li Grieu qui maintes
semblance the-emperor Alexius and all the Greeks who many
 foiz lor avoient fait mult biel.

times to-them had made very fair-show

Li bruis fu mult granz par là dedenz; et li message 216

The noise was very great through there within and the envoys

s'en torrent et viennent à la porte et montent sor les

themselves-thence turn and come to the gate and mount on the

chevaus. Quant il furent defors la porte, n'i ot celui

horses When they were outside the gate not-there was that-one

qui ne fust mult liez; et ne fu mie granz mervoille, que

who not were very glad and not was at-all great marvel for

il erent mult de grant peril eschampé; que mult se tint

they were very from great peril escaped for much it held

à pou que il ne furent tuit mort ou pris. Ensi s'en

by little that they — were all dead or taken Thus themselves-thence

revindrent à l'ost, et conterent as barons si con il avoient

came-back to the-host and told to-the barons so as they had

exploitié. Ensi comença la guerre, et forfist qui forfaire pot,

fared Thus began the war and did-harm who to-do-harm could

et par mer et par terre. En maint leu assemblerent li Franc

both by sea and by land In many-a place joined-battle the Franks

et li Grieu; onques, Dieu merci! n'assemblerent ensemble

and the Greeks ever God's mercy not-joined together

que plus n'i perdissent li Grieu que li Franc. Ensi dura

that more not-there should-lose the Greeks than the Franks Thus lasted

la guerre grant piece, trosque enz el cuer de l'iver.

the war great while until within in-the heart of the-winter

- 217 Et lors se porpenserent li Grieu d'un mult grant enging;
And then themselves bethought the Greeks of-a very great device
 qu'il pristrent dix sept nés granz, ses emplirent totes de
for-they took ten seven ships great so-them filled all with
 granz merrienz et d'esprises, et d'estopes, et de poiz, et de
great timbers and with-kindling and with-tow and with pitch and with
 toniaus; et attendirent tant que li venz venta de vers aus
casks and waited until that the wind blew from toward them
 mult durement. Et une nuit, à mie nuit, mistrent le feu es
very hard And one night at mid night they-set the fire in-the
 nés, et laisserent les voiles aler al vent; et li feus aluma
ships and let the sails go to-the wind and the fire kindled
 mult halt, si que il sembloit que tote la terre arsis. Et ensi
very high so that it seemed that all the land might-burn And thus
 s'en viennent vers les navies des pelerins; et li criz
themselves-thence come toward the fleets of-the pilgrims and the cry
 lieve en l'ost, et saillent as armes de totes parz. Li Venisien
rises in the-host and they-leap to-the arms from all sides The Venetians
 corrent à lor vaissiaus, et tuit li autre qui vaissials i avoient;
run to their vessels and all the others who vessels there had
 et les comencent à rescore dou feu mult viguerosement.
and them begin to rescue from-the fire very vigorously
- 218 Et bien tesmoigne Joffrois li mareschais de Champaigne,
And well testifies Geoffrey the marshal of Champagne
 qui ceste ovre dita, que onques sor mer ne s'aiderent genz
who this work dictated that ever on sea not themselves-helped people
 mielz que li Venisien firent; qu'il sailirent es galies et
better than the Venetians did for-they leaped into-the galleys and
 es barges des nés, et prenoient les nés totes ardanz à
into-the barges of-the ships and took the ships all burning with
 cros, et les tiroient par vive force devant lor anemis fors
books and them drew by living force before their enemies out

del port, et les metoient el corrant del Braz, et les
of-the port and them put into-the current of-the Arm and them
 laissoient aler ardent contreval le Braz. Des Grex i avoit
let go burning down the Arm Of-the Greeks there were
 tant sor la rive venuz que ce n'ere fins ne mesure; et ere
so-many on the shore come that this not-was end nor measure and was
 li criz si granz que il sembloit que terre et mers fondist.
the cry so great that it seemed that earth and sea might-sink
 Et entroient es barges et en salvacions, et traioient
And they-entered into-the barges and into lifeboats and shot
 as noz qui rescooient le feu; et en i ot de bleciez.
at-the ours who rescued-from the fire and of-them there were of wounded
 La chevalerie de l'ost, erraument qu'ele ot oï le cri, 219
The knighthood of the-host at-once that-it had heard the cry
 si s'armerent tuit; et issirent les batailles as champs,
so themselves-armed all and came-out the battalions to-the fields
 chascune endroit soi, si con ele ere hebergie; et il douterent
each in-place itself so as it was lodged and they feared
 que li Greiu ne les venissent assaillir par devers les champs.
that the Greeks — them should-come to-assail on toward the fields
 Ensi soffrirent cel travail et cele angoisse trosque à cler jor; 220
Thus they-suffered that travail and that anguish until to clear day
 mais par l'aïe de Dieu ne perdirent noient li noz, fors que une
but by the-help of God not lost anything the ours except that one
 nef de Pisans qui ere plaine de marchaandise; icele si fu arse
ship of Pisans which was full of merchandise that-one so was burned
 del feu. Mult orent esté en grant peril cele nuit; que se lor
by-the fire Much had-they been in great peril that night for if their
 naviles fust ars, il aussent tot perdu; que il ne s'en
fleet were burned they would-have all lost for they not themselves-thence

peussent aler par terre ne par mer. Ice guerredon lor volt
 could go by land nor by sea This reward to-them wished
 rendre li empereres Alexis del service qu'il li avoient fait.
 to-render the emperor Alexis for-the service that-they to-him had done

Murzuphlus Usurps the Empire

XXIV

Murzuphlus, the Greek who most urged the quarrel, seizes Alexius in his bed at midnight, puts on the red boots, and is crowned. Sursac dies of fear, and Murzuphlus, after poison fails, strangles Alexius and buries him with honor as if he had died a natural death. The clergy declare the war just against murderers who have left the obedience of Rome. Henry of Flanders raids Philea on the Black Sea, and Murzuphlus, ambushing him on his return, is routed and loses his standard and an icon of Our Lady.

- 221 Et lors virent li Gré qui erent issi mellé as Frans,
And then saw the Greeks who were thus embroiled with-the Franks
 qu'il n'i avoit mais point de la pais; si pristrent conseil
that-it not-there had more a-while of the peace so they-took counsel
 privèement por lor seignor traïr. Il i avoit un Gré qui ere
privately for their lord to-betray It there had a Greek who was
 mielz de lui que tuit li autre, et plus li avoit fait faire la
better with him than all the others and more him had made make the
 mellée as Frans que nus. Cil Grieus avoit à non Morchufflex.
brawl with-the Franks than anyone That Greek had as name Murzuphlus
- 222 Par le conseil et par le consentement as autres, un soir,
By the counsel and by the consent of-the others one evening
 à la mie nuit, que l'empereres Alexis dormoit en sa chambre,
at the mid night that the-emperor Alexius slept in his chamber
 cil qui garder le devoient (Morchufflés demainement et li
those who to-guard him ought Murzuphlus especially and the

autre qui avec lui estoient) le pristrent en son lit et le
others who with him were him took in his bed and him
 gitterent en une chartre, en prison; et Morchufflés chauça les
cast into a dungeon in prison and Murzuphlus put-on the
 hueses vermoilles par l'aïe et par le conseil des autres Grex.
boots red by the-help and by the counsel of-the other Greeks
 Si se fist empereor; après le coronerent à Sainte Sophie.
So himself made emperor after him they-crowned at Saint Sophia
 Or oïez se onques si orrible traïsons fu faite par nule gent.
Now hear if ever so horrible treason was done by any people
 Quant ce oï l'emperere Sursac que ses fils fu pris et 223
When this heard the-emperor Sursac that his son was taken and
 cil fu coronez, si ot grant paor, et li prist une
that-one was crowned so he-had great fear and him took a
 maladie qui ne dura mie longuement; si moru. Et cil
sickness which not lasted at-all long so he-died And that
 emperere Morchuflex si fist le fil que il avoit en prison,
emperor Murzuphlus so had the son whom he had in prison
 deus foiz ou trois enpoisoner; et ne plot Deu que il
two times or three poisoned and not it-pleased God that he
 morust. Après ala, si l'estrangla en murtre; et quant il
should-die After he-went so him-strangled in murder and when he
 l'ot estranglé, si fist dire partot que il ere morz de
him-had strangled so had said everywhere that he was dead of
 sa mort; et le fist ensevelir con empereor honorablement,
his death and him had buried as emperor honorably
 et metre en terre; et fist grant semblant que lui pesoit.
and put in earth and made great semblance that him it-grieved
 Mais murtres ne puet estre celez. Clerement fu seu 224
But murder not can be bidden Clearly it-was known
 prochainement des Griens et des François que li murtres
soon by-the Greeks and by-the French that the murder

ere si faiz con vos avez oï retraire. Lors pristrent li baron
was so done as you have heard related Then took the barons
 de l'ost et li dux de Venise un parlement; et si i
of the-host and the doge of Venice a parliament and so there
 furent li evesque et toz li clergie. A ce s'acorda toz li
were the bishops and all the clergy To this themselves-agreed all the
 clergie (et cil qui avoient le commandement de l'apostoile
clergy and those who had the command of the-pope
 le mostrerent as barons et as pelerins) que cil qui tel
it showed to-the barons and to-the pilgrims that he who such
 murtre faisoit, n'avoit droit en terre tenir; et tuit cil qui
murder did not-had right in land to-hold and all those who
 estoient consentant, estoient parçonier del murtre; et oltre
were consenting were partners of-the murder and beyond
 tot ce, que il s'estoient sotrait de l'obedience de Rome.
all this that they themselves-were withdrawn from the-obedience of Rome

225 «Porquoi nos vos disons, fait li clergie, que la bataille
Wherefore we to-you say says the clergy that the battle
 est droite et juste; et se vos avez droite entencion de
is right and just and if you have right intencion to
 conquerre la terre et mettre à l'obedience de Rome, vos
conquer the land and to-put at the-obedience of Rome you
 arez le pardon tel cum l'apostoiles le vos a octroïé,
will-have the indulgence such as the-pope it to-you has granted
 tuit cil qui confés i morront.» Sachiez que ceste chose
all those who confessed there will-die Know that this thing
 fu granz confors as barons et as pelerins.
was great comfort to-the barons and to-the pilgrims

226 Granz fu la guerre entre les Frans et les Grex; car ele n'apaisa
Great was the war between the Franks and the Greeks for it not-abated
 mie, ainz crut adès et esforça; et poi ere jorz que on n'i
at-all but grew ever and strengthened and few was days that one not-there

assemblast ou par terre ou par mer. Lors fist une chevauchie

joined-battle either by land or by sea Then made a raid

Henris, li freres le conte Baudoin de Flandres, et mena

Henry the brother (of-)the count Baldwin of Flanders and led

grant partie de la bone gent de l'ost. Avec lui ala Jaques

great part of the good people of the-host With him went James

d'Avesnes, et Baldoin de Belveoir, Odes li Champenois de

of-Avesnes and Baldwin of Beauvoir Odo the Champenois of

Chanlite, Guillaumes ses freres, et les genz de lor país. Et

Champlitte William bis brother and the people of their country And

s'en partirent à une vesprée, et chevaucherent toute nuit;

themselves-thence departed at an evening and rode all night

et l'endemain, de halte hore, si vindrent à une bone vile qui la

and the-next-day at high hour so they-came to a good town which the

Filée avoit nom, et la pristrent; et firent grant gaieng de proies,

Philea had name and it took and made great gain of booty

de prisons, de robes, de viandes, qu'il envoient es barges

of prisoners of robes of victuals which-they sent in-the barges

à l'ost contreval le Braz; que la vile seoit sor la mer de Rossie.

to the-host down the Arm for the town sat on the sea of Russia

Ensi sejournerent deus jors en cele vile, à mult grant plenté de 227

Thus they-sojourned two days in that town with very great plenty of

viandes, dont il en i avoit mult et assez. Al tierz jor,

victuals of-which it thereof there had many and plenty At-the third day

s'en partirent à totes lor proies et à toz lor gaienz,

themselves-thence departed with all their booty and with all their gains

et chevauchierent arriers vers l'ost. L'empereres Morchuflés oï

and rode back toward the-host The-emperor Murzuphlus heard

dire les noveles que cil estoient issu de l'ost; et parti par

say the news that those were gone-out of the-host and departed by

nuit de Costantinoble à grant partie de sa gent, et lors se

night from Constantinople with great part of his people and then himself

mist en un agait où cil devoient revenir. Et les vit passer à
put in an ambush where those were-to come-back And them saw pass with
 totes lor proies et à toz lor gaains, et les batailles l'une après
all their booty and with all their gains and the battalions the-one after
 l'autre, tant que l'ariere-garde vint. L'ariere-garde faisoit Henris,
the-other until that the-rearguard came The-rearguard made Henry
 li freres le conte Baldoïn de Flandres, et la soe gens; et
the brother (of-)the count Baldwin of Flanders and the his people and
 l'empereres Murchuflex lor corrut sore à l'entrée d'un bois;
the-emperor Murzupblus them ran upon at the-entrance of-a wood
 et cil tornent encontre lui. Si assemblerent mult durement.
and those turn against him So they-joined very hard

228 A l'aïe de Dieu, fu desconfiz l'emperere Murchuflex; et
With the-help of God was routed the-emperor Murzupblus and
 dut estre pris ses cors domaines; et pardi son gonfanon
was-near to-be taken his body own and lost his gonfanon
 emperial, et une ancone qu'il faisoit porter devant lui, où
imperial and an icon which-he had carried before him where
 il se fioit mult il et li autre Gré (en cele ancone ere
he himself trusted much he and the other Greeks in that icon was
 Nostre Dame formée); et pardi bien trosque à vint chevaliers
Our Lady figured and lost well as-far to twenty knights
 de la meillor gent que il avoit. Ensi fu desconfiz l'empereres
of the best people that he had Thus was routed the-emperor
 Murchuflex con vos avez oï; et fu granz la guerre entre
Murzupblus as you have heard and was great the war between
 lui et les Frans; et fu jà de l'iver granz partie passée,
him and the Franks and was already of the-winter great part passed
 et entor la Chandelor fu, et aprocha li quaresmes.
and about the Candlemas it-was and drew-near the Lent

The Pact Before the Assault

XXV

Those who sailed from Marseilles to Syria achieve nothing: some die of sickness, and a company riding to serve Bobemond of Antioch is destroyed by the Turks, Vilain of Neuilly among the dead. Before Constantinople both sides build up their works, the Greeks adding wooden stages to every tower. Franks and Venetians swear a pact: the booty pooled and shared, six electors from each side to choose an emperor who takes a quarter and two palaces, and twenty-four to assign the fiefs.

Or vos lairons de cels qui devant Constantinoble sunt; si 229
Now to-you we-will-leave of those who before Constantinople are so
parlerons de cels qui alerent as autres porz, et de l'estoire
we-will-speak of those who went to-the other ports and of the-fleet
de Flandres qui avoit l'hiver sejorné à Marseille, et furent
of Flanders which had the-winter sojourned at Marseilles and were
passé en l'esté en la terre de Surie tuit; et furent si granz
crossed in the-summer into the land of Syria all and were so great
genz que il estoient assez plus que cil qui estoient devant
people that they were much more than those who were before
Costantinoble. Or oïez quex damages fu, quant il ne furent
Constantinople Now hear what damage it-was when they not were
avec cels josté; quar toz jorz mais fust la crestientez alcie. Mais
with those joined for all days more would-be the Christendom raised But
Diex nel volt por lor pechiez: li un furent mort de l'enfermeté
God not-it wished for their sins the ones were dead of the-sickness
de la terre; li autre tornerent en lor país arriere. Onques nul
of the land the others turned into their country back Ever any
exploit ne firent ne nul bien, là où il alerent en la terre.
achievement not they-made nor any good there where they went in the land

230 Et une compaignie de mult bone gent s'esmut por raler
And a company of very good people itself-set-out for to-go-in-turn
 en Antioche al prince Buymont, qui ere princes d'Antioche
into Antioch to-the prince Bohemond who was prince of-Antioch
 et cuens de Triple, et avoit guerre al roy Lion, qui ere
and count of Tripoli and had war with-the king Leo who was
 sires des Hermins. Et cele compaignie aloit al prince en
lord of-the Armenians And that company went to-the prince in
 soldées; et li Turc del païs le sorent, et lor firent un
pay and the Turks of-the country it knew and to-them made an
 agait par là où il devoient passer. Et vindrent à els; si
ambush by there where they were-to pass And they-came to them so
 se combatirent et furent desconfit li Franc, que onques
themselves fought and were routed the Franks for ever
 nus n'en eschampa qui ne fust ou morz ou pris.

anyone not-thereof escaped who not might-be either dead or taken

231 Là si fu morz Vilains de Nuilli, qui ert uns des bons
There so was dead Vilain of Neuilly who was one of-the good
 chevaliers del monde, et Giles de Traisignies, et maint autre;
knights of-the world and Giles of Trasignies and many another
 et fu pris Bernarz de Moroel, et Renaus de Danpierre, et
and was taken Bernard of Moreuil and Renaud of Dampierre and
 Johans de Vilers, et Guillaumes de Nuilly, qui colpes n'i
John of Villers and William of Neuilly who fault not-there
 avoit. Et sachiez que de quatre-vins chevaliers que il avoit
had And know that of fourscore knights that there were
 en la rote, onques uns n'en eschapa qu'il ne fussent ou
in the company ever one not-thereof escaped that-they not might-be either
 mort ou pris. Et bien tesmoigne li livres que onques nus
dead or taken And well testifies the book that ever anyone

n'eschiva l'ost de Venise, que maus ou honte ne li avenist;
not-shunned the-host of Venice that ill or shame not to-him might-befall
 et por ce si fait que sages qui se tient devers le mielx.
and for this so does as wise-man who himself holds toward the better
 Or vos lairons de cels; si parlerons de cels qui sont 232
Now to-you we-will-leave of those so we-will-speak of those who are
 devant Costantinoble, qui mult bien firent lor engins atorer,
before Constantinople who very well had their engines arrayed
 et lor perieres et lor mangonials drecier par les nés et par
and their petreries and their mangonels raised on the ships and on
 les vissiers, et toz engins qui ont mestier à vile prandre;
the horse-transports and all engines which have use for town to-take
 et les eschieles des antaines drecier sor les hauz mas des
and the ladders of-the yards raised on the high masts of-the
 nés, qui estoient si haltes que n'ere se merveile non.
ships which were so high that it-not-was except marvel not
 Et quant ce virent li Grieu, si recomencierent la vile à 233
And when this saw the Greeks so began-again the town to
 rehorder endroit als, qui mult ere fermée de hals murs et de
re-timber opposite them which very was enclosed with high walls and with
 haltes tors. Ne n'i avoit si halte tor où il ne feissent
high towers Nor not-there was so high tower where they not should-make
 deus estages ou trois de fust por plus halcier; ne onques
two stages or three of wood for more to-raise nor ever
 nule vile ne fu si bien hordée. Ensi laborerent d'une part
any town not was so well timbered Thus labored on-one side
 et d'autre li Grieu et li Franc grant partie del quaresme.
and on-other the Greeks and the Franks great part of-the Lent
 Lors parlerent cil de l'ost ensemble et pristrent conseil 234
Then spoke those of the-host together and took counsel
 coment il se contendroient. Assez i ot parlé et avant
how they themselves would-conduct Much there was spoken both forward

et arriere; mais la summe del conseil fut tels, que, se Diex
and back but the sum of-the counsel was such that if God
 donoit qu'il entrassent en la vile à force, que toz li gaainz
granted that-they should-enter into the town by force that all the gain
 qui i seroit faiz, seroit aportez ensemble et departiz
which there would-be made would-be brought together and divided
 comunelment si con il devroit; et se il estoient poesteif de
in-common so as it ought and if they were masters of
 la cité, six home seroient pris de François et six de Venisiens;
the city six men would-be taken of French and six of Venetians
 et cil jureroient sor sains que il esliroient à empereor celui
and those would-swear on relics that they would-elect to emperor him
 cui il cuideroient que fust plus à profit de la terre. Et cil
whom they would-think that would-be most to profit of the land And he
 qui empereres seroit par l'eslecion de cels, si aroit lo quart
who emperor would-be by the-election of those so would-have the fourth
 de tote la conquete et dedenz la cité et defors, et en outre
of all the conquest both within the city and outside and in addition
 aroit le palais de Bouchelion et celui de Blaquerne; et les
would-have the palace of Bucoleon and that of Blachernae and the
 trois pars seroient parties par mi, la moitez as Venisiens
three parts would-be divided by half the half to-the Venetians
 et la moitez à cels de l'ost. Et lors seroient pris doze
and the half to those of the-host And then would-be taken twelve
 des plus sages de l'ost des pelerins et doze des Venisiens,
of-the most wise of the-host of-the pilgrims and twelve of-the Venetians
 et cil departiroient les fiez et les honors par les homes,
and those would-divide the fiefs and the honors among the men
 et deviseroient quel servise il en feroient à l'empereor.
and would-set-out what service they thereof would-do to the-emperor

Ensi fu ceste convenance assurée et jurée d'une part et 235

*Thus was this covenant confirmed and sworn on-one side and
d'autre des François et des Venisiens, qu'à l'issue de marz
on-other by-the French and by-the Venetians that-at the-end of March
en un an s'en porroit aler qui voldroit; et cil qui
in one year himself-thence could go who would-wish and those who
demorroient en la terre seroient tenu de servise à l'empereor
would-remain in the land would-be bound of service to the-emperor
tel con ordenez seroit. Ensi fu faite la convenance et assurée,
such as ordered would-be Thus was made the covenant and confirmed
et escommenié del clergié tuit cil qui ne la tendroient.
and excommunicated by-the clergy all those who not it would-keep*

The Second Assault

XXVI

On the Friday after mid-Lent the fleet attacks half a league of wall, but the pilgrims are driven back with loss, and some would sail away. They lash the ladder ships in pairs, two to a tower. On Monday a north wind drives the Pilgrim and the Paradise against a tower, and a Venetian and Andrew of Urboise enter it. Knights scale the walls, break three gates, and charge Murzuphlus' camp; he flees to Bucoleon, and the host camps by the walls, expecting over a month's fighting.

Mult fu bien li naviles atornez et hordez, et recueillies 236

*Very was well the fleet arrayed and timbered and gathered
les viandes totes as pelerins. Joesdi après mi-quaresme,
the victuals all to-the pilgrims Thursday after mid-Lent
entrent tuit es nés et traistrent les chevaus es
entered all into-the ships and drew the horses into-the
vissiers. Et chascune bataille si ot son navile par soi,
horse-transport And each battalion so had its fleet by itself*

et furent tuit coste à coste arengié; et furent departies
and were all side to side ranged and were divided
 les nés d'entre les galies et les vissiers. Et fu granz
the ships from-among the galleys and the horse-transport And it-was great
 mervoille à regarder; et bien tesmoigne li livres que bien
marvel to behold and well testifies the book that well
 duroit demie lieue françoise li assals, si cum il ere ordenez.
lasted half league French the assault so as it was ordered

237 Et le vendredi matin, se traistrent les nés et les galies et
And the Friday morning themselves drew the ships and the galleys and
 li autre vaissel vers la vile, si con ordené erent; et commence
the other vessels toward the town so as ordered they-were and begins
 li assals mult fors et mult durs. En mains leus descendirent à
the assault very strong and very hard In many places they-went-down to
 terre et alerent trosque as murs; et en mains leus refurent
land and went as-far to-the walls and in many places were-in-turn
 les eschieles des nés si aprochies, que cil des tors et des
the ladders of-the ships so approached that those of-the towers and of-the
 murs et cil des eschieles s'entreferoient des glaives, de
walls and those of-the ladders each-other-struck with-the lances from
 main tenant. Ensi dura cil assals, mult durs et mult fors et
band holding Thus lasted that assault very hard and very strong and
 mult fiers, trosque vers hore de none en plus de cent leus.
very fierce until toward hour of nones in more than hundred places

238 Mais par noz pechiez, furent li pelerin resorti de l'asaut;
But by our sins were the pilgrims driven-back from the-assault
 et cil qui estoient descendu à terre des galies et des
and those who were gone-down to land from-the galleys and from-the
 vissiers, furent remis enz à force. Et bien sachiez que plus
horse-transport were put-back in by force And well know that more
 pardirent cil de l'ost cel jor que li Grieu, et mult en
lost those of the-host that day than the Greeks and much thereof

furent li Grieu resbaudi. Tels i ot qui se traistrent
were the Greeks emboldened Such there were who themselves drew
 arriere de l'assaut, et les vassials en quoi il estoient; et
back from the-assault and the vessels in which they were and
 tels i ot qui remestrent à ancre si près de la vile, que il
such there were who remained at anchor so near to the town that they
 getoient à perrieres et à mangonials li un as autres.
threw with petraries and with mangonels the ones at-the others
 Lors pristrent à la vesprée un parlement cil de l'ost et li 239
Then took at the evening a parliament those of the-host and the
 dux de Venise, et assemblerent en une yglise d'autre part (de
doge of Venice and assembled in a church on-other side from
 cele part où il avoient esté logié). Là ot maint conseil
that side where they had been lodged There was many-a counsel
 doné et pris; et furent mult esmaïé cil de l'ost por ce que
given and taken and were very dismayed those of the-host for this that
 il lor fu le jor mescheu. Assez i ot de cels qui loerent
it to-them was the day befallen-ill Plenty there were of those who advised
 que on alast d'autre part de la vile, de cele part où ele
that one should-go on-other side of the town on that side where it
 n'ere mie si hordée. Et li Venicien, qui plus savoient de la
not-was at-all so timbered And the Venetians who more knew of the
 mer, distrent que se il i aloient, li coranz de l'aigue les
sea said that if they there went the current of the-water them
 enmenroit contreval le Braz; si ne porroient lor vaissiaus arester.
would-carry down the Arm so not they-could their vessels stop
 Et sachiez que il avoit de cels qui volsissent que li coranz
And know that there were of those who would-wish that the current
 enmenast les vaissials contreval le Braz, ou li venez (à cels ne
should-carry the vessels down the Arm or the wind to them not

chausist ù), mais qu'il partissent de la terre et alassent en
mattered where but that-they should-depart from the land and should-go on
 voie. Et il n'ere mie mervoille, que mult erent en grant peril.

way And it not-was at-all marvel for very they-were in great peril

240 Assez i ot parlé et avant et ariere; mais la somme del

Much there was spoken both forward and back but the sum of-the

conseil si fu tels: que il ratorneroient lor affaire l'endemain,

counsel so was such that they would-array-again their business the-next-day

qui semadis ere, et le diemenche tote jor, et le lundi

which Saturday was and the Sunday all day and the Monday

iroient à l'assaut; et lieroient les nés où les eschieles

would-go to the-assault and would-bind the ships where the ladders

estoient, deus et deus. Ensi assauroient deus nés à une

were two and two Thus would-assault two ships to one

tor, porce qu'il orent veu que à cel jor n'avoit assailli que

tower because that-they had seen that at that day not-had assailed but

une nés à une tor, si estoit trop grevée chascune par

one ship at one tower so was too-much burdened each by

soi; que cil de la tor estoient plus que cil de l'eschiele.

itself for those of the tower were more than those of the-ladder

Et por ce si fu bons porpensemenz que plus greveroient

And for this so it-was good thought that more would-burden

deus eschieles à une tor que une. Ensi com il fu devisé,

two ladders at one tower than one Thus as it was devised

si fu fait; et ensi attendirent le semadi et dimenche.

so it-was done and thus they-awaited the Saturday and Sunday

241 L'empereres Morchufles s'ere venuz herbergier devant

The-emperor Murzuphlus himself-was come to-lodge before

l'asaut en une place à tot son pooir, et ot tendues ses

the-assault in a place with all his power and had pitched his

vermeilles tentes. Ensi dura cil affaires trosque à lundi matin;

red tents Thus lasted that business until to Monday morning

et lors furent armé cil des nés et des vissiers et cil
and then were armed those of-the ships and of-the horse-transport and those
 des galies. Et cil de la vile les doterent mains que il ne
of-the galleys And those of the town them feared less than they —
 firent à premiers; si furent si esbaudi que sor les murs et sor
did at first so were so emboldened that on the walls and on
 les tors ne paroient se genz non. Et lors comença li assaus
the towers not appeared except people not And then began the assault
 fiers et merveilleus; et chascuns vaissiaus assailloit endroit lui.
fierce and marvelous and each vessel assailed in-place itself
 Li huz de la noise fu si granz que il sembla que terre fondist.
The shout of the noise was so great that it seemed that earth might-sink
 Ensi dura li assaus longement, tant que Nostre Sires lor fist 242
Thus lasted the assault long until that Our Lord to-them had
 lever un vent qu'on apele Boire; et bota les nés et les vaissiaus
raised a wind that-one calls Boreas and pushed the ships and the vessels
 sor la rive plus qu'il n'estoient devant. Et deus nés qui
on the shore more than-they were before And two ships which
 estoient liées ensemble, don l'une avoit nom la Pelerine et li
were tied together whereof the-one had name the Pilgrim and the
 autre li Paravis, aprochierent tant à la tor, l'une d'une part et
other the Paradise approached so-much to the tower the-one on-one side and
 l'autre d'autre (si con Diex et li venz les mena) que l'eschiele
the-other on-other so as God and the wind them led that the-ladder
 de la Pelerine se joint à la tor. Et maintenant uns Veniciens
of the Pilgrim itself joined to the tower And at-once a Venetian
 et uns chevaliers de France qui avoit nom Andrius d'Urboise,
and a knight of France who had name Andrew of-Urboise
 entrèrent en la tor; et autre genz comence à entrer après
entered into the tower and other people begins to enter after
 als, et cil de la tor se desconfisent et s'en vont.
them and those of the tower themselves rout and themselves-thence go

243 Quant ce virent li chevalier qui estoient es vissiers, si
When this saw the knights who were in-the horse-transport so
 s'en issent à la terre et drecent eschieles à plain
themselves-thence come-out to the land and raise ladders at flat
 del mur, et montent contremont le mur par force; et
of-the wall and mount up the wall by force and
 conquistrent bien quatre des tors. Et il comencent à saillir
conquered well four of-the towers And they begin to leap
 des nés et des vissiers et des galies, qui ainz ainz,
from-the ships and from-the horse-transport and from-the galleys who sooner sooner
 qui mieulz mieulz; et peçoient bien trois des portes, et entrent
who better better and break well three of-the gates and enter
 enz; et comencent les chevas à traire des vissiers; et
in and begin the horses to draw from-the horse-transport and
 li chevalier comencent à monter, et chevauchent droit à
the knights begin to mount and ride straight to
 la heberge l'empereor Morchuflex. Et il avoit ses batailles
the lodging (of-)the-emperor Murzupblus And he had his battalions
 rengies devant ses tentes; et cum il virent venir les
ranged before his tents and when they saw come the
 chevaliers à cheval, si se desconfisent; et s'en va
knights on horse so themselves rout and himself-thence goes
 l'empereres fuiant par les rues al chastel de Bouchelion.
the-emperor fleeing through the streets to-the castle of Bucoleon

244 Lor veissiez Grifons abatre, et chevaus gaaignier et
Then you-might-see Griffons cut-down and horses won and
 palefroiz, et muls et mules, et autres avoirs. Là ot tant
palfreys and mules and she-mules and other goods There was so-many
 des morz et des navrez qu'il n'en ere ne fins ne mesure.
of-the dead and of-the wounded that-it not-thereof was neither end nor measure
 Granz partie des hals homes de Grece guenchirent vers la
Great part of-the high men of Greece turned toward the

porte de Blacquerne. Et vespres iere jà bas; et furent
gate of Blachernae And vespers was already low and were
 cil de l'ost lassé de la bataille et de l'ocision. Et se
those of the-host weary from the battle and from the-slaughter And themselves
 comencent à asembler en unes places granz qui estoient
begin to assemble in some places great which were
 dedenz Costantinople; et pristrent conseil que il se
within Constantinople and took counsel that they themselves
 herbergeroient près des murs et des tors que il avoient
would-lodge near to-the walls and to-the towers that they had
 conquises; que il ne cuidoient mie que il eussent la vile
conquered for they not thought at-all that they would-have the town
 vaincue en un mois, ne les forz yglises ne les forz palais, et
vanquished in a month nor the strong churches nor the strong palaces and
 le pueple qui ere dedenz. Ensi com il fu devisé, si fu fait.
the people who was within Thus as it was devised so it-was done

The City Taken

XXVII

The city is taken on the Monday before Palm Sunday. That night Murzuphlus flees by the Golden Gate, and a fire set near Boniface's camp burns more houses than three of France's greatest cities hold. Boniface receives Bucoleon, with two empresses and a boundless treasure, and Henry of Flanders Blachernae. Villehardouin testifies that never since the creation was so much won in one city, where fewer than twenty thousand men have taken four hundred thousand.

Ensi se herbergierent devant les murs et devant les tors 245
Thus themselves lodged before the walls and before the towers
 près de lors vaissials. Li cuens Baudoins de Flandres de Hennaut
near to their vessels The count Baldwin of Flanders of Hainault

se herberja es vermeilles tentes l'empereor Morchuflex
himself lodged in-the red tents (of-)the-emperor Murzuphlus
 qu'il avoit laissiees tendues, et Henris ses freres devant le
which-he had left pitched and Henry his brother before the
 palais de Blaquerne; Bonifaces li marchis de Monferrat, il et
palace of Blachernae Boniface the marquis of Montferrat he and
 la soe gens, devers l'espès de la vile. Ensi fu l'oz herbergie
the his people toward the-thick of the town Thus was the-host lodged
 con vos avez oï, et Constantinople prise le lundi de Pasque
as you have heard and Constantinople taken the Monday of Easter
 florie. Et li cuens Loey de Blois et de Chartain avoit languui
flowered And the count Louis of Blois and of Chartres had languished
 tot l'iver d'une fievre quartaine, et ne se pot armer.
all the-winter of-a fever quartan and not himself could arm
 Sachiez que mult ere granz damages à cels de l'ost; que mult
Know that very was great damage to those of the-host for very
 i avoit bon chevalier de cors; et gisoit en un vissier.
in-him there-was good knight of body and he-lay in a horse-transport
 Ensi se repouserent cil de l'ost cele nuit, qui mult
Thus themselves rested those of the-host that night who very
 erent lassé. Mais l'empereres Morchuflex ne reposa mie,
were weary But the-emperor Murzuphlus not rested at-all
 ainz assemblea totes ses genz; et dist que il iroit les
but assembled all his people and said that he would-go the
 Frans assaillir. Mais il nel fist mie ensi con il dist; ainz
Franks to-assail But he not-it did at-all so as he said but
 chevaucha vers autres rues, plus loing qu'il pot de cels de
rode toward other streets more far that-he could from those of
 l'ost, et vint à une porte que on apelle Porte Oire: par
the-host and came to a gate that one calls Gate Golden by

246

enqui s'enfui et guerpi la cité, et après lui s'enfui qui
there himself-fled and forsook the city and after him himself-fled who
 fuir en pot; et de tot ce ne sorent noient cil de l'ost.
flee thence could and of all this not knew anything those of the-host
 En cele nuit, devers la herberge Boniface le marchis de 247
In that night toward the lodging (of-)Boniface the marquis of
 Monferrat, ne sai quex gens qui cremoient les Grez qu'i
Monferrat not I-know what people who feared the Greeks that-they
 nes assaillissent, mistrent le feu entr'aus et les Grex. Et
them should-assail set the fire between-them and the Greeks And
 la vile comence à esprendre et à alumer mult durement; et
the town begins to catch and to kindle very hard and
 ardi tote cele nuit et l'endemain trosque al vespre. Et ce
burned all that night and the-next-day until to-the evening And this
 fu li tierz feus qui fu en Constantinoble dès que li Franc
was the third fire which was in Constantinople since that the Franks
 vindrent el païs; et plus ot arses maisons qu'il
came into-the country and more there-were burned houses than-there
 n'ait es trois plus granz citez del roialme de France.
are in-the three most great cities of-the kingdom of France
 Cele nuis trespasa, et vint li jors qui fu al mardi maitin; 248
That night passed and came the day which was at-the Tuesday morning
 et lors s'armerent tuit par l'ost, et chevalier et serjant; et
and then themselves-armed all through the-host both knights and sergeants and
 traist chascuns à sa bataille. Et issirent des herberges, et
drew each to his battalion And they-came-out of-the lodgings and
 cuiderent plus grant bataille trover que il n'avoient fait le jor
thought more great battle to-find than they had done the day
 devant; qu'il ne savoient mot que l'empereres s'en fust
before for-they not knew word that the-emperor himself-thence were
 fuiz la nuit. Si ne troverent onques qui fust encontre als.
fled the night So not they-found ever who might-be against them

249 Li marchis Bonifaces de Monferrat chevaucha tote la marine
The marquis Boniface of Monferrat rode all the shore
 droit vers Boche de lion; et quant il vint là, si li
straight toward Mouth of lion and when he came there so to-him
 fu renduz, salves les vies à cels qui dedenz estoient. Là
was rendered saved the lives to those who within were There
 fu trové li plus des haltes dames qui estoient fuies el
was found the most of-the high ladies who were fled into-the
 chastel; que là fu trovée la suer le roi de France qui
castle for there was found the sister (of-)the king of France who
 avoit esté empereris, et la suer le roi de Hongrie qui
had been empress and the sister (of-)the king of Hungary who
 ravoit esté empereris, et des autres dames mult. Del
in-turn-had been empress and of-the other ladies many Of-the
 tressor qui ere en cel palais ne covient mie parler; quar
treasure which was in that palace not behooves at-all to-speak for
 tant en avoit que ce n'iert ne fins ne mesure.
so-much thereof there-was that this not-was neither end nor measure

250 Autressi cum cil palais fu renduz le marchis Boniface
Likewise as that palace was rendered (to-)the marquis Boniface
 de Monferrat, fu renduz cil de Blaquerne à Henri frere
of Monferrat was rendered that of Blachernae to Henry brother
 le conte Baudoin de Flandres, sals les cors à cels qui
(of-)the count Baldwin of Flanders save the bodies to those who
 estoient dedenz. Là refu li tressors si très granz trovez;
were within There was-in-turn the treasure so very great found
 que il n'en i ot mie mains que en celui de Boche de
that it not-thereof there was at-all less than in that of Mouth of
 lion. Chascuns garni le chastel qui li fu renduz de sa
lion Each furnished the castle which to-him was rendered with his
 gent, et fist le tressor garder; et les autres genz qui furent
people and had the treasure guarded and the other people who were

espandu parmi la vile, gaaignierent assez; et fu si granz li
spread through the town won much and was so great the
 gaaienz faiz que nus ne vos en sauroit dire la fin,
gain made that anyone not to-you thereof would-know-how to-tell the end
 d'or et d'argent, et de vasselement et de pierres precieuses,
of-gold and of-silver and of plate and of stones precious
 et de samiz et de dras de soie, et de robes vaires et grises
and of samites and of cloths of silk and of robes vair and gray
 et hermines, et toz les chiers avoires qui onques furent
and ermines and all the dear goods which ever were
 trové en terre. Et bien tesmoigne Joffrois de Vile-Hardoin li
found on earth And well testifies Geoffrey of Villehardouin the
 mareschais de Champaigne, à son escient par verté, que puis
marshal of Champagne to his knowledge by truth that since
 que li siecles fu estorez, ne fu tant gaainié en une vile.
that the world was established not was so-much won in one town
 Chascuns prist ostel tel cum li plot, et il en i avoit 251
Each took lodging such as to-him pleased and it thereof there had
 assez. Ensi se herberja l'oz des pelerins et des Veniciens;
plenty Thus itself lodged the-host of-the pilgrims and of-the Venetians
 et fu granz la joie de l'onor et de la victoire que Diex
and was great the joy of the-honor and of the victory that God
 lor ot donée; que cil qui avoient esté en poverté, estoient
to-them had given for those who had been in poverty were
 en richece et en delit. Ensi firent la Pasque Florie et la
in riches and in delight Thus they-kept the Easter Flowered and the
 Grant Pasque après, en cele honor et en cele joie que Diex
Great Easter after in that honor and in that joy that God
 lor ot donée. Et bien en durent Nostre Seignor loer;
to-them had given And well thereof they-ought Our Lord to-praise
 que il n'avoient mie plus de vint mil homes armez entre
for they not-had at-all more than twenty thousand men armed between

uns et altres; et par l'aïe de Dieu si avoient pris quatre
ones and others and by the-help of God so they-had taken four
 cens mil homes ou plus, et en la plus fort vile qui fust
hundred thousand men or more and in the most strong town which might-be
 en tot le monde (qui granz vile fu), et la mielz fermée.
in all the world which great town was and the best fortified

The Booty and the Election of Baldwin

XXVIII

The booty is gathered in three churches, but covetousness sets in and much is kept back despite excommunication; the Count of Saint-Pol hangs one of his own knights with his shield round his neck. The pilgrims pay the Venetians fifty thousand marks and share out a hundred thousand. To keep both rivals, the barons agree that whichever of Baldwin and Boniface is not elected will receive the land beyond the Arm toward Turkey and the isle of Greece, and be the emperor's man. Nivelon of Soissons announces the twelve electors' choice: Baldwin of Flanders.

252 Lors fu crié par tote l'ost, de par le marchis Boniface
Then was cried through all the-host on behalf-of the marquis Boniface
 de Monferrat qui sires ere de l'ost, et de par les barons
of Montferrat who lord was of the-host and on behalf-of the barons
 et de par le duc de Venise, que toz li avoires fust
and on behalf-of the doge of Venice that all the goods should-be
 aportez et assemblez, si con il ere asseuré et juré et fais
brought and assembled so as it was assured and sworn and made
 escomuniemenz. Et furent nommé li leu en trois yglises;
excommunications And were named the places in three churches
 et là mist-on gardes des François et des Veniciens, des
and there put-one guards of-the French and of-the Venetians of-the

plus loiaus que on pot trover. Et lors comença chascuns

most loyal that one could find And then began each

à aporter le gaieng et à metre ensamble.

to bring the gain and to put together

Li uns aporta bien, et li autres mauvairement; que

253

The one brought well and the other badly for

covoitise, qui est racine de toz mals, ne laissa; ainz

covetousness which is root of all evils not left-off but

comencierent d'enqui en avant li covotous à retenir des

began from-there on forward the covetous to retain of-the

choses, et Nostre Sires les comença mains à amer. Ha!

things and Our Lord them began less to love Ah

Diex, con s'estoient leialment demené trosque à cel point;

God how themselves-had loyally conducted until to that point

et Dam Diex lor avoit bien mostré que de toz lor

and Lord God to-them had well shown that in all theire

affaires les avoit honorez et essaucie sor tote l'autre gent.

affairs them he-had honored and exalted above all the-other people

Et maintes foiz ont damage li bon por les malvais.

And many times have damage the good for the bad

Assemblez fu li avoires et li gaains; et sachiez que il ne fu

254

Assembled was the wealth and the gain and know that it not was

mie toz aporte avoires; quar assez en i ot de ceus qui

at-all all brought forward for plenty thereof there were of those who

en retinrent, seur l'escomeniement de l'apostole. Ce qui aus

thereof retained under the-excommunication of the-pope This which to-the

moustiers fu aporé, assemblé fu et desparti des Frans et des

minsters was brought assembled was and divided by-the Franks and by-the

Veniciens par moitié, si cum la compaignie ere jurée. Et sachiez

Venetians by half so as the company was sworn And know

que li pelerin quant il orent parti, que il paierent de la lor

that the pilgrims when they had divided that they paid of the their

partie cinquante mil mars d'argent as Veniciens, et bien
part fifty thousand marks of-silver to-the Venetians and well
 en departirent cent mil entr'alx ensemble par lor
thereof divided hundred thousand among-themselves together among their
 gent. Et savez coment? Deus serjanz à pié contre un à cheval,
people And know-you how Two sergeants on foot against one on horse
 et deus serjanz à cheval contre un chevalier. Et sachiez que
and two sergeants on horse against one knight And know that
 onques hom n'en ot plus pour altesce ne pour proesce que il
ever man not-thereof had more for highness nor for prowess than he
 eust, se ensi non con il fu devisé et fait, se emblé ne fu.
should-have except thus not as it was devised and done if stolen not it-was

255 Et de l'embler, cil qui en fu revoiz, sachiez que il en
And of the-stealing he who thereof was convicted know that there thereof
 fu fait grant justise; et assez en i ot de penduz.
was done great justice and plenty of-them there were of hanged
 Li cuens de Saint-Pol en pendi un sien chevalier l'escu
The count of Saint-Pol thereof hanged a his-own knight the-shield
 al col, qui en avoit retenu; et mult i ot de cels
at-the neck who thereof had retained and many there were of those
 qui en retindrent, des petiz et des granz; mais ne fu
who thereof retained of-the small and of-the great but not it-was
 mie seu. Bien poez savoir que granz fu li avoires; que
at-all known Well you-can know that great was the wealth for
 sanz celui qui fu emblez et sans la partie des Veniciens,
without that which was stolen and without the part of-the Venetians
 en vint bien avant quatre cens mil mars d'argent, et
thereof came well forward four hundred thousand marks of-silver and
 bien dix mil chevaucheurs, que unes que autres. Ainsi
well ten thousand mounts both ones and others Thus
 fu departiz li gaienz de Costantinople con vos avez oï.
was divided the gain of Constantinople as you have heard

Lors assemblerent à un parlement, et requist li comuns de 256
Then they-assembled at a parliament and required the commons of
 l'ost que il voloient faire empereor, si con devisé ere. Et
the-host that they wished to-make emperor so as devised it-was And
 tant parlerent que il pristrent un autre jor; et à cel jor
so-much they-spoke that they took an other day and at that day
 seroient eslit li doze sus qui seroit l'eslections. Et ne pooit
would-be chosen the twelve upon whom would-be the-election And not could
 estre que à si grant honor con de l'empire de Costantinoble,
it-be that for so great honor as of the-empire of Constantinople
 n'en i aust mult des habaanz et des envious. Mais
not-thereof there should-be many of-the covetous and of-the envious But
 la granz discorde qui i fu, si fu del conte Baudoin de
the great discord which there was so was of-the count Baldwin of
 Flandres et de Hennaut et del marchis Boniface de Monferat;
Flanders and of Hainault and of-the marquis Boniface of Montferrat
 et de ces deus disoient tote la genz que li uns le seroit.
and of these two said all the people that the one it would-be
 Et quant ce virent li preudome de l'ost que il taignoient 257
And when this saw the worthy-men of the-host that they held
 à l'un et à l'autre, si parlerent ensemble et distrent:
to the-one and to the-other so they-spoke together and said
 «Seignor, se on eslit l'un de ces deus halz homes, li
Lords if one elects the-one of these two high men the
 autres aura tel envie qu'il enmenra tote sa gent. Et
other will-have such envy that-be will-take-away all his people And
 ensi se puet pardre la terre; que altressi dut estre perdue
thus itself can lose the land for likewise ought to-be lost
 cele de Jerusalem, quant il eslistrent Godefroi de Buillon,
that of Jerusalem when they elected Godfrey of Bouillon
 quant la terre fu conquise. Et li cuens de Saint Gile en
when the land was conquered And the count of Saint Gilles thereof

ot si grant envie, qu'il porchaça as autres barons et
had so great envy that-he contrived with-the other barons and
 à toz cels qu'il pot, qu'il se partissent de l'ost. Et
with all those that-he could that-they themselves should-part from the-host And
 s'en ala assez de la gent; que cil remestrent si poi,
themselves-thence went many of the people so-that those remained so few
 que se Diex nes aust sostenuz, que pardue fust la terre.
that if God not-them had sustained that lost would-be the land
 Et por ce si devons garder que altressi ne nos aviegne.

And for this so we-ought to-watch that likewise not to-us may-happen

258

«Mais porchaçons coment nos les reteignons ambedeus. Que
But let-us-contrive how we them may-retain both For
 celui cui Diex donra qu'il soit esliz d'aus à empereor, que
he whom God will-grant that-he be chosen of-them to emperor that
 li autres en soit liez; et cil doint à l'autre tote la terre
the other thereof be glad and that-one may-give to the-other all the land
 d'autre part del Braz devers la Turquie, et l'isle de Grece;
on-other side of-the Arm toward the Turkey and the-isle of Greece
 et cil en sera ses hom. Ensi les porons ambedeus
and that-one thereof will-be his man Thus them we-will-be-able both
 retenir.» Ensi con il fut devisé, si fu fait; et l'otroierent
to-retain Thus as it was devised so was-it done and it-granted
 andui mult debonnairement. Et vint li jors del parlement,
both very graciously And came the day of-the parliament
 que li parlemenz assembla; et furent eslit li doze, six
that the parliament assembled and were chosen the twelve six
 d'une part, et six d'autre; et cil jurerent sor sainz que il
on-one side and six on-other and those swore on relics that they
 esliroient, à bien et à bone foi, celui qui plus grant mestier
would-elect to good and in good faith him who more great need
 i auroit et qui mielldres seroit à gouverner l'empire.
there would-have and who better would-be to govern the-empire

Ensi furent eslit li doze, et uns jorz pris de l'eslection; et 259

Thus were chosen the twelve and a day taken of the-election and
à cel jor qui pris fu, assemblerent à un riche palais, où
at that day which taken was they-assembled at a rich palace where
li dux de Venise ere à ostel, un des plus bials del monde.
the doge of Venice was at lodging one of-the most fair of-the world

Là ot si grant assemblée de gent que ce n'ere se granz
There was so great assembly of people that this not-was except great
mervoille non; que chascuns voloit veoir qui seroit esliz. Apelé
marvel not for each wished to-see who would-be chosen Called
furent li doze qui devoient faire l'eslecion, et furent mis en
were the twelve who ought to-make the-election and were put in
une mult riche chapele, qui dedenz le palais ere; et ferma
a very rich chapel which within the palace was and shut
on l'uis par dehors, si qu'il ne remest nus avec aus; et li
one the-door from outside so that-it not remained anyone with them and the
baron et li chevalier remestrent en un grant palais dehors.
barons and the knights remained in a great palace outside

Et dura li consels tant que il furent à un acort; et 260

And lasted the council so-long that they were at an accord and
chargierent lor parole, par le créant de toz les autres, à
charged their word by the consent of all the others to
Nevelon l'evesque de Soissons qui ere uns des doze. Et
Nivelon the-bishop of Soissons who was one of-the twelve And
vindrent fors là où li baron furent tuit et li dux de
they-came out there where the barons were all and the doge of
Venise. Or poez savoir qu'il furent de maint home esgardé,
Venice Now you-can know that-they were by many-a man gazed-at
por savoir quels l'eslections seroit. Et li evesques lor
for to-know what the-election would-be And the bishop to-them
mostra la parole, oiant toz, en tel maniere come il estoit
showed the word bearing all in such manner as he was

chargiez des autres, et lor dist: «Seignor, nos sommes
charged by-the others and to-them said Lords we are
 acordé, la Dieu merci! de faire empereor; et vos avez tuit
agreed the (of-)God mercy to make emperor and you have all
 juré que celui cui nos eslirons à empereor, vos lo tendrez
sworn that him whom we shall-elect to emperor you him will-hold
 por empereor; et se nus en voloit estre encontre, que vos
for emperor and if anyone thereof wished to-be against that you
 li seriez aidant. Et nos le nomerons en l'eure que Diex
to-him would-be helping And we him will-name in the-hour that God
 fu nez: le conte Baudoin de Flandres et de Hennaut.»
was born the count Baldwin of Flanders and of Hainault

261 Et li criz fu levez de joie el palais; si l'enportent del
And the cry was raised of joy in-the palace so him-they-carry from-the
 palais; et li marchis Bonifaces de Monferat l'enporte tot
palace and the marquis Boniface of Montferrat him-carries all
 avant d'une part enz el mostier, et li fait tote l'onor
forward on-one side into in-the minster and to-him does all the-honor
 que il pot. Ensi fu esliz li cuens Baudoins de Flandres et
that he could Thus was chosen the count Baldwin of Flanders and
 de Hennaut à empereor, et li jorz pris de son coronement à
of Hainault to emperor and the day taken of his coronation at
 trois semaines de Pasques. Or poez savoir que mainte riche
three weeks of Easter Now you-can know that many-a rich
 robe i ot faite por le coronement; et il orent bien de quoi.
robe there was made for the coronation and they had well of what

Boniface Marries the Empress

XXIX

Boniface marries Sursac's widow, sister of the King of Hungary. Odo of Champlitte dies. Baldwin is crowned in Saint Sophia in 1204 and lodged at Bucoleon. Boniface asks for the kingdom of Salonika, near his wife's brother, in place of the promised lands, and does homage for it. Murzuphlus takes Tzurulum, and Baldwin resolves to march out and conquer the land, leaving Count Louis, the doge, Conon, and Villebardouin to guard the city. Henry goes ahead to Adrianople.

Dedenz lo terme del coronement, espousa li marchis 262

Within the term of-the coronation wedded the marquis

Boniface de Monferat l'empereris qui fu fame l'empeor

Boniface of Montferrat the-empress who was wife (of-)the-emperor

Sursac, qui ere suer le roi de Hungrie. Et en cel termine

Sursac who was sister (of-)the king of Hungary And in that term

si morut uns des plus hals barons de l'ost, qui avoit nom

so died one of-the most high barons of the-host who had name

Oedes li Champenois de Chanlite; et fu mult plainz et

Odo the Champenois of Champlitte and was much lamented and

plorez de Guillaume son frere et de ses autres amis. Et

wept by William his brother and by his other friends And

fu enterrez al mostier des Apostres, à grant honor.

he-was buried at-the minster of-the Apostles with great honor

Li termes del coronement aprocha; et fu coronez à grant 263

The term of-the coronation drew-near and was crowned with great

joie et à grant honor l'empereres Baudoins al mostier

joy and with great honor the-emperor Baldwin at-the minster

Sainte-Sophie, en l'an de l'incarnation Jesu-Crist mil deus

Saint-Sophia in the-year of the-incarnation (of-)Jesus-Christ thousand two

cens anz et quatre. De la joie ne de la feste ne convient

hundred years and four Of the joy nor of the feast not behooves

mie à parler, que tant en fissent li baron et li chevalier
at-all to speak for so-much thereof made the barons and the knights
 cum il plus porent; et li marchis Bonifaces de Monferrat,
as they most could and the marquis Boniface of Monferrat
 et li cuens Loeys de Blois et de Chartain l'onorerent cum
and the count Louis of Blois and of Chartres him-honored as
 lor seignor. Après la grant joie del coronement, en fu
their lord After the great joy of-the coronation thence he-was
 menez à grant feste et à grant procession el riche
led with great feast and with great procession into-the rich
 palais de Bochelyon, que onques plus riches ne fu veuz. Et
palace of Bucoleon for ever more rich not was seen And
 quant la feste fu passée, si parla li empereres de ses affaires.
when the feast was passed so spoke the emperor of his affairs

264 Bonifaces li marchis de Monferrat li resquit ses convenances:

Boniface the marquis of Monferrat of-him required his covenants
 que il li rendist, si con il li devoit doner, la terre
that he to-him should-render so as he to-him ought to-give the land
 d'oltre le Bras devers la Turquie, et l'isle de Grece. Et
of-beyond the Arm toward the Turkey and the-isle of Greece And
 l'empereres li conut bien que il li devoit faire, et
the-emperor to-him acknowledged well that he to-him ought to-do and
 que il le li feroit mult volentiers. Et quant ce vit li
that he it to-him would-do very willingly And when this saw the
 marchis de Monferrat que l'empereres li voloit atendre ses
marquis of Monferrat that the-emperor to-him wished to-keep his
 convenances si debonairement, si le requist que, en eschange
covenants so graciously so him he-besought that in exchange
 de cele terre, li donast le roialme de Salonique, porce
of that land to-him he-should-give the kingdom of Salonika because
 qu'il ere devers le roi de Hungrie, cui seror il avoit à fame.
that-it was toward the king of Hungary whose sister he had to wife

Assez en fu parlé en maintes manieres; mais totes voies 265

Much thereof was spoken in many manners but all the-same

fu la chose menée à tant que li empereres li otroia, et

was the thing brought to so-far that the emperor to-him granted and

cil en fist homage. Et fu mult granz joie par

that-one thereof made homage And there-was very great joy through

tot l'ost, porce que li marchis ere uns des plus proissiez

all the-host because that the marquis was one of-the most esteemed

chevaliers dou monde, et des plus amez des chevaliers;

knights of-the world and of-the most loved of-the knights

que nus plus largement ne lor donoit. Ensi fu remés

for anyone more largely not to-them gave Thus was remained

en la terre li marchis de Monferrat con vos avez oï.

in the land the marquis of Montferrat as you have heard

Li empereres Morchufles n'ere mie eslongniez encor de 266

The emperor Murzupblus not-was at-all gone-far yet from

Costantinoble quatre journées; et si en avoit amené avec

Constantinople four days and so thence had led with

lui l'empereris qui ere fame l'emperor Alexi, qui devant

him the-empress who was wife (of-)the-emperor Alexius who before

s'en ere fuis, et sa file. Et cil empereres Alexis ert

himself-thence was fled and his daughter And that emperor Alexius was

à une cité que on apele Messinople, à tote la soe gent,

at a city that one calls Mosynopolis with all the his people

et tenoit encore grant partie de la terre. Et lors se

and held still great part of the land And then themselves

departirent li halt home de Grece, et granz partie en

departed the high men of Greece and great part thence

passa oltre le Braz par devers la Turquie; et chascuns saisi

crossed over the Arm on toward the Turkey and each seized

de la terre endroit soi tant con il pot, et par les
of the land near himself as-much as he could and through the
 autres contrées de l'empire autresi, chascuns vers son païs.
other countries of the-empire likewise each toward his country
 267 Et l'empereres Morchufflés ne tarda gaires qu'il prist une
And the-emperor Murzuphlus not delayed much that-he took a
 cité qui ere à la merci de monseignor l'empereor Baudoin
city which was to the mercy of my-lord the-emperor Baldwin
 venue, que on apele le Churlot; si la prist et roba,
come which one calls the Tzurulum so it took and robbed
 et i prist quanqu'il i trova. Quant la novele vint à
and there took whatever-he there found When the news came to
 l'empereor Baudoin, si prist conseil as barons et al
the-emperor Baldwin so he-took counsel with-the barons and with-the
 duc de Venise. Li consels si fu tels qu'il s'accorderent
doge of Venice The counsel so was such that-they themselves-agreed
 qu'il issist fors à tote s'ost, por conquerre la terre, et
that-he should-go out with all his-host for to-conquer the land and
 laissast Constantinoble garnie (qui ere novelement conquise
should-leave Constantinople garrisoned which was newly conquered
 et ere poplée de Grex) que ele fust seure.
and was peopled with Greeks that it might-be secure

268 Ensi fu li consels acordez, et l'os semoute, et devisé cil
Thus was the counsel agreed and the-host summoned and devised those
 qui demorroient en Constantinoble, et liquel iroient en l'ost
who would-remain in Constantinople and which would-go in the-host
 avec l'empereor Baudoin. En Constantinoble remest li cuens
with the-emperor Baldwin In Constantinople remained the count
 Loeys de Blois et de Chartein, qui malades ere et n'ere mie
Louis of Blois and of Chartres who sick was and not-was at-all
 encor gariz, et li dux de Venise. Et Coenes de Betune remest
yet cured and the doge of Venice And Conon of Béthune remained

el palais de Blaquerne et de Bochelion por garder la vile; et
in-the palace of Blachernae and of Bucoleon for to-guard the town and
 Joffrois li mareschaus de Champagne, et Miles li Braibanz
Geoffrey the marshal of Champagne and Miles the Brabançon
 de Provins, et Manessiers de l'Isle, à totes lor gens. Et
of Provins and Manasses of the-Isle with all their people And
 li tuit autre s'atornerent por aler en l'ost avec l'empeoreor.
the all others themselves-prepared for to-go in the-host with the-emperor
 Ançois que l'empereres Baudoins partist de Costantinoble, 269
Before that the-emperor Baldwin should-depart from Constantinople
 s'en parti Henris ses freres, par son comandement,
himself-thence departed Henry his brother by his command
 bien atos cent chevaliers de mult bone gent; et chevaucha
well with hundred knights of very good people and rode
 de cité en cité; et en chascune vile là où il venoit,
from city to city and in each town there where he came
 les genz faisoient la fealté l'empeoreor. Ensi ala trosque
the people did the fealty (to-)the-emperor Thus he-went as-far
 à Andrenople, qui ere mult bone citez et riche; et cil
to Adrianople which was very good city and rich and those
 de la cité le reçurent mult volontiers, et firent fealté
of the city him received very willingly and did fealty
 l'empeoreor. Lors se herbeja en la vile, il et sa gens,
(to-)the-emperor Then himself lodged in the town he and his people
 et enqui sejourna tant que l'empereres Baudoins vint.
and there sojourned until that the-emperor Baldwin came

Murzuphlus Blinded

xxx

Murzuphlus flees to Mosynopolis and allies himself with the elder Alexius, who gives him his daughter; then invites him to dine and bathe and has him blinded, and his army scatters. Baldwin rides to Adrianople, leaves Eustace of Saubruic there against Johanitsa, and goes on to Mosynopolis, which surrenders as Alexius flees. Boniface arrives with his empress and asks leave to take Salonika alone as Baldwin's man, and then to march with him against Johanitsa.

- 270 L'enpereres Morchuflés, con il oï qu'il venoient issi, si nes
The-emperor Murzuphlus when he heard that-they came thus so not-them
ossa atendre, ainz fui toz jorz deus journées ou trois devant.
dared await but fled all days two days or three before
Et ensi s'en ala trosque vers Messinople, o l'enperere
And thus himself-thence went as-far toward Mosynopolis where the-emperor
Alexis ere; et li envia ses messages, et li manda que
Alexius was and to-him sent his envoys and to-him sent-word that
il li aideroit, et feroit tot son comandement. Et l'enpereres
he him would-help and would-do all his command And the-emperor
Alexis respondi que bien fust-il venuz come ses fils, que il voloit
Alexius answered that well were-be come as his son for he wished
que il aust sa file à fame, et feroit de lui son fil. Ensi
that he should-have his daughter to wife and would-make of him his son Thus
se herberja l'empereres Morchuflux devant Messinople, et
himself lodged the-emperor Murzuphlus before Mosynopolis and
tendi ses trés et ses paveillons; et cil fu herbergiez dedenz
pitched his tents and his pavilions and that-one was lodged within
la cité. Et lors parlerent ensemble, et li dona sa fille; et
the city And then they-spoke together and to-him he-gave his daughter and
s'alierent ensemble, et distrent que il seroient tot une chose.
themselves-allied together and said that they would-be all one thing

Ensi sejournerent, ne sai quanz jorz, cil en l'ost et cil en 271

Thus sojourned not I-know how-many days those in the-host and those in
la vile; et lors semonst l'emperere Alexis l'empereor Murchuflés
the town and then summoned the-emperor Alexis the-emperor Murzupblus
que il venist à lui mengier, et iroient ensemble as bainz.

that he should-come to him to-eat and they-would-go together to-the baths

Ensi com il fu devisé, si fu fait. L'empereres Murchuflés

Thus as it was devised so was-it done The-emperor Murzupblus

i vint privéement et à poi de gent; et con il fu dedenz

there came privately and with few of people and when he was within

sa maison, l'empereres Alexis l'apela en une chambre, et lo

his house the-emperor Alexis him-called into a chamber and him

fist jeter à terre, et traire les oels de la teste, en tel traïson

had cast to earth and drawn the eyes from the head in such treason

con vos avez oï. Or oïez se ceste genz devoient terre tenir

as you have heard Now hear if these people ought land to-hold

ou perdre, qui si granz cruaultez faisoient li un des autres.

or to-lose who so great cruelties did the ones to-the others

Et quant ce oïrent cil de l'ost l'empereor Murchuflés,

And when this heard those of the-host (of-)the-emperor Murzupblus

si se desconfissent et torrent en fuie, li un çà et li

so themselves rout and turn in flight the ones here and the

altre là; et de tels i ot qui alerent à l'empereor Alexi,

others there and of such there were who went to the-emperor Alexius

et li obéirent comme à seignor, et remestrent entor lui.

and to-him obeyed as to lord and remained about him

Lors s'esmut l'empereres Baudoins à tote s'ost de 272

Then himself-set-out the-emperor Baldwin with all his-host from

Costantinoble; et chevaucha tant que il vint à Andrenople.

Constantinople and rode so-far that he came to Adrianople

Enqui trova Henri son frere, et les autres genz qui avec

There he-found Henry his brother and the other people who with

lui furent. Totes les genz parmi là où il passa vindrent
him were All the people through there where he passed came
à lui, à sa merci et à son comandement. Et lors lor
to him to his mercy and to his command And then to-them
vint la novele que l'empereres Alexis avoit traiz les oels à
came the news that the-emperor Alexius had drawn the eyes from
l'empeor Morchufflés. Mult en fu granz parole entr'aus;
the-emperor Murzuphlus Much thereof was great talk among-them
et bien distrent que il n'avoient droit en tere tenir, qui
and well they-said that they not-had right in land to-hold who
si desloialment traïssoient li uns l'autre.
so disloyally betrayed the ones the-other

273 Lors fu li consels l'empeor Baudoin qu'il chevaucheroit
Then was the counsel (of-)the-emperor Baldwin that-he would-ride
droit à Messinople, où l'empereres Alexis ere. Et li Gré
straight to Mosynopolis where the-emperor Alexius was And the Greeks
d'Andrenople li requistrent cum à seignor qu'il lor
of-Adrianople of-him besought as of lord that-he to-them
laissast la ville garnie, por Johan, le roi de Blaquie et
should-leave the town garrisoned for John the king of Wallachia and
de Bougrie, qui guerre lor faisoit sovent. Et l'empereres
of Bulgaria who war on-them made often And the-emperor
Baudoins i lassa Eustaice de Saubruic, qui ere uns chevaliers
Baldwin there left Eustace of Saubruic who was a knight
de Flandres mult preuz et mult vaillanz, atot quarante
of Flanders very worthy and very valiant with forty
chevaliers de mult bone gent, et cent serjanz à cheval.
knights of very good people and hundred sergeants on horse

274 Ensi s'en parti l'enperere Baudoins d'Andrenople; et
Thus himself-thence departed the-emperor Baldwin from-Adrianople and
chevaucha vers Messinople, où il cuida l'empeor Alexi
rode toward Mosynopolis where he thought the-emperor Alexius

trover. Totes les terres par là où il passa vindrent à son
to-find All the lands through there where he passed came to his
 comandement et à sa merci; et quant ce vit l'empereres
command and to his mercy and when this saw the-emperor
 Alexis, si vuida Messinople et s'enfui. Et l'empereres Baudoins
Alexius so emptied Mosynopolis and himself-fled And the-emperor Baldwin
 chevalcha tant que il vint devant Messinople. Et cil de la vile
rode so-far that he came before Mosynopolis And those of the town
 vont encontre lui, et li rendent la vile à son comandement.
go to-meet him and to-him render the town to his command

Et lors dist l'empereres Baudoins que il sejourneroit por atendre 275
And then said the-emperor Baldwin that he would-sojourn for to-await
 Boniface le marchis de Monferrat, qui n'ere mie encor venuz en
Boniface the marquis of Montferrat who not-was at-all yet come in
 l'ost, porce que il ne pot mie si tost venir con l'emperere; qu'il
the-host because that he not could at-all so soon come as the-emperor for-he
 en amenoit avec lui l'empereris sa fame. Et chevaucha tant que
thence led with him the-empress his wife And he-rode so-far that
 il vint vers Messinople, sor le flum; et enqui se herberja, et
he came toward Mosynopolis on the river and there himself lodged and
 fist tendre ses trés et ses paveillons. Et l'endemain ala parler
had pitched his tents and his pavilions And the-next-day he-went to-speak
 à l'empereor Baldoin et lui veoir, et li requist sa convenance.
to the-emperor Baldwin and him to-see and of-him required his covenant

«Sire, fait il, noveles me sunt venues de Salenique, que la 276
Lord says he news to-me are come from Salonika that the
 gens del païs me mandent que il me recevront volentiers
people of-the country to-me send-word that they me will-receive willingly
 à seignor. Et je en sui vostre hom, et la tieng de vos:
for lord And I thereof am your man and it hold of you
 si vos vuel proier que voz me laissez aler; et quant je
so you I-wish to-pray that you me let go and when I

serai saisiz de ma terre et de ma cité, je vos amenrai les
shall-be seized of my land and of my city I to-you will-bring the
viandes encontre vos, et venrai appareilliez de faire vostre
victuals to-meet you and will-come prepared to do your
comandement. Et ne me destruez mie ma terre; et alomes,
command And not me destroy at-all my land and let-us-go
se vostre plaisirs est, sor Johan, qui est rois de Blaqueie
if your pleasure is upon John who is king of Wallachia
et de Bogrie, qui tient grant partie de la terre à tort.»
and of Bulgaria who holds great part of the land with wrong

The Quarrel of Baldwin and Boniface

XXXI

Baldwin insists on going to Salonika, and Boniface parts from him in anger, taking James of Avesnes and most of the Germans back to Demotika, which a Greek surrenders to him; through his wife the empress, the Greeks of the country around begin to come over to him. Christopolis, La Blanche, Serres, and Salonika submit to Baldwin, while Boniface besieges Eustace of Saubruic in Adrianople. From Constantinople the doge and Count Louis send Villehardouin, who persuades Boniface to submit the quarrel to arbitration, and the siege is raised.

277 Ne sai par cui conseil l'empereres respondi qu'il voloit aler
Not I-know by whose counsel the-emperor answered that-he wished to-go
totes voies vers Salenique, et feroit ses autres affaires en la
all the-same toward Salonika and would-do his other affairs in the
terre. «Sire, fait Bonifaces li marchis de Monferrat, je te proi,
land Lord says Boniface the marquis of Monferrat I thee pray
dès que je puis ma terre conquerre sanz toi, que tu n'i
since that I can my land conquer without thee that thou not-there
entres; et se tu i entres, ne me semble mie que tu le faces
enter and if thou there enter not to-me seems at-all that thou it do

por mon bien. Et sachiez vos de voir, je n'irai mie avec vos,

for my good And know you of truth I not-will-go at-all with you

ainz me partirai de vos.» Et l'empereres Baudoins respondi

but myself will-part from you And the-emperor Baldwin answered

que il ne lairoit mie por ce qui il n'i alast tote voie.

that he not would-leave at-all for this that he there should-go all the-same

Halas con malvais conseil orent et li uns et li autres, et cum 278

Alas what bad counsel had both the one and the other and how

firent grant pechié cil qui ceste mellée fisent! quar, se Diex

did great sin those who this brawl made for if God

n'en preist pitié, con aussent perdue tote la conqueste

not-thereof had-taken pity how they-would-have lost all the conquest

que il avoient faite, et la crestienté mise en aventure de perir!

that they had made and the Christendom put in hazard to perish

Ensi partirent par mal l'empereres Baudoins de Constantinople

Thus parted by ill the-emperor Baldwin of Constantinople

et Bonifaces li marchis de Monferrat, et par malvais conseil.

and Boniface the marquis of Montferrat and by bad counsel

L'empereres Baudoins chevaucha vers Salenique, si con il ot 279

The-emperor Baldwin rode toward Salonika so as he had

enpris, à totes ses gens et à tote sa force. Et Bonifaces

undertaken with all his people and with all his force And Boniface

li marchis de Monferrat retorna arriere; que il ot une grant

the marquis of Montferrat turned back for he had a great

partie de bone gent avec lui. Avec lui s'en torna Jaques

part of good people with him With him himself-thence turned James

d'Avesnes, Guillaumes de Chanlite, Hues de Colemi, li cuens

of-Avesnes William of Champlitte Hugh of Colemi the count

Bertous de Chessenele-en-Bouche, et la graindre partie de toz

Berthold of Katzenelnbogen and the greater part of all

cels de l'empire d'Alemaigne, qui se tenoient al marchis.

those of the-empire of-Germany who themselves held to-the marquis

Ensi chevaucha li marchis arriere trosque à un chastel qui
Thus rode the marquis back as-far to a castle which
 li Dimos ere apelez, mult bel, et mult fort, et mult riche;
the Demotika was called very fair and very strong and very rich
 et cil li fu renduz par un Greu de la vile; et cum il
and it to-him was rendered by a Greek of the town and when he
 fu dedenz, si le garni. Et lors comencent li Grieu à lui
was within so it be-garrisoned And then begin the Greeks to him
 à torner par l'acointement de l'empereriz, et de tote la terre
to turn by the-acquaintance of the-empress and of all the land
 de là entor, à une journée ou à deus, venir à sa merci.
of there around at a day or at two to-come to his mercy

280 L'empereres Baudoins chevaucha adès droit à Salenique, et
The-emperor Baldwin rode ever straight to Salonika and
 vint à un chastel qui ot à nom Cristople, qui ere uns des
came to a castle which had as name Christopolis which was one of-the
 plus forz del munde; et li fu renduz, et li firent
most strong of-the world and to-him was rendered and to-him did
 fealté cil de la vile. Et après vint à un altre que on apeloit
fealty those of the town And after be-came to an other that one called
 la Blanche, qui ere mult fors, et mult riches; et li fu
the White which was very strong and very rich and to-him was
 renduz altressi, et li firent fealté. Et d'enqui chevaucha
rendered likewise and to-him did fealty And from-there be-rode
 à la Serre, qui ere une citez forz et riche; et vint à
to the Serres which was a city strong and rich and came to
 son comandement et à sa volanté, et li firent fealté. Et
his command and to his will and to-him did fealty And
 d'enqui chevaucha à Salenique, et se herbeja devant la
from-there be-rode to Salonika and himself lodged before the
 ville, et i fu par trois jors. Et cil li rendirent la vile
town and there was for three days And those to-him rendered the town

(qui ere une des meillors et des plus riches de la crestienté

which was one of-the best and of-the most rich of the Christendom

à cel jor), par tel convent que il les tendroit as us et

at that day by such covenant that he them would-hold at-the usages and

as costumes que li empereur Grieu les avoient tenuz.

at-the customs that the emperors Greek them had held

Endementiers que l'empereres Baudoins ere vers Salenique, 281

While that the-emperor Baldwin was toward Salonika

et la terre venoit à son plaisir et à son comandement, li

and the land came at bis pleasure and at bis command the

marchis Bonifaces de Monferrat, à tote la soe gent et la

marquis Boniface of Montferrat with all the bis people and the

grant plenté des Grex qui à lui se tenoient, chevaucha

great plenty of-the Greeks who to him themselves held rode

devant Andrenople, et l'asist; et tendi ses trës et ses

before Adrianople and it-besieged and pitched his tents and bis

paveillons entor. Et Eustaiches de Saubruit fu dedenz, et

pavilions around And Eustace of Saubruic was within and

les genz que l'empereres i avoit laissié; et monterent as

the people that the-emperor there had left and they-mounted to-the

murs et as tors, et s'atornerent d'els defendre.

walls and to-the towers and themselves-prepared themselves to-defend

Et lors prist Eustaices de Saubruit deus messaiges, et les 282

And then took Eustace of Saubruic two envoys and them

envoia, par jor et par nuit, en Constantinople. Et vindrent al

sent by day and by night to Constantinople And they-came to-the

duc de Venise et al conte Loeys, et à cels qui estoient dedenz

doge of Venice and to-the count Louis and to those who were within

la vile remés de par l'empereor Baudoin; et lor distrent

the town remained on behalf-of the-emperor Baldwin and to-them said

qu'Eustaices de Saubruic lor mandoit que l'empereres et li

that-Eustace of Saubruic to-them sent-word that the-emperor and the

marchis estoient mellé ensemble; et li marchis ere saiziz del
marquis were embroiled together and the marquis was seized of-the
 Dimot, qui ere uns des plus fors chastiaus de Romenie et uns
Demotika which was one of-the most strong castles of Romania and one
 des plus riches, et els avoit asis à Andrenople. Et quant il
of-the most rich and them had besieged in Adrianople And when they
 oïrent ce, s'en furent mult irié; que lors cuiderent-il
heard this themselves-thereof were very angered for then thought-they
 bien que tote la conquete que il avoient faite fust perdue.
well that all the conquest that they had made would-be lost

- 283 Lors assemblerent el palais de Blaquerne li dux de Venise
Then assembled in-the palace of Blacernae the doge of Venice
 et li cuens Loeys de Bloys et de Chartain, et li autre
and the count Louis of Blois and of Chartres and the other
 baron qui estoient en Costantinople; et furent mult destroit
barons who were in Constantinople and were very distressed
 et mult irié, et mult se plainstrent de cels qui avoient
and very angered and much themselves complained of those who had
 faite la mellée entre l'empereor et le marchis. Par la proiere
made the brawl between the-emperor and the marquis By the prayer
 le duc de Venise et del conte Loeys, fu requis Joffrois
(of-)the doge of Venice and of-the count Louis was requested Geoffrey
 de Vile-Hardoin, li mareschaus de Champagne, qu'il alast
of Villehardouin the marshal of Champagne that-be should-go
 al siege d'Andrenople, et que il meist conseil à cele
to-the siege of-Adrianople and that be should-put counsel to that
 guerre, se il pooit, porce qu'il ere bien del marchis; et
war if he could because that-be was well with-the marquis and
 cuiderent qu'i aust plus grant pooir que nus autres hom. Et
they-thought that-be had more great power than any other man And
 cil, por lor proiere et por lor besoiing, dist qu'il iroit
that-one for their prayer and for their need said that-be would-go

mult volentiers; et mena avec lui Manassier de l'Isle, qui
very willingly and led with him Manasses of the-Isle who
 ere uns des bons chevaliers de l'ost et des plus honorez.

was one of-the good knights of the-host and of-the most honored

Ensi se partirent de Costantinople, et chevauchierent par 284

Thus themselves departed from Constantinople and rode by
 lor journées tant que il vindrent à Andrenople, où li sieges

their day-stages so-far that they came to Adrianople where the siege

ere. Et quant li marchis l'oï, si issi de l'ost et ala

was And when the marquis it-heard so came-out of the-host and went

encontre als. Avec lui en ala Jaques d'Avesnes, et Guillaumes

to-meet them With him thence went James of-Avesnes and William

de Chanlite, et Hues de Colemi, et Othes de la Roche, qui

of Champlitte and Hugh of Colemi and Otto of the Roche who

plus alt estoient del conseil del marchis. Et quant il vit

most high were of-the council of-the marquis And when he saw

les messaiges, si les honora mult et fist mult bel semblant.

the envoys so them honored much and made very fair semblance

Joffrois li mareschaus, qui mult ere bien de lui, li coisona 285

Geoffrey the marshal who very was well with him him reproached

mult durement: coment ne en quel guise il avoit prise la

very hard how or in what guise he had taken the

terre l'empereor ne assigie sa gent dedenz Andrenople, tant

land (of-)the-emperor nor besieged his people within Adrianople before

que il l'eust fait assavoir à cels de Costantinoble, qui bien

that he it-had made known to those of Constantinople who well

li feissent adrecier se li empereres li eust nul tort

to-him would-have-had redressed if the emperor to-him had any wrong

fait. Et li marchis se descolpa mult, et dist que por

done And the marquis himself excused much and said that for

le tort que l'empereres li avoit fait, avoit-il issi exploitié.

the wrong that the-emperor to-him had done bad-he thus acted

- 286 Tant travailla Joffrois li mareschais de Champaigne, à l'aïe
So-much labored Geoffrey the marshal of Champaigne with the-help
 de Dieu et des barons qui estoient del conseil le marchis,
of God and of-the barons who were of-the council (of-)the marquis
 de cui il ere mult amez, que li marchis li assura que il
by whom he was much loved that the marquis to-him assured that he
 s'en metroit el duc de Venise, et el conte Loeys de
himself-thereof would-put on-the doge of Venice and on-the count Louis of
 Blois et de Chartein, et en Coenon de Betune, et en Joffroi de
Blois and of Chartres and on Conon of Bétune and on Geoffrey of
 Vile-Hardoin le mareschal, qui bien savoient la convenance d'aus
Villehardouin the marshal who well knew the covenant of-them
 deus. Ensi fu la trive prise de cels de l'ost et de cels de la cité.
two Thus was the truce taken by those of the-host and by those of the city
- 287 Et sachiez que mult fu volentiers veuz Joffrois li mareschais,
And know that very was willingly seen Geoffrey the marshal
 au retourner, et Maneisiers de l'Isle, de cels de l'ost et de
at-the returning and Manasses of the-Isle by those of the-host and by
 cels de la cité, qui mult voloient la pais d'ambedeus parz. Et
those of the city who much wished the peace on-both sides And
 ausi lié cum li Franc en furent, en furent li Grieu dolant;
as glad as the Franks thereof were thereof were the Greeks sorrowful
 qu'il volsissent mult volentiers la guerre et la mellée. Ensi
for-they would-have-wished very willingly the war and the brawl Thus
 fu dessiegie Andrenople; et torna s'en li marchis arriere
was unbesieged Adrianople and turned himself-thence the marquis back
 al Dimot à tote sa gent, là où l'empereris sa fame ere.
to-the Demotika with all his people there where the-empress his wife was

The Barons' Messages

XXXII

The barons in Constantinople write asking Baldwin to accept arbitration as Boniface has. Baldwin, hurrying to relieve Adrianople, loses his chancellor John of Noyon, Peter of Amiens, and forty knights to sickness. Bègue of Fransures delivers the barons' message that they will suffer no war. His council calls it an outrage, but Baldwin, unwilling to lose the doge and Louis, promises only to come to Constantinople without harming Boniface, and is received there as lord.

Li message s'en revindrent en Constantinoble, et 288
The envoys themselves-thence came-back into Constantinople and
 conterent les noveles si con il avoient exploitié. Mult orent
told the news so as they had fared Very bad
 grant joie li dux de Venise et li cuens Loeys de Blois et
great joy the doge of Venice and the count Louis of Blois and
 tuit li autre, de ce qu'il s'ere mis sor als de la pais. Lors
all the others of this that-he himself-was put on them for the peace Then
 pristrent bons messages, et escristrent letres, et envoierent
they-took good envoys and wrote letters and sent
 à l'empereor Baudoin; et li manderent que li marchis
to the-emperor Baldwin and to-him sent-word that the marquis
 s'ere mis sor als, et bien l'avoit asseuré; et il s'i
himself-was put on them and well it-had assured and he himself-thereto
 devoit encor mielz metre. Si li prioient qu'il le feist (que
ought still better to-put So him they-prayed that-he it should-do for
 il ne souffriroient mie la guerre en nule fin), et qu'il
they not would-suffer at-all the war in any end and that-he
 asseurast ce que il diroient, als con li marchis avoit fait.
should-assure this that they would-say just as the marquis had done

- 289 Endementres que ce fu, l'empereres Baudoins ot fait ses affaires
While that this was the-emperor Baldwin had done his affairs
 vers Salenique; si s'en parti et la lascia garnie de sa
toward Salonika so himself-thence departed and it left garrisoned with his
 gent, et il lascia chevetaine Regnier de Monz, qui ere mult
people and he left captain Renier of Mons who was very
 preuz et vaillanz. Et les nouvelles li furent venues que li
worthy and valiant And the news to-him were come that the
 marchis avoit pris le Dimot, et que il ere dedenz, et que il
marquis had taken the Demotika and that he was within and that he
 avoit grant partie de la terre entor conquise, et assise sa gent
had great part of the land around conquered and besieged his people
 dedens Andrenople. Mult fu iriez l'empereres Baudoins quant la
within Adrianople Very was angered the-emperor Baldwin when the
 novele li fu venue, et mult s'enhasti que il iroit dessegier
news to-him was come and much himself-bastened that he would-go to-unbesiege
 Andrenople, et feroit tot le mal qu'il porroit al marchis.
Adrianople and would-do all the ill that-he could to-the marquis
 Ha Diex! quels domages dut estre par cele discorde; que se
Ab God what damage ought to-be by that discord for if
 Diex n'i eust mis conseil, destruite fust la crestientez.
God not-there had put counsel destroyed would-be the Christendom
- 290 Ensi s'en repaira l'empereres Baudoins par ses journées.
Thus himself-thence returned the-emperor Baldwin by his day-stages
 Et une mesaventure lor fu avenue devant Salenique mult
And a mischance to-them was happened before Salonika very
 granz; que d'enfermeté furent acolchié mult de sa gent.
great for of-sickness were brought-to-bed many of his people
 Assez en remanoit par les chastials où l'empereres
Plenty thereof remained through the castles where the-emperor
 passoit, qui ne pooient mais venir; et assez en aportoient-on
passed who not could more come and plenty thereof carried-one

en littieres qui à grant mesaise venoient; et mult en
in litters who in great discomfort came and many thereof
 ot de mors à la Serre. Lors fu morz maistre Johans de
there-were of dead at the Serres Then was dead master John of
 Noion à la Serre, qui ere chanceliers l'empereor Baudoin; et
Noyon at the Serres who was chancellor (of-)the-emperor Baldwin and
 mult fu bons clers et mult sages, et mult avoit conforté
very was-he good clerk and very wise and much had comforted
 l'ost par la parole de Dieu, qu'il savoit mult bien dire. Et
the-host by the word of God which-he knew-how very well to-say And
 sachiez que mult en furent li prodome de l'ost desconforté.
know that much thereof were the worthy-men of the-host discomforted
 Ne tarda gaires après que il lor avint une mult grant 291
Not delayed much after that it to-them happened a very great
 mesaventure; que morz fu Pierres d'Amiens, qui mult ere
mischance that dead was Peter of-Amiens who very was
 riches et halz hom, et bons chevaliers et proz; et s'en
rich and high man and good knight and valiant and himself-thereof
 fist mult grant duel li cuens Hues de Saint-Pol, cui cosins
made very great mourning the count Hugh of Saint-Pol whose cousin
 germains il ere; et mult en pesa à toz cels de l'ost. Lors
german he was and much thereof weigbed on all those of the-host Then
 fu après Girars de Manchicort morz, qui ere mult proisiez
was after Gerard of Mancicourt dead who was very esteemed
 chevaliers; et Giles d'Aunoi, et mult de bone gent. En cele
knight and Giles of-Aunoy and many of good people On that
 voie demourerent quarante chevalier, dont l'oz fu mult afeblie.
road remained forty knights whereof the-host was much weakened
 Tant chevaucha l'empereres Baudoins par ses journées qu'il 292
So-far rode the-emperor Baldwin by his day-stages that-he
 encontra les messages qui venoient encontre lui, que cil
met the envoys who came to-meet him whom those

de Costantinoble li envéoient. Li uns des messages fu
of Constantinople to-him sent The one of-the envoys was
 uns chevaliers de la terre le conte Loeys de Blois et
a knight of the land (of-)the count Louis of Blois and
 ses hom liges; et fu apelez Beghes de Fransures, sages et
his man liege and was called Bègue of Fransures wise and
 enparlez; et dist le message son seignor et les autres
well-spoken and said the message (of-)his lord and (of-)the other
 barons mult vivement, et dist:

barons very vividly and said

293 «Sire, li dux de Venise et li cuens Loeys mis sires, et li
Lord the doge of Venice and the count Louis my lord and the
 autre baron qui sunt dedenz Constantinoble, vos mandent
other barons who are within Constantinople to-you send
 salut comme à lor seignor; et se plaignent à Dieu et à
greeting as to their lord and themselves complain to God and to
 vos de cels qui ont mise la mellée entre vos et le marchis de
you of those who have put the brawl between you and the marquis of
 Monferrat; que par poi qu'il n'ont destruite la crestienté, et
Montferrat for by little that-they have destroyed the Christendom and
 vos feistes mult mal quant vos les en créistes. Or si vos
you did very ill when you them thereof believed Now so to-you
 mandent que li marchis s'est mis sor als del contenz
they-send-word that the marquis himself-is put on them of-the dispute
 qui est entre vos et lui; si vos proient comme à seignor
which is between you and him so you they-pray as to lord
 que vos vos i metez alsì, et que vos l'aseurez à tenir.
that you yourself thereto put likewise and that you it-assure to hold
 Et sachiez que il ne souffriroient la guerre en nule fin.»
And know that they not would-suffer the war in any end

L'empereres Baudoins ala, si prist son conseil, et dist qu'il 294

The-emperor Baldwin went so took his counsel and said that-he

lor en respondroit. Mult i ot de cels del conseil de

to-them thereof would-answer Many there were of those of-the council of

l'empeor, qui avoient aidié la mellée à faire, qui tindrent

the-emperor who had helped the brawl to make who held

à grant oltrage le mandement que cil de Costantinoble

for great outrage the message that those of Constantinople

li avoient fait, et li distrent: «Sire, vos oez que il

to-him had made and to-him said Lord you hear that they

vos mandent, que il ne souffriroient mie que vos vos

to-you send-word that they not would-suffer at-all that you yourself

vengissiez de vostre anemi. Il est avis que se vos ne faisiez

should-avenge on your enemy It is opinion that if you not did

ce qu'il vos mandent, que il seroient encontre vos.»

this that-they to-you send-word that they would-be against you

Assez i ot grosses paroles dites; mais la fins del conseil 295

Plenty there were gross words said but the end of-the council

si fu tels que l'empereres ne voloit mie perdre le duc de

so was such that the-emperor not wished at-all to-lose the doge of

Venise, ne le conte Loeys, ne les autres qui erent dedenz

Venice nor the count Louis nor the others who were within

Costantinoble; et respondi al message: «Je n'aseurerai que je

Constantinople and answered to-the envoy I not-will-assure that I

me mete sor als; mais je m'en irai en Constantinoble

myself may-put on them but I myself-thence will-go into Constantinople

sanz forfaire al marchis noient.» Ensi s'en vint

without doing-wrong to-the marquis anything Thus himself-thence came

l'empereres Baudoins par ses journées tant qu'il vint en

the-emperor Baldwin by his day-stages so-far that-he came into

Constantinoble; et li baron et les autres gens alerent
Constantinople and the barons and the other people went
 encontre lui, et le reçurent à grant honor come lor seignor.
to-meet him and him received with great honor as their lord

Reconciliation and the Division of the Lands

XXXIII

Baldwin sees he was ill advised and submits. Villehardouin and others bring Boniface to Constantinople, where he receives Salonika and gives Demotika into Villehardouin's keeping until he holds it. Much of the land submits, but Leo Sgouros of Corinth and Nauplia wars on him, and Michael deserts him for Arta. The lands are divided, and the new lords' greed turns the Greeks against them. Baldwin grants Nicaea to Count Louis and Philippopolis to Renier of Trith, and Louis's knights cross to the Espigal and begin the war.

296 Dedenz lo quart jor, conut l'empereres clerement que il avoit
Within the fourth day knew the-emperor clearly that he had
 esté mal conseiliez de mesler soi al marchis; et lors
been ill counseled to embroil himself with-the marquis and then
 parla à lui li dux de Venise et li cuens Loeys, et distrent:
spoke to him the doge of Venice and the count Louis and said
 «Syre, nos vos volons proier que vos vos metez sor nos, als
Lord we you wish to-pray that you yourself put on us just
 cum li marchis s'i est mis.» Et l'empereres dist que
as the marquis himself-thereto is put And the-emperor said that
 il le feroit mult volentiers. Et lors furent eslit li message
he it would-do very willingly And then were chosen the envoys
 qui iroient querre le marchis, et le conduiroient. De ces
who would-go to-fetch the marquis and him would-conduct Of these
 messages fu li uns Gervaises del Chastel, et Reniers de
envoys was the one Gervase of-the Châtel and Renier of

Trit li autres, et Joffrois li mareschaus de Champaigne

Trith the other and Geoffrey the marshal of Champaigne

li tierz; et li dux de Venise i envia deus des suens.

the third and the duke of Venice there sent two of his-own

Ensi chevauchierent li message par lor journées, tant que il 297

Thus rode the envoys by their day-stages so-far that they

vindrent al Dimot; et troverent le marchis et l'empereris sa

came to-the Demotika and found the marquis and the-empress his

feme à grant plenté de bone gent, et li distrent si cum il

wife with great plenty of good people and to-him said so as they

l'estoient venu querre. Lors li requist Joffrois li mareschaus,

him-were come to-fetch Then of-him required Geoffrey the marshal

si con il li avoit asseuré, que il venist en Costantinoble por

so as he to-him had assured that he should-come into Constantinople for

tenir la pais tel cum cil la deviseroient sor cui il s'ert mis,

to-keep the peace such as those it would-devise on whom he himself-was put

et il le conduiroient salvement et toz cels qui avec lui iroient.

and they him would-conduct safely and all those who with him would-go

Conseil prist li marchis à ses homes. Si i ot de cels 298

Counsel took the marquis with his men So there were of those

qui li otroierent que il i alast, et de cels qui li

who to-him granted that he there should-go and of those who to-him

loerent qu'il n'i alast mie. Mais la fins del conseil

advised that-he not-there should-go at-all But the end of-the counsel

si fu tels qu'il ala avec als en Costantinoble, et mena

so was such that-he went with them into Constantinople and led

bien cent chevaliers avec lui; et chevauchierent tant par

well hundred knights with him and they-rode so-far by

lor journées que il vindrent en Costantinoble. Mult fu

their day-stages that they came into Constantinople Very was-be

volentiers veuz en la vile; et alerent encontre lui li cuens

willingly seen in the town and went to-meet him the count

Loeys de Blois et de Chartein, et li dux de Venise, et
Louis of Blois and of Chartres and the doge of Venice and
 mult d'autre bone gent; que il ere mult amez en l'ost.

many of-other good people for he was very loved in the-host

299 Et lors assemblerent à un parlement; et la convenance fu
And then they-assembled at a parliament and the covenant was
 retraite de l'empereor Baudoin et del marchis Boniface; et
related of the-emperor Baldwin and of-the marquis Boniface and
 li fu Salenique rendue et la terre, en tel maniere que
to-him was Salonika rendered and the land in such manner that
 il meist en la main Joffroi le mareschal de Champagne
he should-put in the hand (of-)Geoffrey the marshal of Champagne
 le Dimot, dont il ere saiziz; et cil li creanta que il
the Demotika whereof he was seized and that-one to-him promised that he
 le garderoit en sa main trosque adonc que il aroit creant
it would-guard in his hand until then that he would-have trusty
 message ou ses letres pendanz, que il ert saiziz de Salenique;
envoy or his letters sealed that he was seized of Salonika
 et adonc le rendroit à l'empereor ou à son comandement.

and then it would-render to the-emperor or to his command

Et ensi fu faite la pais de l'empereor et del marchis
And thus was made the peace of the-emperor and of-the marquis
 com vos avez oï. Et mult en orent grant joie par
as you have heard And much thereof they-had great joy through
 l'ost; que ce ert la chose dont granz damages pooit avenir.
the-host for this was the thing whence great damages could befall

300 Lors prist li marchis congié, et s'en ala vers Salenique
Then took the marquis leave and himself-thence went toward Salonika
 à totes ses genz et à tote sa fame; et avec lui chevauchierent
with all his people and with all his wife and with him rode
 li message l'empereor; et si com il venoit de chastel en chastel,
the envoys (of-)the-emperor and so as he came from castle to castle

si li furent rendu de par l'empereor, et la seigneurie tote.

so to-him were rendered on behalf-of the-emperor and the lordship all

Et vint à Salenique; et cil qui la gardoient la rendirent

And he-came to Salonika and those who it guarded it rendered

de par l'empereor. Et li chevetaines que li empereres i

on behalf-of the-emperor And the captain whom the emperor there

avoit laissié, qui ere apelez Reniers de Mons, si fu morz,

had left who was called Renier of Mons so was dead

qui mult ere prodom; dont granz damages fu de sa mort.

who very was worthy-man whereof great damage was of his death

Lors se commença la terre et li païs à rendre al

Then itself began the land and the country to render to-the

marchis, et granz partie à venir à son comandement, fors

marquis and great part to come to his command except

que uns Griex, halz hom, qui ere apelez Lasgur. Et cil

that a Greek big man who was called Leo-Sgouros And that-one

ne volt mie venir à son comandement; que il ere saiziz

not wished at-all to-come to his command for he was seized

de Corinthe et de Naples, deus citez qui sor mer sient,

of Corinth and of Nauplia two cities which on sea sit

des plus forz desoz ciel. Et cil ne volt mie venir à

of-the most strong beneath heaven And that-one not wished at-all to-come to

la merci del marchis; ainz le commença à guerroier, et

the mercy of-the marquis but him began to war-against and

granz pars des Griex se tindrent à lui. Et uns autres

great parts of-the Greeks themselves held to him And an other

Griex qui ere apelez Michalis, et ere venuz avec le marchis

Greek who was called Michael and was come with the marquis

de Costantinoble, et cuidoit estre mult bien de lui; mais

from Constantinople and thought to-be very well with him but

il se departi de lui qu'il n'en sot mot, et s'en

he himself departed from him that-he not-thereof knew word and himself-thence

ala à une cité que on apeloit l'Arthe; et prist la file à
went to a city that one called the-Arta and took the daughter of
 un riche Grieu qui tenoit la terre de par l'empereor, et
a rich Greek who held the land on behalf-of the-emperor and
 se saisi de la terre, et comença le marchis à guerrier.
himself seized of the land and began the marquis to war-against

302 Et la terre de Constantinoble trosque Salonique ere en si
And the land from Constantinople as-far-as Salonika was in so
 bone pais; que li chemin erent si seur que il i pooient
good peace that the roads were so safe that they there could
 bien aler qui aler i voloient; et si avoit d'une cité à
well go who to-go there wished and so there-was from-one city to
 autre bien doze journées granz. Et fu jà tant del tens
other well twelve days great And was already so-much of-the time
 passé, que il ere à l'issue de septembre. Et l'empereres
passed that it was at the-end of September And the-emperor
 Baudoins fu en Constantinoble, et la terre fu en paiz
Baldwin was in Constantinople and the land was in peace
 et à sa volenté. Lors furent dui mult bon chevalier mort
and at his will Then were two very good knights dead
 en Constantinoble, Eustaices de Canteleu et Hainmeris de
in Constantinople Eustace of Canteleux and Aimery of
 Vileroy; dont granz damages fu à lor amis.

Villeroi whereof great damage was to their friends
 303 Lors comença l'en les terres à departir; li Venisien orent la lor
Then began one the lands to divide the Venetians had the their
 part, et l'oz des pelerins l'autre. Et quant chascuns sot
part and the-host of-the pilgrims the-other And when each knew-how-to
 assener à sa terre, la convoitise del monde, qui tant aura
get to his land the covetousness of-the world which so-much will-have
 mal fait, nes laissa estre en paiz; ainz comença chascuns
ill done not-them let be in peace but began each

à faire mal en sa terre, li uns plus et li autre mains; et
to do ill in his land the one more and the other less and
 li Grieu les comencierent à haïr et à porter malvais cuer.
the Greeks them began to hate and to bear bad heart
 Lors dona l'emperere Baudoins au conte Loeys la duchée 304
Then gave the-emperor Baldwin to-the count Louis the duchy
 de Niqué, qui ere une des plus haltes honors de la terre
of Nicaea which was one of-the most high honors of the land
 de Romenie, et séoit d'autre part del Braiz, devers la
of Romania and sat on-other side of-the Arm toward the
 Turquie. Et tote la terre d'autre part del Braz n'ere mie
Turkey And all the land on-other side of-the Arm not-was at-all
 venue à la merci l'empereor, ainz ere contre lui. Lors après
come to the mercy (of-)the-emperor but was against him Then after
 dona la duchée de Finepople à Renier de Trit.
he-gave the duchy of Philippopolis to Renier of Trith
 Et lors envoya li cuens Loeys de ses homes por sa 305
And then sent the count Louis of his men for his
 terre conquerre, bien six vins chevaliers; de cels si fu
land to-conquer well six score knights of those so was
 chevetaines Pierres de Braiecuel et Paiens d'Orliens. Et cil
captain Peter of Bracieux and Payen of-Orléans And those
 s'en partirent à la feste Toz sainz de Costantinoble,
themselves-thence departed at the feast (of-)All Saints from Constantinople
 et passerent le Braz Saint-George à navie; et vindrent à
and crossed the Arm Saint-George by navy and came to
 l'Espigal, une cité qui sor mer siet, et ere poplée de
the-Espigal a city which on sea sits and was peopled with
 Latins. Et lors comencierent la guerre contre les Grex.
Latins And then they-began the war against the Greeks

The Death of Murzuphlus

XXXIV

Thierry of Loos captures the blinded Murzuphlus fleeing across the Arm, and he is thrown from a high marble column before the whole city, as an old prophecy and a figure carved on it foretold. Boniface sends the elder Alexius and his wife prisoner to Montferrat. Henry of Flanders crosses to Abydos, where the Armenians join him; Renier of Trith holds Philippopolis against Jobanitsa; Macaire of Sainte-Menebould occupies Nicomedia. Theodore Lascaris, the elder Alexius' son-in-law, wars on the Franks beyond the Arm, while Baldwin stays in Constantinople with few men.

- 306 En cel termine, si avint que l'empereres Morchufflés, qui avoit
In that time so happened that the-emperor Murzuphlus who had
les oels traiz (cil qui avoit murtri son seignor l'empeoreor Alexi,
the eyes drawn he who had murdered his lord the-emperor Alexius
le fil l'empeoreor Sursac, celui que li pelerin avoient amené en
the son (of-)the-emperor Sursac him whom the pilgrims had brought into
la terre), s'enfuoit oltre le Braz coiemment et à poi de gent.
the land himself-was-fleeing beyond the Arm secretly and with few of people
Et Tieris de Los le sot, cui il fu enseigniez; si le prist et
And Thierry of Loos it knew to-whom he was pointed-out so him took and
l'amena l'empeoreor Baudoin en Constantinople. Et l'empereres
him-brought (to-)the-emperor Baldwin into Constantinople And the-emperor
Baudoins en fu mult liez, et em prist conseil à ses homes,
Baldwin thereof was very glad and thereof took counsel with his men
qu'il en feroit d'ome qui tel murtre avoit fait de son seignor.
what-he thereof should-do of-a-man who such murder had done of his lord
- 307 A ce fu acordez li conseils, que il avoit une colonne en
To this was agreed the counsel that there was a column in
Costantinoble enmi la vile auques, qui ere une des plus
Constantinople amid the town somewhat which was one of-the most
haltes et des mielz ovrées de marbre qui onques fust veue
high and of-the best wrought of marble which ever might-be seen

d'oil; et enqui le feist mener et lo feist saillir
by-eye and there him he-should-have led and him should-have leap
 aval, voiant tote la gent; que si halte justise devoit bien
down seeing all the people for so high justice ought well
 toz li monz veoir. Ensi fu menez à la colonne l'empereres
all the world to-see Thus was led to the column the-emperor
 Morchufflés, et fu menez sus; et toz li pueples de la cité
Murziphlus and was led up and all the people of the city
 acorrut por veoir la merveille. Lor fu botez aval, et chaî
ran-up for to-see the marvel Then was-be pushed down and fell
 de si halt que quant il vint à terre que il fu toz esmiez.
from so high that when he came to earth that he was all shattered
 Or oïez une grant merveille; que en cele colonne dont 308
Now hear a great marvel that on that column from-which
 il chaî aval, avoit ymages de maintes manieres, ovrées
he fell down there-were images of many manners wrought
 el marbre. Et entre celes ymaiges, si en avoit une
in-the marble And among those images so thereof there-was one
 qui ere laborée en forme d'empeor, et cele si chaoit
which was wrought in form of-emperor and that-one so was-falling
 contreval; car de lonc tens ere profeticié qu'il auroit un
down for from long time it-was prophesied that-there would-be an
 empeor en Constantinople qui devoit estre gitez aval cele
emperor in Constantinople who ought to-be cast down that
 colonne. Et ensi fu cele semblance et cele prophecie averée.
column And thus was that likeness and that prophecy verified
 En icel termine, ravint altressi que li marchis Bonifaces de 309
In that time happened likewise that the marquis Boniface of
 Monferrat, qui ere vers Salenique, prist l'empeor Alexi (qui ere
Montferrat who was toward Salonika took the-emperor Alexius who was
 cil qui avoit à l'empeor Sursac traiz les ialz), et l'empereris
he who had from the-emperor Sursac drawn the eyes and the-empress

sa fame avec. Et envia les hueses vermeilles et les dras
his wife with-him And he-sent the boots red and the cloths
 emperials l'empereor Baudoin son seignor, en Costantinoble,
imperial (to-)the-emperor Baldwin his lord into Constantinople
 qui mult bon gré l'en sot; et il envia puis après
who very good will to-him-thereof knew and he sent then after
 l'empereor Alexi et l'empereriz sa fame, en prison en Monferrat.

the-emperor Alexius and the-empress his wife into prison in Montferrat

310 A la feste saint-Martin après, s'en issi Henris, li freres

At the feast (of-)Saint-Martin after himself-thence came-out Henry the brother

l'empereor Baudoin, de Constantinoble, et s'en ala

(of-)the-emperor Baldwin from Constantinople and himself-thence went

contreval le Braz trosque à Boche d'Avie; et mena bien six vins

down the Arm as-far to Mouth of-Abydos and led well six score

chevaliers avec lui de mult bone gent. Et passa le Braz à la

knights with him of very good people And he-crossed the Arm to the

cité que l'on appelle Avie, et la trova mult bien garnie de toz

city that one calls Abydos and it found very well furnished with all

biens, de blez et de viandes, et de totes choses qui mestier

goods with wheats and with victuals and with all things which need

ont à cors d'ome. Et il se saisi de la cité, et se herberja

have for body of-man And he himself seized of the city and himself lodged

dedenz; et lors comença la guerre contre les Grex endroit lui.

within and then began the war against the Greeks about him

Et li Hermin de la terre, dont il en i avoit mult, se

And the Armenians of the land of-whom it thereof there had many themselves

comencierent à torner devers lui; qu'i haoient mult les Grex.

began to turn toward him for-they hated much the Greeks

311 A cel termine, se parti Reniers de Trit de Costantinoble,

At that time himself departed Renier of Trith from Constantinople

et s'en ala vers Finepople, que l'empereres Baudoins

and himself-thence went toward Philippopolis which the-emperor Baldwin

li avoit donée. Et enmena bien avec lui six vins chevaliers
to-him had given And he-led well with him six score knights
 de mult bone gent; et chevaucha tant par ses journées que
of very good people and rode so-far by his day-stages that
 trespassa Andrenople, et vint à Phinepople. Et la gens de la
he-passed Adrianople and came to Philippopolis And the people of the
 terre le reçurent, et li obéirent come à seignor; qu'i le
land him received and to-him obeyed as to lord for-they him
 virent mult volentiers. Et il avoient mult grant mestier de
saw very willingly And they had very great need of
 secors; que Johans li rois de Blaquie les avoit mult appressez
succor for John the king of Wallachia them had much pressed
 de guerre. Et il lor aida mult bien, et tint grant partie de
with war And he them helped very well and held great part of
 la terre; et la granz partie qui s'ere tenue devers Johan, se
the land and the great part which itself-was held toward John itself
 torna devers lui. Enqui endroit refu la guerre granz entr'als.
turned toward him There right was-in-turn the war great between-them
 L'empereres rot bien envoie cent chevaliers passer le Braz 312
The-emperor had-also well sent hundred knights to-cross the Arm
 Saint-George endroit Costantinoble. De cels si fu chevetaines
Saint-George opposite Constantinople Of those so was captain
 Machaires de Sainte Manehalt; avec lui ala Mahius de
Macaire of Sainte Menebould with him went Matthew of
 Vaslaincort et Roberz del Ronçoi. Et chevauchierent à une cité
Walincourt and Robert of-the Ronsoy And they-rode to a city
 qui ere apelée Nichomie, et siet sor un gofre de mer; et ere
which was called Nicomedia and sits on a gulf of sea and was
 bien deus journées loing de Costantinoble. Et quant li Grieu
well two days away from Constantinople And when the Greeks
 les oïrent venir, si vuiderent la cité et s'en alerent; et
them heard come so emptied the city and themselves-thence went and

il se hebergierent dedenz, si la garnirent et refermerent;

they themselves lodged within so it furnished and re-fortified

et recomencierent à guerroier de cele marche endroit als.

and began-again to war from that march about them

313 La terre d'autre part del Braz si avoit seignor un Grieu

The land on-other side of-the Arm so had lord a Greek

que on apeloit Toldres li Ascres. Et avoit la file

whom one called Theodore the Lascaris And he-had the daughter

l'empeoreor Alexi à fame, dont il clamoit la terre (celui

(of-)the-emperor Alexius to wife whereby he claimed the land (of-)him

cui li Franc avoient chacié de Costantinoble, et qui avoit

whom the Franks had chased from Constantinople and who had

son frere traiz les ialz). Icil si tenoit la guerre contre

his brother drawn the eyes That-one so held the war against

les Franz outre le Braz, partot là où il estoient.

the Franks beyond the Arm everywhere there where they were

314 Et l'empereres Baudoins fu remés en Costantinoble, et li

And the-emperor Baldwin was remained in Constantinople and the

cuens Loeys, à poi de gent; et li cuens Hues de Saint-Pol,

count Louis with few of people and the count Hugh of Saint-Pol

qui malades ere d'une grant maladie de gote qui le tenoit es

who sick was of-a great sickness of gout which him held in-the

genols et es piez; et li dus de Venisse, qui goute ne veoit.

knees and in-the feet and the doge of Venice who a-drop not saw

Reinforcements from Syria

XXXV

Stephen of the Perche, Renaud of Montmirail, and many from Syria arrive, and Stephen receives Philadelphia. The Empress Marie, following her husband overseas, dies at Acre soon after hearing of his triumph. Peter of Bracieux and Payen of Orléans rout Lascar at Poemanenum and take Lopadium and other strong places. Henry moves to Adramyttium, and when Constantine Lascar attacks with a great army before mid-Lent, Henry sallies, routs him, and wins great booty.

En icel termine après, vint uns granz passages de cels de 315
In that term after came a great passage of those of
 la terre de Surie, et de cels qui l'ost avoient laissie et
the land of Syria and of those who the-host had left and
 estoient alé passer as autres passages. A cel passage vint
were gone to-cross at-the other passages At that passage came
 Estenes del Perche et Regnaus de Monmirail, qui cosin
Stephen of-the Perche and Renaud of Montmirail who cousins
 estoient le conte Loeys qui mult les honora et fu mult
were (of-)the count Louis who much them honored and was very
 liez de lor venue. Et l'empereres Baudoins et les autres genz
glad of their coming And the-emperor Baldwin and the other people
 les virent mult volentiers; qu'il estoient mult halt home
them saw very willingly for-they were very high men
 et mult riche, et amenerent grant plenté de bone gent.
and very rich and brought great plenty of good people
 De la terre de Surie vint Hue de Tabarie, et Raols ses 316
From the land of Syria came Hugh of Tiberias and Raoul his
 freres, et Tierris de Tendremonde, et granz plentés de la
brother and Thierry of Termonde and great plenty of the
 gent del païs, de chevaliers, de Turchoples et de serjanz.
people of-the country of knights of Turcopoles and of sergeants

Et lors après si dona l'empereres Baudoins à Estene del
And then after so gave the-emperor Baldwin to Stephen of-the
 Perche la duchée de Philadelphie.

Perche the duchy of Philadelphia

317 Entre les autres fu venue une novele à l'empeoreor Baudoin,

Among the others was come a news to the-emperor Baldwin
 dont il fu mult dolenz; que la contesse Marie sa fame,
whereof he was very sorrowful that the countess Marie his wife
 qu'il avoit laissie en Flandres ençainte, por ce qu'ele ne pot
whom-he had left in Flanders pregnant for this that-she not could
 avec lui movoir (qui adonc ere cuens), la dame si ajut
with him set-out who then was count the lady so was-delivered
 d'une file; et après, quant ele fu relevée, si s'esmut
of-a daughter and after when she was risen so herself-set-out
 et ala oltre-mer après son seignor, et passa al port de
and went overseas after her lord and crossed at-the port of
 Marseille. Et quant ele vint à Acre, si n'i ot gaires esté
Marseilles And when she came to Acre so not-there had much been
 que la novele li vint de Costantinoble (que li message
that the news to-her came from Constantinoble that the envoys
 son signour li conterent) que Costantinoble ere conquise,
(of-)her lord to-her told that Constantinoble was conquered
 et ses sires ere empereres; dont grans joie fu à la crestienté.
and her lord was emperor whereof great joy was to the Christendom

318 Après cele novele, ot la dame en proposement de venir à lui.
After that news had the lady in purpose to come to him
 Si li prist une maladie, si fina et morut; dont granz duels
So her took a sickness so she-ended and died whereof great mourning
 fu à tote la crestienté, car ele ere mult bone dame et mult
was to all the Christendom for she was very good lady and very
 honorée. Et cil qui vindrent à cel passage en apporterent les
honored And those who came at that passage thence brought the

noveles; dont granz diels fu à l'empereor Baudouin et à toz
news whereof great mourning was to the-emperor Baldwin and to all
 les barons de la terre, car il la desiroient mult avoir à dame.
the barons of the land for they her desired much to-have for lady
 En cel termine, cil qui estoient alé à la cité de l'Espigal, 319
In that term those who were gone to the city of the-Espigal
 dont Pierres de Braieciel et Paiens d'Orliens erent chevetaine,
whereof Peter of Bracieux and Payen of-Orléans were captains
 fermerent un chastel que on apela Palorme; si le garnirent de
fortified a castle that one called Palormo so it furnished with
 lor gent, et puis chevauchierent oltre por conquerre la terre.
their people and then rode beyond for to-conquer the land
 Toldres li Ascres se fu porchaciez de tote la gent que il
Theodore the Lascaris himself was provided with all the people that he
 pot avoir: le jor de la feste monseignor saint Nicholas, qui
could have the day of the feast (of-)my-lord saint Nicholas which
 est devant la Nativité, si s'entrecontrerent es plains d'un
is before the Nativity so each-other-met in-the plains of-a
 chastel que on appelle Pumenienor. Et si en fu bataille à
castle that one calls Poemanenum And so thereof was battle at
 mult grant meschief à la nostre gent; que cil avoient tant
very great disadvantage to the our people for those had so-many
 de gent que n'ere se merveile non, et li nostre n'avoient
of people that it-not-was except marvel not and the ours not-had
 mie plus de sept vins chevaliers, sans les serjanz à cheval.
at-all more than seven score knights without the sergeants on horse
 Et Nostre Sire done les aventures ensi come lui plaist. 320
And Our Lord gives the chances thus as to-him pleases
 Par la soe grace et par la soe volonté li Franc vanquirent
By the his grace and by the his will the Franks vanquished
 les Grejois et les desconfirent, et cil i reçurent grant
the Greeks and them routed and those there received great

domage. Dedenz la semaine lor rendi-on de la terre grant
damage Within the week to-them rendered-one of the land great
 part: on lor rendi le Pumenienor qui ere mult forz
part one to-them rendered the Poemanenum which was very strong
 chastiaus, et le Lupaire qui ere une des meillors citez de
castle and the Lopadium which was one of-the best cities of
 la terre, et lou Pulinach qui séoit sor un lac d'aigue dolce,
the land and the Poulinach which sat on a lake of-water sweet
 un des plus forz chastiaus et des meillors que il esteust
one of-the most strong castles and of-the best that it would-beboove
 querre. Et sachiez que mult fu bien pris à cele gent; et
to-seek And know that very was well befallen to that people and
 mult fissent bien en la terre lor volenté par l'aïe de Dieu.
very did well in the land their will by the-help of God

321 En icel termine après, par le conseil des Hermins, Henris, li
In that term after by the counsel of-the Armenians Henry the
 freres l'empereor Baudoin de Costantinoble, parti de la cité
brother (of-)the-emperor Baldwin of Constantinople departed from the city
 d'Avie et la lascia garnie de sa gent; et chevalcha à une cité
of-Abydos and it left furnished with his people and rode to a city
 que l'en apele l'Andremite, qui siet sor mer à deus journées
that one calls the-Adramyttium which sits on sea at two days
 de la cité d'Avie. Et ele li fu rendue, et il se herberja
from the city of-Abydos And it to-bim was rendered and he himself lodged
 dedenz; et lor se rendi granz partie de la terre à lui; car
within and then itself rendered great part of the land to him for
 la citez ere mult bien garnie de blez et de viandes et
the city was very well furnished with grain and with victuals and
 d'autres biens. Et lors si tint la guerre iqui envers les Griés.
with-other goods And then so he-held the war there against the Greeks

Toldres li Ascres, qui ot esté desconfiz vers le Pumenienor, 322

Theodore the Lascaris who had been routed toward the Poemanenum
 porchaça de gent quanque il en pot avoir; et ot mult grant
gathered of people whatever he thereof could have and had very great
 ost ensemble, et le charja Costentin son frere, qui ere uns
host together and it charged-to Constantine his brother who was one
 des meillors Griex de Romanie; et chevalcha vers l'Andremite
of-the best Greeks of Romania and he-rode toward the-Adramyttium
 droit. Et Henris, li freres l'empereor Baudoin, le sot par les
straight And Henry the brother (of-)the-emperor Baldwin it knew by the
 Hermines que mult granz oz venoit sor lui; si atorna son
Armenians that very great host came upon him so he-arrayed his
 afaire, et ordena ses batailles; et il avoit avec lui de mult bone
business and ordered his battalions and he had with him of very good
 gent. Avec lui estoient Baudoins de Belveoir, Nicholes de Mailli,
people With him were Baldwin of Beauvoir Nicholas of Mailly
 Ansials de Kaeu, et Tieris de Los, et Tieris de Tendremonde.
Anseau of Cayeux and Thierry of Loos and Thierry of Termonde

Et ensi avint que le semadi devant mi-quaresme, vint 323

And thus it-happened that the Saturday before mid-Lent came
 Costentins li Ascres à sa grant ost devant l'Andremite. Et
Constantine the Lascaris with his great host before the-Adramyttium And
 Henris, con il sot sa venue, si prist conseil et dist que il ne
Henry when he knew his coming so took counsel and said that he not
 se lairoit jà laienz enfermer, ainz dist que il istroit fors.
himself would-let ever therein shut-up but said that he would-go out
 Et cil vint à tote s'ost et à granz batailes à pié et à
And that-one came with all his-host and with great battalions on foot and on
 cheval; et cil s'en issirent et comencierent la bataille.
horse and those themselves-thence came-out and began the battle

Et i ot grant estor et grant mellée; mais par l'aïe de
And there was great fight and great brawl but by the-help of

Dieu, les venquirent li Franc et desconfrent; et en i
God them vanquished the Franks and routed and of-them there
 ot mult de morz et de pris, et mult fu granz li gaienz. Et
were many of dead and of taken and very was great the gain And
 lors furent mult à aise et mult riche; que les genz del païs
then they-were very at ease and very rich for the people of-the country
 se tornerent à aus, et comencierent à apporter lor rentes.
themselves turned to them and began to bring their rents

Villehardouin the Nephew in the Morea

XXXVI

Villehardouin's nephew Geoffrey, driven by storm to Modon, allies with a Greek lord and conquers much of the land, but on the lord's death his son turns against him. Geoffrey rides six days to Boniface, who is besieging Leo Sgouros in Nauplia and Corinth, and persuades William of Champlitte to conquer the Morea. With a hundred knights they rout Michael's five thousand near Modon and take Coron, which William gives to Geoffrey, and Kalamata, and more Greeks submit.

324 Or vos lairons de cels devers Costantinople, et revendrons
Now to-you we-will-leave of those toward Constantinople and we-will-come-back
 al marchis Boniface de Monferrat qui ert vers Salenique, et
to-the marquis Boniface of Montferrat who was toward Salonika and
 s'en fu alez sor Lasgur, qui tenoit Naples et Corinthe,
himself-thence was gone upon Leo-Sgouros who held Nauplia and Corinth
 deus des plus forz citez dou monde. Si les asseja andeus
two of-the most strong cities of-the world So them he-besieged both
 ensemble: Jacques d'Avesnes remest devant Corinthe, et autre
together James of-Avesnes remained before Corinth and other
 bone gens assez; et li autre alerent devant Naples, si l'asistrent.
good people plenty and the others went before Nauplia so it-besieged

Lors avint une aventure el païs; que Joffrois de
Then happened an adventure in-the country that Geoffrey of
 Vile-Hardoin, qui ere niés Joffroi le mareschal de Romenie
Villehardouin who was nephew (of-)Geoffrey the marshal of Romania
 et de Champagne, fils son frere, fu meuz de la terre de
and of Champagne son (of-)his brother was set-out from the land of
 Surie, avec celui passage qui ere venuz en Constantinoble.
Syria with that passage which was come to Constantinople
 Si l'enmena venz et aventure au port de Mouçon; et
So him-drove wind and chance to-the port of Modon and
 enqui fu sa nés empirie, et par estovoir le convint sejourner
there was his ship damaged and by necessity him bebooved to-sojourn
 l'iver el païs. Et uns Griex, qui mult ere sire del païs,
the-winter in-the country And a Greek who very was lord of-the country
 le sot; si vint à lui et li fist mult grant honor, et li
it knew so came to him and to-him did very great honor and to-him
 dist: «Biax sire, li Franc ont conquis Constantinoble, et
said Fair lord the Franks have conquered Constantinople and
 fait empereor. Se tu te voloies à moi acompaingnier, je
made emperor If thou thyself wouldst-wish to me to-join I
 te porteroie mult bone foi, et conquerriens assez de ceste
to-thee would-bear very good faith and we-would-conquer much of this
 terre.» Ensi se jurerent ensemble li Griex et Joffrois de
land Thus themselves swore together the Greek and Geoffrey of
 Vile-Hardoin; et conquistrent ensemble grant part de la terre:
Villehardouin and conquered together great part of the land
 et trova Joffrois de Vile-Hardoin ou Grieu mult bone foi.
and found Geoffrey of Villehardouin in-the Greek very good faith
 Ensi con les aventures vienent si cum Diex volt, si prist al
Thus as the chances come so as God wishes so took to-the
 Grieu maladie; si fina et morut. Et li fils al Grieu se
Greek sickness so he-ended and died And the son of-the Greek himself

325

326

revela contre Joffroi de Vile-Hardoin et le traï; et se
rebelled against Geoffrey of Villehardouin and him betrayed and themselves
 tornerent li chastel qu'il avoit garniz contre lui. Et il oït
turned the castles which-he had garrisoned against him And he heard
 dire que li marchis séoit devant Naples: à tant de gent com
say that the marquis sat before Nauplia with as-many of people as
 il pot avoir, si s'en vait contre lui. Et chevaucha par
he could have so himself-thence goes toward him And he-rode through
 mult grant peril bien six journées parmi la terre; et vint à
very great peril well six days through the land and came to
 l'ost, où il fu mult volentiers veuz, et fu mult honorez del
the-host where he was very willingly seen and was very honored by-the
 marchis et des autres qui i estoient; et il ere bien droiz;
marquis and by-the others who there were and it was well right
 quar il ere mult preuz et mult vailanz, et bons chevaliers.
for he was very worthy and very valiant and good knight

327 Li marchis li volt assez doner terre et avoir por ce qu'il
The marquis to-him wished plenty to-give land and wealth for this that-he
 remansist avec lui: il n'en volt point prendre; ainz parla à
should-remain with him he not-thereof wished at-all to-take but spoke to
 Guillaume de Chanlite qui mult ere ses amis, et li dist:
William of Champlitte who very was his friend and to-him said
 «Sire, je vieng d'une terre qui mult est riche, que on apele
Lord I come from-a land which very is rich that one calls
 la Morée. Prenez de gent ce que vos em porroiz avoir,
the Morea Take of people this that you thereof can have
 et partez de ceste ost, et alons par l'aïe de Dieu et
and depart from this host and let-us-go by the-help of God and
 la conquerons; et ce que vos m'en volroiz doner de la
it let-us-conquer and this that you to-me-thereof will-wish to-give of the
 conquete, je le tendrai de vos, si en serai vos hom liges.»
conquest I it will-hold of you so thereof I-will-be your man liege

Et cil qui mult le crut et ama, ala al marchis, si li

And he who much him believed and loved went to-the marquis so to-him

dist ceste chose; et li marchis li abandona qu'il i alast.

said this thing and the marquis to-him granted that-he there should-go

Ensi se partirent de l'ost Guillaumes de Chanlite et 328

Thus themselves departed from the-host William of Champlitte and

Joffrois de Vile-Hardoin, et enmenerent bien cent chevaliers

Geoffrey of Villehardouin and led well hundred knights

avec als, et de serjanz à cheval grant part; et entrerent

with them and of sergeants on horse great part and entered

en la terre de la Morée, et chevalchierent trosque à la

into the land of the Morea and rode as-far to the

cité de Monçon. Michalis oï qu'il estoient à si pou

city of Modon Michael heard that-they were with so few

de gent en la terre; si amassa grant gent, et ce fu une

of people in the land so he-gathered great people and this was a

mervuille de gent, et chevaucha après als, si cum cil qui

marvel of people and rode after them so as he who

les cuidoit avoir toz pris et avoir en sa main.

them thought to-have all taken and to-have in his hand

Et quant cil oïrent dire que il venoit, si horderent Monçon, qui 329

And when those heard say that he came so they-timbered Modon which

de lonc tens iert abatue, et i laissierent lor hernois et lor

from long time was thrown-down and there left their harness and their

menue gent. Et chevauchierent par un jor, et ordenerent lor

lesser people And they-rode for a day and ordered their

bataille de tant de gent cum il avoient: et fu à trop grant

battalion of as-many of people as they had and it-was at too great

meschief; que il n'avoient mie plus de cinq cens homes à

disadvantage for they not-had at-all more than five hundred men on

cheval, et cil en avoient bien plus de cinc mil. Ensi cum

horse and those thereof had well more than five thousand Thus as

les aventures avienent si con Dieu plaist, se combatirent
the chances happen so as (to-)God pleases themselves fought
 as Griex, et les desconfrent et vainquirent. Et i
with-the Greeks and them routed and vanquished And there
 perdirent mult li Griex; et cil gaaignierent assez chevaus et
lost much the Greeks and those won many horses and
 armes, et autres avoirs à mult grant plenté. Et lors s'en
arms and other goods in very great plenty And then themselves-thence
 tornerent mult lié et mult joiant à la cité de Moçon.
turned very glad and very joyful to the city of Modon

330 Après chevauchierent à une cité que on apele Corone, qui sor
After they-rode to a city that one calls Coron which on
 mer estoit; si l'asistrent. Et n'i sistrent gaires longuement,
sea was so it-besieged And not-there they-sat much long
 quant la citez lor fu rendue; et Guillaumes la dona
when the city to-them was rendered and William it gave
 Joffroi de Vile-Hardoin, et cil en devint ses hom,
(to-)Geoffrey of Villehardouin and that-one thereof became his man
 et la garni de sa gent. Après alerent à un chastel que on
and it furnished with his people After they-went to a castle that one
 apele la Chalemate, qui mult ere fors et bials; si l'asistrent.
calls the Kalamata which very was strong and fair so it-besieged
 Icil chastials les travailla mult longuement; et tant i
That castle them troubled very long and so-long there
 sistrent que renduz lor fu. Adont se rendirent plus
they-sat that rendered to-them it-was Then themselves rendered more
 des Grex à als del país que il n'avoient fait devant.
of-the Greeks to them of-the country than they had done before

The Greeks Allied with Johanitsa

XXXVII

Leo Sgouros sallies from Corinth at dawn; Dreux of Estruen is killed and James of Avesnes wounded before the Greeks are driven back. Seeing the Franks scattered, the Greek cities secretly offer Johanitsa the empire and swear to kill the Franks. Hugh of Saint-Pol dies of gout, his garrison at Demotika is betrayed and slaughtered, Adrianople rebels, and Franks are murdered everywhere. The fugitives, heartened by William of Blanvel at Tzurulum, occupy Arcadiopolis and rout the Greeks there with a sally, but they dare not hold it.

Li marchis Bonifaces sist à Naples, où il ne pot rien faire; 331
The marquis Boniface sat at Nauplia where he not could anything do
 quar trop ere forz, et il i greva mult sa gent. Jaques
for too it-was strong and he there burdened much his people James
 d'Avesnes retenoit le siege devant Corinthe, si con li marchis
of-Avesnes kept the siege before Corinth so as the marquis
 l'i avoit laissié. Lasgur qui ere dedenz Corinthe, et ere
him-there had left Leo-Sgouros who was within Corinth and was
 mult sages et engignieus, vit que Jaques n'avoit mie granz genz,
very wise and crafty saw that James not-had at-all great people
 et que il ne se gaitoit mie bien. A un maitin, à l'ajornée,
and that he not himself watched at-all well At a morning at the-dawn
 fist une saillie mult grant, et ala trosque enz es paveillons;
he-made a sally very great and went as-far into in-the pavilions
 et ainz que il peussent estre armé, en ocistrent assez.
and before that they could be armed of-them they-killed plenty
 Là si fu morz Drues d'Estruen qui fu mult preuz et 332
There so was dead Dreux of-Estruen who was very worthy and
 vaillanz, dont granz dials fu. Et Jaques d'Avesnes, qui
valiant whereof great mourning was And James of-Avesnes who
 ere chevetteines, fu mult corrouciés de son chevalier; et ne
was captain was much angered for his knight and not

demora gaires que il fu navrez en la jambe mult durement.

delayed much that he was wounded in the leg very hard

Et bien li porterent tesmoing cil qui là furent, que

And well to-him bore witness those who there were that

par son bien faire furent rescous; et sachiez bien que

by his well doing they-were rescued and know well that

mult furent près d'estre tuit perdu. Et par l'aïe de Dieu,

very they-were near to-be all lost And by the-help of God

les remistrent el chastel à force. Mais li Grieu n'orent

them they-put-back into-the castle by force But the Greeks not-had

mie la felonie fors de lor cuers, qui mult estoient desloial.

at-all the felony out of their hearts which very were disloyal

333 A icel tens, si virent que li François estoient si espandu par

At that time so they-saw that the French were so spread through

les terres; que chascuns avoit affaire endroit lui: si se

the lands that each had business for himself so themselves

penserent que ore les pooient-il traïr. Et pristrent lor message

bethought that now them could-they betray And they-took their envoy

privéement de totes les citez de la terre, et les envoieront

privately from all the cities of the land and them sent

à Johan qui ere rois de Blaquie et de Bogrie, qui les avoit

to John who was king of Wallachia and of Bulgaria who them had

guerroiez et guerreoit tot adès. Et li manderent que il le

warred and warred all ever And to-him sent-word that they him

feroient empereor, et qu'il se rendroient tuit à lui, et

would-make emperor and that-they themselves would-render all to him and

que il ociroient toz les Franz; et si li jureroient que il

that they would-kill all the Franks and so to-him would-swear that they

li obéiroient comme à seignor, et il lor jurast que il

to-him would-obey as to lord and he to-them should-swear that he

les maintendrait comme les suens. Ensi fu faiz li sairementz.

them would-maintain as the his-own Thus was made the oath

En cel termine, si avint uns granz damages en Costantinoble; 334

In that time so happened a great damage in Constantinople
 que li cuens Hues de Saint Pol, qui avoit longuement geu
that the count Hugh of Saint Pol who had long lain
 d'une maladie de gote, fina et morut; dont il fu mult granz
of-a sickness of gout ended and died whereof it was very great
 diels et mult granz damages; et fu mult plorez de
mourning and very great damage and he-was much wept by
 ses homes et de ses amis. Et fu enterrez à mult grant
his men and by his friends And he-was buried with very great
 honor au mostier monseignor Saint George de la Mange.
honor at-the minster (of-)my-lord Saint George of the Mangana

Et li cuens Hues si tenoit un chastel en sa vie, qui 335

And the count Hugh so held a castle in his life which
 avoit nom li Dimos, et ere mult fors et mult riches;
had name the Demotika and was very strong and very rich
 si i avoit de ses chevaliers et de ses serjanz dedenz. Li
so there had of his knights and of his sergeants within The
 Grieu qui avoient les sairementz faiz al roi de Blaquie por
Greeks who had the oaths made to-the king of Wallachia for
 les Frans occire et traïr, si les traïrent en cel chastel; si
the Franks to-kill and to-betray so them betrayed in that castle so
 en ocistrent et pristrent grant part. Et eschaperent pou;
of-them they-killed and took great part And escaped few
 et cil qui eschaperent s'en alerent fuiaint à une cité
and those who escaped themselves-thence went fleeing to a city
 qu'on apele Andrenople, que li Venicien tenoient à cel jor.
that-one calls Adrianople which the Venetians held at that day
 Ne tarda gaires après cum cil d'Andrenople se revelerent; 336
Not delayed much after when those of-Adrianople themselves rebelled
 et cil qui estoient dedenz et la gardoient, s'en
and those who were within and it guarded themselves-thence

issirent à grant peril et guerpirent la cité. Et les noveles
came-out with great peril and forsook the city And the news
 vindrent à l'empereor Baudoin de Costantinoble, qui mult
came to the-emperor Baldwin of Constantinople who very
 ere à pou de gent, il et li cuens Loeis de Blois. De ces
was with few of people he and the count Louis of Blois By these
 noveles furent il mult troblé et mult esmaié. Et ensi lor
news were they much troubled and much dismayed And thus to-them
 comencierent noveles à venir de jor en jor malvaises; que
began news to come from day to day bad for
 par tot se reveloient li Grieu, et là où il trovoient
through all themselves rebelled the Greeks and there where they found
 les Frans qui estoient bailli des terres, si les ocioient.
the Franks who were bailiffs of-the lands so them they-killed

337 Et cil qui avoient Andrenople guerpie, li Venicien et li
And those who had Adrianople forsaken the Venetians and the
 autre qui avec erent, s'en vindrent à une cité que on
others who with-them were themselves-thence came to a city that one
 apeloit le Churlot, qui ere l'enpereor Baudoin. Enqui troverent
called the Tzurulum which was (of-)the-emperor Baldwin There they-found
 Guillaume de Blanvel, qui de par l'enpereor la gardoit. Par
William of Blanvel who on behalf-of the-emperor it guarded By
 le confort que il lor fist, et par ce que il ala avec als à
the comfort that he to-them gave and by this that he went with them with
 tant de gent con il pot, si tornerent arieres à une cité bien
as-many of people as he could so they-turned back to a city well
 à doze lieues près, qui Archadiople ere apelée, qui ere as
at twelve leagues near which Arcadiopolis was called which was of-the
 Venisiens, et la troverent vuide; si entrèrent enz, si la garnirent.
Venetians and it they-found empty so they-entered in so it they-garrisoned

Dedenz le tierz jor, li Grieu del païs s'assemblerent, si 338
Within the third day the Greeks of-the country themselves-assembled so
 vindrent à une ajournée devant Archadiopole; si commencierent
came at a dawn before Arcadiopolis so began
 l'asaut grant et merveillous tot entor. Et il se
the-assault great and marvelous all around And they themselves
 defendirent mult bien; si ovrirent lor portes, si fistrent
defended very well so opened their gates so made
 une assaillie mult grant. Si con Diex le volt, si se
a sally very great So as God it wished so themselves
 desconfissent li Grieu; et cil les commencierent à abatre
rout the Greeks and those them began to cut-down
 et à ocire. Ensi les chacierent une lieue, et en ocistrent
and to kill Thus them they-chased a league and of-them killed
 mult, et gaaignierent assez chevax et autres avoirs mult.
many and won many horses and other goods many
 Ensi s'en revindrent à grant joie en la cité 339
Thus themselves-thence came-back with great joy into the city
 d'Archadiopole, et cele victoire si manderent l'empereor Baudoin
of-Arcadiopolis and that victory so sent-word-to the-emperor Baldwin
 en Constantinoble, qui mult en fu liez. Et neporquant
in Constantinople who much thereof was glad And nevertheless
 n'oserent retenir la cité d'Archadiopole, ainz s'en
not-they-dared to-retain the city of-Arcadiopolis but themselves-thence
 issirent l'endemain et la guerpirent, et s'en revindrent
came-out the-next-day and it forsook and themselves-thence came-back
 en la cité del Curlot. Enqui s'aresterent à grant dote; que
into the city of-the Tzurulum There themselves-stopped in great dread for
 il dotoient autant cels de la vile cum il faisoient cels de
they feared as-much those of the town as they did those of
 hors; que il estoient dou sairement devers le roi de Blaquie,
outside for they were of-the oath toward the king of Wallachia

et devoient les Frans traïr. Et maint en i ot qui n'i
and were-to the Franks betray And many of-them there were who not-there
 oserent arester, ainz s'en vindrent en Constantinoble.
dared stop but themselves-thence came into Constantinople

The Recall from Beyond the Straits

XXXVIII

Baldwin recalls Henry from Adramyttium and the garrison of Nicomedia, and Louis recalls his knights from Lopadium. Villehardouin and Manasses of the Isle ride out with the few they have, gather eighty knights at Tzurulum, and advance through towns the Greeks have emptied to Nikitza, nine leagues from Adrianople, to await the emperor. At Philippopolis Renier of Trith's son, brother, nephew, and son-in-law desert him and are beheaded by Johanitsa; eighty more knights leave, and Renier is left with fifteen at Philippopolis and Stenimaka.

340 Lors pristrent l'empereres Baudoins conseil, et li dux de
Then took the-emperor Baldwin counsel and the doge of
 Venise, et li cuens Loeys, et virent que il perdoient tote
Venice and the count Louis and saw that they were-losing all
 la terre. Et fu telx lor consels que l'empereres manda
the land And was such their counsel that the-emperor sent-word-to
 Henri son frere, qui ere à l'Andremite, que il guerpist
Henry his brother who was at the-Adramyttium that he should-forsake
 quanque il i avoit conquis, et le venist secore.
whatever he there had conquered and him should-come to-succor

341 Li cuens Loeys en renvoia à Paien d'Orliens et à Perron de
The count Louis thereof sent-word to Payen of-Orléans and to Peter of
 Braieciel qui erent à Lupaire, et à totes les gens que il avoient
Bracieux who were at Lopadium and to all the people that they had
 avec els, que il guerpissent tote la conquete, fors seulement
with them that they should-forsake all the conquest except only

l'Espigal, qui séoit sor mer; et la garnissent à mains

the-Espigal which sat on sea and it they-should-garrison with least

que il porroient de gent, et li autre le venissent secoure.

that they could of people and the others him should-come to-succor

L'empereres manda Machaire de Sainte Manehaut et

342

The-emperor sent-word-to Macaire of Sainte Menebould and

Mahui de Vaslencort et Robert del Ronçoi, qui bien

Matthew of Walincourt and Robert of-the Ronsoy who well

avoient cent chevaliers avec als et estoient à Nichomie,

had hundred knights with them and were at Nicomedia

que il la guerpissent et le venissent secoure.

that they it should-forsake and him should-come to-succor

Par le comandement l'empeor Baudoin, issi Joffrois de

343

By the command (of-)the-emperor Baldwin came-out Geoffrey of

Vile-Hardoin, li mareschus de Romenie et de Champaigne,

Villehardouin the marshal of Romania and of Champaigne

de Costantinoble, et Manassiers de l'Isle, à tant de

from Constantinople and Manasses of the-Isle with as-many of

gent con il porent avoir; et ce fu mult poi, car la terre

people as they could have and this was very few for the land

se perdoit tote. Et chevauchierent trosque à la cité del

itself was-losing all And they-rode as-far to the city of-the

Churlot, qui ere à trois journées de Constantinoble. Illuec

Tzurulum which was at three days from Constantinople There

troverent Guillaume de Blanvel, et cels qui avec lui estoient,

they-found William of Blanvel and those who with him were

qui mult erent à grant paor; et lors furent mult asseuré.

who very were in great fear and then were much reassured

Enqui sejournerent par quatre jorz. L'empereres Baudois

There they-sojourned for four days The-emperor Baldwin

renvoia, après Joffroi le mareschal, quanque il pooit avoir

sent after Geoffrey the marshal whatever he could have

de gent tout ensi com il venoient, tant que vint al
of people all just as they came until that it-came to-the
 quart jor que il orent quatre vins chevaliers al Churlot.

fourth day that they had four score knights at-the Tzurulum

344 Et dont s'esmut Joffrois li mareschaus, et Manassiers de

And then himself-set-out Geoffrey the marshal and Manasses of

l'Isle et lor genz; et chevauchierent avant, et vindrent à la

the-Isle and their people and rode forward and came to the

citè d'Archadiople; si se hebergierent enz. Enqui sejournerent

city of-Arcadiopolis so themselves lodged in There they-sojourned

un jor et d'enqui murent; si s'en alerent à une altre

one day and from-there set-out so themselves-thence went to an other

citè que on apele Bugarofle. Et li Grieu l'orent vuidie; si

city that one calls Bulgarophyon And the Greeks it-had emptied so

se hebergierent dedenz. L'endemain chevauchierent à une

themselves lodged within The-next-day they-rode to a

citè que on apele Nequise, qui ere mult bele et mult ferme,

city that one calls Nikitza which was very fair and very strong

et mult bien garnie de toz biens. Et troverent que li Grieu

and very well furnished with all goods And they-found that the Greeks

l'orent guerpie, et s'en erent tuit alé à Andrenople.

it-had forsaken and themselves-thence were all gone to Adrianople

Et cele citez ere à neuf liues françoises près d'Andrenople,

And that city was at nine leagues French near to-Adrianople

et tote la grans plentez des Grex ere à Andrenople. Et fu

and all the great plenty of-the Greeks was at Adrianople And was

tels lor consels qu'il attendroient iqui l'empereor Baudoin.

such their counsel that-they would-await there the-emperor Baldwin

345 Or conte li livres une grant mervolle: que Reniers de Trit

Now tells the book a great marvel that Renier of Trith

qui ere à Finepople, bien neuf journées loing de Costantinoble,

who was at Philippopolis well nine days away from Constantinople

et avoit bien six vins chevaliers avec lui, que Reniers ses fils
and had well six score knights with him that Renier his son
 le guerpi, et Giles ses freres, et Jaques de Bondies qui ere
him forsook and Giles his brother and James of Bondies who was
 ses niés, et Achars de Verdun qui avoit sa file. Et li
his nephew and Achard of Verdun who had his daughter And from-him
 tolirent bien trente de ses chevaliers; et s'en cuidoient
took well thirty of his knights and themselves-thence thought
 venir en Constantinoble; et l'avoient laissié en si grant peril,
to-come into Constantinople and him-had left in so great peril
 com vos oez. Si troverent la terre revelée encontre els, et furent
as you hear So they-found the land risen against them and were
 desconfit; si les pristrent li Grieu qui puis les rendirent le
routed so them took the Greeks who then them rendered (to-)the
 roi de Blaquie, qui puis après lor fist les testes trenchier. Et
king of Wallachia who then after to-them had the heads cut-off And
 sachiez que mult furent petit plaint de la gent, porce qu'il
know that very were little pitied by the people because that-they
 avoient si mespris vers celui cui il ne le deussent mie faire.
had so misdone toward him whom they not it ought at-all to-do
 Et quant li autre chevalier Renier de Trit virent ce, qui
And when the other knights (of-)Renier of Trith saw this who
 si près ne lui estoient mie cum cil qui alé s'en
so near not to-him were at-all as those who gone themselves-thence
 estoient, si en doterent mains la honte; si le guerpirent
were so thereof feared less the shame so him forsook
 bien quatre vins chevalier tuit ensemble, et s'en alerent
well four score knights all together and themselves-thence went
 par une autre voie. Et Reniers de Trit remest entre les Griex
by an other road And Renier of Trith remained among the Greeks
 à pou de gent; que il n'avoit mie plus de quinze chevaliers
with few of people for he not-had at-all more than fifteen knights

346

à Phinepople et à l'Estanemac, qui ere uns chastiaus mult
at Philippopolis and at the-Stenimaka which was a castle very
 forz que il tenoit, où il fu puis longuement assis.
strong that he held where he was then long besieged

Before Adrianople

XXXIX

Without waiting for Henry, Baldwin and Count Louis ride out with seven score knights, join Villehardouin at Nikitza, and in Holy Week besiege Adrianople, which flies Johanitsa's banners. The blind doge brings as many men again. Short of victuals and unable to forage, they wait as Johanitsa comes with Vlachs, Bulgars, and fourteen thousand heathen Cumans. Louis's assault on Peutaces fails, and they keep Easter before the city, mining its wall.

347 Or vos lairons de Renier de Trit, si revendrons à
Now to-you we-will-leave of Renier of Trith so we-will-come-back to
 l'empereour Baudoin, qui est en Costantinoble à mult pou
the-emperor Baldwin who is in Constantinople with very few
 de gent, mult iriez et mult destroiz. Et attendoit Henri
of people very angered and very distressed And he-awaited Henry
 son frère, et totes les autres genz qui erent oltre le Braz.
his brother and all the other people who were beyond the Arm
 Et li premier qui vindrent à lui d'oltre le Braz, ce
And the first who came to him from-beyond the Arm these
 furent cil de Nichomie, Machaires de Sainte Manchalt et
were those of Nicomedia Macaire of Sainte Menebould and
 Mahuis de Vaslencort et Roberz de Ronçoi; et vindrent
Matthew of Walincourt and Robert of Ronsoy and came
 bien en cele route cent chevalier.
well in that company hundred knights

Et quant l'empereres les vit, si en fu multz liez, et parla 348

And when the-emperor them saw so thereof he-was very glad and spoke

al conte Loeys, qui cuens ere de Blois et de Chartain;

to-the count Louis who count was of Blois and of Chartres

et fu tels lor consels, que il distrent que il s'en

and was such their counsel that they said that they themselves-thence

istroient à tant de gent cum il avoient, et sivoient

would-go-out with as-many of people as they had and would-follow

Joffroi le mareschal de Champagne qui devant s'en

Geoffrey the marshal of Champagne who before himself-thence

estoit alez. Halas! quel domage qu'il n'attendirent tant que

was gone Alas what damage that-they not-waited until that

tuit li autre fussient venu, qui d'autre part del Braz estoient;

all the others should-be come who on-other side of-the Arm were

que poi avoient gent à si perileus leu où il aloient.

for few they-had people for so perilous place where they went

Ensi issirent de Costantinoble bien à sept vins chevaliers; 349

Thus they-came-out from Constantinople well with seven score knights

et chevauchierent de journée en journée, tant que il

and rode from day's-journey to day's-journey so-long that they

vindrent al chastel de Nequise, où Joffrois li mareschais

came to-the castle of Nikitza where Geoffrey the marshal

estoit herbergiez. La nuit pristrent conseil ensemble; la summe

was lodged The night they-took counsel together the sum

de lor conseil fu telx, que il iroient al maitin devant

of their counsel was such that they would-go at-the morning before

Andrenople, et que il l'aserroient. Et ordenerent lor batailles,

Adrianople and that they it-would-besiege And they-ordered their battalions

et deviserent mult bien de tant de gent cum il avoient.

and devised very well of as-many of people as they had

- 350 Et quant vint al maitin, à cler jor, il chevauchierent si
And when it-came to-the morning at clear day they rode so
 con devisé ere, et vindrent devant Andrenople. Et la troverent
as devised it-was and came before Adrianople And it they-found
 mult bien garnie, et virent les confanons Jaenisse, le roi
very well garrisoned and saw the pennons (of-)Johanitsa the king
 de Blaquie et de Bougrie, sor les murs et sor les tors; et
of Wallachia and of Bulgaria on the walls and on the towers and
 la vile fu mult fors et mult riche, et mult plaine de gent.
the town was very strong and very rich and very full of people
 Et il les assirent à mult poi de gent devant deus des
And they them besieged with very few of people before two of-the
 portes; et ce fu li mardis de Pasque florie. Ensi furent par
gates and this was the Tuesday of Easter flowered Thus they-were for
 trois jorz devant la ville à grant mesaïse et à pou de gent.
three days before the town in great discomfort and with few of people
- 351 Lors vint Henris Dandole qui ere dux de Venise; mais vielz
Then came Henry Dandolo who was doge of Venice but old
 hom ere, et gote ne véoit. Et amena de tel gent cum
man he-was and a-drop not saw And he-brought of such people as
 il ot, et bien altant cum l'empereres Baudoins et li cuens
he had and well as-many as the-emperor Baldwin and the count
 Loeys en avoient amené; et se loja devant une des
Louis thereof had brought and himself lodged before one of-the
 portes. L'endemain, recrurent d'une rote de serjanz à cheval;
gates The-next-day they-grew with-a company of sergeants on horse
 mais bien fust mestiers que il valsissent plus que il ne
but well would-be need that they were-worth more than they —
 valaient. Et si avoient pou de viande, que marchiés nes
were-worth And so they-had few of victuals for market not-them

pooit sevre; ne il ne pooient aler forer, que tant avoit
could follow nor they not could go to-forage for so-many there-were
 des Griex par le païs que il n'i pooient mie aler.
of-the Greeks through the country that they not-there could at-all go
 Johannis li rois de Blaquie venoit secoure cels d'Andrenople 352
Johanitsa the king of Wallachia came to-succor those of-Adrianople
 à mult grant ost; que il amenoit Blas et Bogres, et bien
with very great host for he led Vlachs and Bulgars and well
 quatorze mil Cumains, qui n'estoient mie baptezé. Por la
fourteen thousand Cumans who not-were at-all baptized For the
 destrece de la viande, ala forrer li cuens Loeys de Blois et
distress of the victuals went to-forage the count Louis of Blois and
 de Chartein le jor de la Pasque florie. Avec lui ala Estenes
of Chartres the day of the Easter flowered With him went Stephen
 del Perche li freres le conte Joffroi del Perche, et Renaus
of-the Perche the brother (of-)the count Geoffrey of-the Perche and Renaud
 de Monmirail, qui ere freres le conte Hervi de Nevers, et
of Montmirail who was brother (of-)the count Hervé of Nevers and
 Gervaises del Chastel, et plus de la moitié de tote l'ost.
Gervase of-the Châtel and more than the half of all the-host
 Si alerent à un chastel que on apele Peutaces, et le 353
So they-went to a castle that one calls Peutaces and it
 troverent mult bien garni de Grex; et i assaillirent mult
they-found very well garrisoned with Greeks and there assailed very
 grant assalt et mult fort, ne n'i porent rien faire, ains
great assault and very strong nor not-there could anything do but
 s'en revindrent arriers sanz nule conquete. Ensi furent
themselves-thence came-back back without any conquest Thus they-were
 la semaine des deus Pasques; et fissent engins chapuisier
the week of-the two Easters and had engines built
 de mainte mainiere, et mistrent mineors qu'il avoient par
of many-a manner and put miners whom-they had by

desoz terre, por le mur trenchier. Et ensi fisent la Pasque
below earth for the wall to-cut And thus they-kept the Easter
 devant Andrenople à pou de gent et à pou de viande.
before Adrianople with few of people and with few of victuals

The Defeat at Adrianople

XL

Johanitsa's Cumans raid the camp and draw the Franks into a foolish chase, so the barons order that no one leave the line. On the Thursday after Easter the Cumans come again; Count Louis breaks the order and pursues for two leagues, calling Baldwin after him. The Cumans turn, the untried troops panic, and Louis, twice wounded, refuses to flee and leave the emperor. Baldwin fights to the end and is taken alive; Louis is killed, with the Bishop of Bethlehem, Stephen of the Perche, and many more.

354 Lors vint novelle que Johans li rois de Blaque venoit sor
Then came news that John the king of Wallachia came upon
 als por secorre la vile. Si ordenerent lor afaire; et fu
them for to-succor the town So they-ordered their business and was
 devisé que Joffrois li mareschaus et Manessiers de l'Isle
devised that Geoffrey the marshal and Manasses of the-Isle
 garderoient l'ost, et l'empereres Baudoins et tuit li autre
would-guard the-host and the-emperor Baldwin and all the others
 istroient fors, se Johannis venoit à bataille.
would-go out if Johanitsa came to battle

355 Ensi demorerent trosque al maicresdi des foiries des
Thus they-remained until to-the Wednesday of-the holidays of-the
 Pasques; et Johanis fu jà si aprochiez qu'il fu logiez
Easter and Johanitsa was already so approached that-he was lodged
 bien à cinq lieues d'als. Et envia core devant lor ost
well at five leagues from-them And he-sent to-run before their host

ses Commains; et li criz lieue en l'ost, et s'en

his Cumans and the cry rises in the-host and themselves-thence

issent à desroi. Et chacierent les Commains une mult

come-out in disorder And they-chased the Cumans a very

bone lieue mult folement; et quant il s'en voldrent

good league very foolishly and when they themselves-thence wished

venir, li Commain commencierent à traire sor als mult

to-come the Cumans began to shoot upon them very

durement, si lor navrerent de lor chevaux assez.

hard so to-them wounded of their horses plenty

Ensi s'en revindrent en l'ost, et furent mandé li baron 356

Thus themselves-thence came-back into the-host and were summoned the barons

en l'ostel l'empereor Baudoin. Et pristrent conseil, et distrent

into the-lodging (of-)the-emperor Baldwin And they-took counsel and said

que mult avoient fait grant folie, qu'il avoient tant chacié tel

that very they-had done great folly for-they had so-far chased such

gent qui estoient si ligierement armé. La somme del conseil

people who were so lightly armed The sum of-the counsel

fu tels que se Johannis venoit mais, que il istroient fors et

was such that if Johanitsa came more that they would-go out and

se rengerioient devant lor ost, et que enqui l'atendroient,

themselves would-range before their host and that there him-would-await

et d'enqui ne se movroient. Et i fisent crier par tote

and from-there not themselves would-move And there they-had cried through all

l'ost que nus ne fust si hardiz qu'il passast cel ordenement

the-host that anyone not might-be so bold that-he should-pass that order

por cri ne por noise que il oïst. Et fu devisé que Joffrois

for cry nor for noise that he might-hear And was devised that Geoffrey

li mareschaus garderoit devers la cité, et Manassiers de l'Isle.

the marshal would-guard toward the city and Manasses of the-Isle

- 357 Ensi trespasèrent cele nuit trosque al joesdi matin des foiries
Thus they-passed that night until to-the Thursday morning of-the holidays
 des Pasques; et oïrent la messe, et mengierent al disner.
of-the Easter and heard the mass and ate at-the dinner
 Et li Commain corent trosque à lor paveillons; et li criz
And the Cumans run as-far to their pavilions and the cry
 lieve, et il corent as armes, et s'en issent de l'ost
rises and they run to-the arms and themselves-thence come-out from the-host
 totes lor batailles ordenées, si con il avoient devisé devant.
all their battalions ordered so as they had devised before
- 358 Li cuens Loeys s'en issi premiers à la soe bataille;
The count Louis himself-thence came-out first with the his battalion
 et commence les Commains à porsevre, et mande
and begins the Cumans to pursue and sends-word-to
 l'empereor Baudoin que il le sivist. Halas! con malement
the-emperor Baldwin that he him should-follow Alas how badly
 il tindrent ce qu'il avoient devant devisé le soir! que
they kept this that-they had before devised the evening for
 ensi porsuïrent les Commains bien près de deus lieues loing,
thus they-pursued the Cumans well near of two leagues away
 et assemblerent à als, et les chacierent grant piece. Et li
and joined to them and them chased great while And the
 Commain recuerent sor als, et commencent à huer et à traire.
Cumans turned-back upon them and begin to shout and to shoot
- 359 Et li no orent bataille d'autre gent que de chevaliers, qui
And the ours had battalion of-other people than of knights who
 ne savoiënt mie assez d'armes; si s'escomencent à esfreer et
not knew at-all enough of-arms so themselves-begin to take-fright and
 à desconfire. Et li cuens Loeys, qui fu assemblés premiers,
to be-routed And the count Louis who was joined first
 fu navré en deus leus mult durement; et li Comain et li
was wounded in two places very hard and the Cumans and the

Blac les comencierent à envair; et li cuens ot esté chaüs,
Vlachs them began to assail and the count had been fallen

et uns suens chevaliers, qui ot non Johans de Friaïse, fu
and a his-own knight who had name John of Friaize was

descendus, si lo mist sor son cheval. Assez fu de la
dismounted so him put on his horse Plenty there-were of the

gent le conte Loeys qui li distrent: «Sire, alez vos
people (of-)the count Louis who to-him said Lord go you

en, quar trop malement navrez estes en deus leus.» Et
thence for too badly wounded you-are in two places And

il dist: «Ne place dam le Dieu que jamais me soit
he said Not may-it-please Lord the God that ever to-me be

reprové que je fuie de champ, et laise l'empereor.»
reproached that I flee from field and leave the-emperor

L'emperere, qui mult ere chargiez endroit lui, rapeloit sa 360
The-emperor who very was pressed in-place himself called-back his

gent; si lor disoit que il ne fuïroit jà, et qu'il ne
people so to-them said that he not would-flee ever and that-they not

le laissassent mie: et bien tesmoignent cil qui là furent
him should-leave at-all and well testify those who there were

que onques mais cors de chevalier mielz ne se defendi de
that ever before body of knight better not itself defended than

lui. Ensi dura cil estors longuement: telx i ot qui bien
him Thus lasted that fight long such there were who well

le firent, et telx i ot qui le guerpirent. A la parfin,
it did and such there were who him forsook At the end

si cum Diex sueffre les mesaventures, si furent desconfit.
so as God suffers the mischances so they-were routed

Iqui remest el champ l'empereres Baudoins qui onques
There remained on-the field the-emperor Baldwin who ever

ne volt fuir, et li cuens Loeys: l'empereres Baudoins fu
not wished to-flee and the count Louis the-emperor Baldwin was
 pris vis, et li cuens Loeys fu ocis.

taken alive and the count Louis was killed

- 361 Halas! com dolereuse perte fu là faite! Là fu perduz li
Alas how sorrowful loss was there made There was lost the
 evesques Pierres de Bethleem, et Estenes del Perche li freres
bishop Peter of Bethlehem and Stephen of-the Perche the brother
 le conte Joffroi, et Renaus de Monmirail li freres le conte
(of-)the count Geoffrey and Renaud of Montmirail the brother (of-)the count
 de Nevers, et Mahius de Vaslencort, et Roberz de Ronçoi,
of Nevers and Matthew of Walincourt and Robert of Ronsoy
 Johans de Friaise, Gautiers de Nuilli, Ferris d'ierre, Johans ses
John of Friaize Walter of Neuilly Ferri of-Yerres John his
 freres, Eustaices de Heumont, Johans ses freres, Baudoins de
brother Eustace of Heumont John his brother Baldwin of
 Nuevile, et mult des autres dont li livres ne parole mie ci. Et
Neuville and many of-the others of-whom the book not speaks at-all here And
 li autre qui porent eschamper, s'en vinrent fuiant à l'ost.
the others who could escape themselves-thence came fleeing to the-host

The Retreat

XLI

Villehardouin rides out from his gate, gathers the fugitives into his battalion, and with Manasses of the Isle holds the enemy off until evening. He and the blind doge agree to keep the camp still until night and then withdraw, the doge leading and Villehardouin in the rear, leaving no one behind, toward Rodosto. The year is 1205. A company with Count Gerard of Lombardy takes a quicker road to Constantinople, to its blame, and its news makes the cardinal and Conon of Béthune fear the rest are lost.

Et quant ce vit Joffrois li mareschaus de Champaigne, 362
And when this saw Geoffrey the marshal of Champagne
qui gardoit devant une des portes de la cité, si s'en
who guarded before one of-the gates of the city so himself-thence
issi plus tost que il pot à la gent que il ot; et
came-out most soon that he could with the people that he had and
manda Manassier de l'Isle, qui gardoit l'autre porte, que il
sent-word-to Manasses of the-Isle who guarded the-other gate that he
le suist isnellement. Et chevaucha à tote sa bataille,
him should-follow swiftly And he-rode with all his battalion
encontre les fuianz, grant aleure; et li fuiant se
to-meet the fleeing great pace and the fleeing themselves
recueillirent tuit à lui. Et Manassiers de l'Isle, qui vint au
gathered all to him And Manasses of the-Isle who came at-the
plus tot que il pot à la sue gent, si se jointst à lui; et
most soon that he could with the his people so himself joined to him and
lors orent plus grant bataille; et tuit cil qui vindrent en la
then they-had more great battalion and all those who came in the
chace, qu'il porent retenir, si les mistrent en lor bataille.
chase that-they could retain so them they-put in their battalion

363 Et ceste chace si fu entre none et vespres ensinques retenue.

And this chase so was between nones and vespers thus held

Li plusor furent si esfreé que il fuioient par devant als

The most were so frightened that they fled in front-of them

trosque enz es paveillons et enz es hostiels. Et ensi cele

as-far in into-the pavilions and in into-the lodgings And thus that

chace fu recovrée con vos avez oï; et li Comain s'arestèrent,

chase was recovered as you have heard and the Cumans themselves-stopped

et li Blac et li Grieu qui chaçoient. Et hardierent à cele

and the Vlachs and the Greeks who chased And they-barried at that

bataille as ars et as sajettes; et cil de la bataile se

battalion with-the bows and with-the arrows and those of the battalion themselves

tindrent quoi, les vis devers als. Ensi furent trosque à vespre

held quiet the faces toward them Thus they-were until to evening

bas, et li Comain et li Blac se recomencierent à retraire.

low and the Cumans and the Vlachs themselves began-again to withdraw

364 Lors manda Joffrois de Vile-Hardoin, li mareschus de

Then sent-for Geoffrey of Villehardouin the marshal of

Champaigne et de Romenie, le duc de Venise en l'ost, qui

Champagne and of Romania the doge of Venice in the-host who

viels hom ere et gote ne véoit, mais mult ere sages et

old man was and a-drop not saw but very he-was wise and

preuz et vigueros; et li manda que il venist à lui en sa

worthy and vigorous and to-him sent-word that he should-come to him in his

bataille, où il se tenoit el champ; et il si fist. Et quant

battalion where he himself held on-the field and he so did And when

li mareschus le vit, si l'apele à conseil d'une part tot seul, et

the marshal him saw so him-calls to counsel on-one side all alone and

si li dist: «Sire, vos véez la mesaventure qui nos est avenue:

so to-him said Lord you see the mischance which to-us is happened

perdu avons l'empereor Baudoin et le conte Loeyes, et lo plus

lost we-have the-emperor Baldwin and the count Louis and the most

de nostre gent, et de la meillor. Or pensons del remanant
of our people and of the best Now let-us-think of-the remnant
 garir; que se Dieu n'en prent pitiez, nos sommes perdu.»

to-save for if God not-thereof takes pity we are lost

Ensi fu la fins de lor conseil: que li dux de Venise 365

Thus was the end of their counsel that the doge of Venice

s'en iroit en l'ost, et conforteroit la gent; et que

himself-thence would-go-back into the-host and would-comfort the people and that

chascuns fust armez de ses armes, et se tenist coi

each should-be armed with his arms and himself should-hold quiet

en sa heberge et en son paveillon; et Joffrois li mareschaus

in his lodging and in his pavilion and Geoffrey the marshal

remanroit en sa bataille et defors l'ost toz ordenez tant que

would-remain in his battalion and outside the-host all ordered until that

il seroit nuiz, porce que lor anemi ne les veissent esmouvoir;

it would-be night for-this that their enemies not them should-see move

et quant il seroit nuiz, si se movroient de devant la

and when it would-be night so themselves would-move from before the

vile; li dux de Venise s'en iroit devant, et Joffrois li

town the doge of Venice himself-thence would-go before and Geoffrey the

marechaus feroit l'ariere garde, et cil qui avec lui estoient.

marshal would-make the-rear guard and those who with him were

Ensique attendirent trosqu'à la nuit; et quant il fu nuiz, li dux 366

Thus-so they-waited until-to the night and when it was night the doge

de Venise se parti de l'ost, si con devisé ere, et Joffrois li

of Venice himself departed from the-host so as devised it-was and Geoffrey the

mareschaus fist l'ariere garde. Et s'en partirent le petit

marshal made the-rear guard And themselves-thence departed the little

pas, et enmenerent tote lor gent à pié et à cheval, et navrez

pace and led all their people on foot and on horse both wounded

et altres; que onques ne laisserent nelui. Et chevauchierent

and others for ever not they-left anyone And they-rode

vers une cité qui siet sor mer, que l'on appelle Rodestoc,

toward a city which sits on sea which one calls Rodosto

qui bien ere trois journées loing d'iqui. Ensi se partirent

which well was three days away from-there Thus themselves departed

d'Andrenople con vos avez oï; et ceste aventure si avint en

from-Adrianople as you have heard and this adventure so happened in

l'an de l'incarnation Jesu-Crist mil deus cens cinq anz.

the-year of the-incarnation (of-)Jesus-Christ thousand two hundred five years

367 Et cele nuit que l'oz se parti d'Andrenople, si avint

And that night that the-host itself departed from-Adrianople so happened

que une compaignie s'en parti, pour aler plus tost en

that a company itself-thence departed for to-go more soon to

Costantinoble et plus droit; et en reçurent grant blasme.

Constantinople and more straight and thereof received great blame

En cele compaignie fu un cuens de Lombardie qui avoit

In that company was a count of Lombardy who had

non li cuens Girarz, de la terre del marchis; et Huedes

name the count Gerard of the land of-the marquis and Odo

de Ham, qui sires ert d'un chastel que on apele Ham en

of Ham who lord was of-a castle that one calls Ham in

Vermendois; et Jehans de Maseroles, et bien autre, trosques

Vermandois and John of Mazeroles and well others as-far

à vint cinq chevaliers, que li livres ne raconte mie.

to twenty five knights whom the book not recounts at-all

368 Et ensi en vinrent puis la desconfiture qui ot esté le

And thus thence they-came after the defeat which had been the

joiedi à soir; si vindrent en Costantinoble le semadi à soir;

Thursday at evening so they-came into Constantinople the Saturday at evening

si i avoit cinq journées granz. Et conterent ceste novelle

so there had five days great And they-told this news

le cardonal Perron de Chappes, qui ere de par l'apostoile

(to-)the cardinal Peter of Capua who was on behalf-of the-pope

de Rome Innocent, et Cuenon de Betune qui gardoit
of Rome Innocent and (to-)Conon of Bêthune who guarded
 Costantinoble, et Milon le Braibant, et les autres bones
Constantinople and (to-)Miles the Brabançon and the other good
 genz. Et sachiez qu'il en furent mult esfreé, et cuiderent
people And know that-they thereof were very frightened and thought
 bien que li remananz fust toz perduz, que il avoient
well that the remnant were all lost which they had
 devant Andrenople laissié; que il n'en savoient nouvelle.
before Adrianople left for they not-thereof knew news

The March to Rodosto

XLII

At dawn at Pamphilon the retreating host meets Peter of Bracieux and Payen of Orléans with a hundred knights from beyond the Arm, who weep at the news that the emperor and their lord Count Louis are lost and take the rearguard. Johanitsa, finding the camp at Adrianople gone, follows but does not catch them. They rest at Chariopolis, ride through the night to Rodosto, which does not resist, and send word by sea to Constantinople that they are safe.

Or lairons de cels de Costantinoble, qui en grant dolor 369
Now we-will-leave of those of Constantinople who in great sorrow
 sont, si revenrons al duc de Venise et à Joffroi le
are so we-will-come-back to-the duke of Venice and to Geoffrey the
 mareschal, qui chevauchierent tote la nuit que il repairerent
marshal who rode all the night that they returned
 d'Andrenople trosque à l'ajornée; et lors vinrent à une cité
from-Adrianople until to the-dawn and then they-came to a city
 que on appelle Panfile. Or oiez des aventures queles eles
that one calls Pamphilon Now hear of-the chances what they

sunt, si con Diex volt: qu'en cele cité avoient la nuit geu
are so as God wished that-in that city had the night lain
 Pierres de Braieciel et Paiens d'Orliens, et totes les genz de
Peter of Bracieux and Payen of-Orléans and all the people of
 la terre le conte Loeys; et estoient bien cent chevalier
the land (of-)the count Louis and were well hundred knights
 de mult bone gent, et sept vins serjant à cheval, qui
of very good people and seven score sergeants on horse who
 venoient d'oltre le Braz, et aloient à l'ost à Andrenople.
came from-beyond the Arm and went to the-host at Adrianople

370 Et quant il virent la route venir, si corurent as armes
And when they saw the company come so they-ran to-the arms
 mult isnelement; que il cuidoiient que ce fussent li Grieu.
very swiftly for they thought that these were the Greeks
 Si s'armerent, et envoient savoir quex genz ce estoient;
So themselves-armed and sent to-know what people these were
 et cil troverent que ce estoient cil qui retornoient de la
and those found that these were those who returned from the
 desconfiture. Si retournerent à als, et lor distrent que perduz
defeat So they-returned to them and to-them said that lost
 ert li empereres Baudoins, et lor sires li cuens Loeys, de
was the emperor Baldwin and their lord the count Louis of
 cui terre et de cui païs il estoient, et de cui maisnie.
whose land and of whose country they were and of whose household

371 Plus dolorose novele ne lor peust-on conter. Là veissiez
More sorrowful news not to-them could-one tell There you-might-see
 mainte lerne plorer, et mainte palme battre de duel et
many-a tear weep and many-a palm beat from grief and
 de pitié. Et alerent encontre als tuit armé si cum il
from pity And they-went to-meet them all armed so as they
 estoient, et tant que il vinrent à Joffroi le mareschal de
were and so-far that they came to Geoffrey the marshal of

Champagne, qui l'ariere garde faisoit à mult grant mesaise.

Champagne who the-rear guard made in very great discomfort

Que Johannis, li rois de Blaquie et de Bougrie, ere venuz

For Johanitsa the king of Wallachia and of Bulgaria was come

à l'enjornée devant Andrenople à tote s'ost; et trova que

at the-dawn before Adrianople with all his-host and found that

cil s'en furent alé; et chevalcha après lor rote tant

those themselves-thence were gone and rode after their company until

qu'il fu grans jors; et quant il ne les trova, si en fu

that-it was full day and when he not them found so thereof he-was

mult dolanz; et ce fu granz joie que il nes i trova;

very sorrowful and this was great joy that he not-them there found

que perdu fussent sanz nul recovrer, se il les eust trovez.

for lost they-would-be without any recovery if he them had found

«Sire, font-il à Joffroi le mareschal, que volez que nos faciens? 372

Lord say-they to Geoffrey the marshal what you-wish that we should-do

Nos ferons quanque il vous plaira.» Et cil lor respont:

We will-do whatever it you will-please And that-one to-them answers

«Vos véez bien coment il nos est; vos iestes frois et novel, et

You see well how it to-us is you are fresh and new and

vostre cheval; si ferez l'ariere garde, et je m'en irai

your horses so you-will-make the-rear guard and I myself-thence will-go

devant, tenir nostre gent qui sont mult esfreé, qui grant mestier

before to-hold our people who are very frightened who great need

en ont.» Issi cum il le devisa, il le firent mult volentiers.

thereof have Thus as he it devised they it did very willingly

Si firent l'ariere garde mult bien et mult biel, come cil qui

So they-made the-rear guard very well and very fair as those who

bien le sorent faire; car il estoient bon chevalier et honoré.

well it knew-how to-do for they were good knights and honored

373 Joffrois li mareschais de Champaigne chevaucha devant
Geoffrey the marshal of Champagne rode before
 et les conduist; et chevaucha trosques à une cité qui
and them led and rode as-far to a city which
 Cariople ert apelée. Si vit que lor cheval estoient lassé
Chariopolis was called So he-saw that their horses were weary
 de ce que il avoient tote nuit chevauchié; et entra en la
from this that they had all night ridden and entered into the
 cité, et les fist herbergier bien endroit hore de midi. Et
city and them had lodged well about hour of noon And
 donerent lor chevaux à mengier; et il méismes mengierent
they-gave their horses to eat and they themselves ate
 ce que il porent trover, et ce fu pou.
this that they could find and this was little

374 Ensique furent tot le jor trosque à la nuit en cele cité. Et
Thus-so they-were all the day until to the night in that city And
 Johanis li rois de Blaquie les ot tote jor suiz à tote
Johaniitsa the king of Wallachia them had all day followed with all
 sa route, et se herberja bien à deus liues d'als. Et
his company and himself lodged well at two leagues from-them And
 quant il fu nuiz, cil qui estoient en la cité si s'armerent
when it was night those who were in the city so themselves-armed
 tuit et s'en issirent fors. Joffrois li mareschais fist
all and themselves-thence came-out out Geoffrey the marshal made
 l'avant-garde, et cil firent l'ariere-garde qui le jor l'avoient
the-vanguard and those made the-rearguard who the day it-had
 faite. Ensi chevauchierent tote nuit et l'endemain à grant
made Thus they-rode all night and the-next-day in great
 dote et à grant paine, tant que il vindrent à la cité
dread and with great pain until that they came to the city
 de Rodestoc, qui ere poplée de Grex, mult riche et mult
of Rodosto which was peopled with Greeks very rich and very

forz. Et cil ne s'oserent desfendre; et nos gens entrerent

strong And those not themselves-dared defend and our people entered

enz, si se herbergierent; et lors si furent assurez.

in so themselves lodged and then so they-were secure

Ensi s'eschamperent cil de l'ost d'Andrenople con vos avez 375

Thus themselves-escaped those of the-host of-Adrianople as you have

oï. Lors pristrent conseil en la cité de Rodestoc, et distrent

heard Then they-took counsel in the city of Rodosto and said

que il avoient plus grant paor de Costantinoble que d'als

that they had more great fear for Constantinople than for-them

méismes. Si pristrent bons messages, et les envoierent par

themselves So they-took good envoys and them sent by

mer et par jor et par nuit, et manderent à cels de la vile

sea both by day and by night and sent-word to those of the town

que il ne s'esmaïassent mie (que il estoient eschampé),

that they not themselves-should-dismay at-all for they were escaped

et que il repareroient à els au plus tost que il poroient.

and that they would-return to them at-the most soon that they could

Seven Thousand Pilgrims Desert

XLIII

Five Venetian ships with seven thousand men aboard, William of Béthune among them, are leaving Constantinople for home. The cardinal and Conon of Béthune beg them in tears to stay, and at Rodosto Villehardouin begs again, but they sail at dawn, Peter of Frouville stealing aboard by night, to lasting shame. Henry, hurrying from Adramyttium, leaves his twenty thousand Armenians behind, and at Cortacople he and Anseau of Courcelles each take the other for Greeks. At Rodosto Henry is made regent, and the country people kill or take all the Armenians.

- 376 En cel point que li message vindrent, estoient cinq nés chargies
In that point that the messengers came were five ships laden
de pelerins et de chevaliers et de serjanz en Constantinoble
with pilgrims and with knights and with sergeants in Constantinople
(des nés de Veniciens, mult granz et mult beles), qui voidoient
of-the ships of Venetians very great and very fine which emptied
la terre et s'en aloient en lor païs. Et avoit bien
the land and themselves-thence went into their country And there-had well
es cinq nés sept mille homes à armes; et iere Guillaume li
in-the five ships seven thousand men at arms and was William the
avoez de Betune li uns, et Baudoins d'Aubeigni, et Johans de
advocate of Béthune the one and Baldwin of-Aubigny and John of
Virsin, qui ere de la terre le conte Loeys et ses hom liges,
Virsin who was of the land (of-)the count Louis and his man liege
et bien cent autre chevalier que li livres ne raconte mie.
and well hundred other knights that the book not recounts at-all
- 377 Maistre Pierres de Chappes, qui ere cardonialx de par
Master Peter of Capua who was cardinal on behalf-of
l'apostoile de Rome Innocent, et Cuenes de Betune, qui gardoit
the-pope of Rome Innocent and Conon of Béthune who guarded
Costantinople, et Miles li Braibanz, et des autres bones genz
Constantinople and Miles the Brabançon and of-the other good people

granz parz, alerent as cinq nés; et lor prioient o plaintes
great parts went to-the five ships and them prayed with laments
 et o plors, que il aussest merci et pitié de la crestienté
and with tears that they should-have mercy and pity of the Christendom
 et de lor seignors liges, qui estoient perdu en la bataille, et
and of their lords liege who were lost in the battle and
 que il demorassent por Dieu. Il n'en vorrent oïr nule
that they should-remain for God They not-thereof wished to-hear any
 parole, ainz s'en partirent del port: si collerent lor
word but themselves-thence departed from-the port so hoisted their
 voiles et s'en alerent, si con Diex volt, si que uns venz
sails and themselves-thence went so as God wished so that a wind
 les mena el port de Rodestoc; et ce fu l'endemain que
them led into-the port of Rodosto and this was the-next-day that
 cil i furent venu qui estoient repairié de la desconfiture.
those there were come who were returned from the defeat

Autel priere con cil avoient fait de Costantinoble à 378
Such prayer as those had made of Constantinople with
 lermes et à plors, autel priere lor firent cil de Rodestoc;
tears and with weeping such prayer them made those of Rodosto
 et lor dist Joffrois li mareschaus (et cil qui avec lui
and them told Geoffrey the marshal and those who with him
 estoient) que il aussest merci et pitié de la terre, et que
were that they should-have mercy and pity of the land and that
 il remansissent; que jamais à si grant besoing ne porroient
they should-remain for ever at so great need not they-could
 seccorre nulle terre. Icil respondirent que il s'en
succor any land Those answered that they themselves-thereof
 conselleroient, et qu'il lor respondroient l'endemain. Or
would-take-counsel and that-they them would-answer the-next-day Now
 oiez l'aventure qui la nuit avint en cele vile.
bear the-adventure which the night happened in that town

- 379 Il i avoit un chevalier de la terre le conte Loeys, qui
It there had a knight of the land (of-)the count Louis who
 Pierres de Froeville avoit non, qui ere prisiés et de grant non.
Peter of Frouville had name who was esteemed and of great name
 Et s'en embla la nuit, et laissa tot son hernois et sa
And himself-thence stole the night and left all his baggage and his
 gent, et se mist en la nef Johan de Virsin, qui est en la terre
people and himself put in the ship (of-)John of Virsin who is in the land
 le conte Loeys de Blois et de Chartein. Et cil des cinq
(of-)the count Louis of Blois and of Chartres And those of-the five
 nés qui respondre devoient al maitin à Joffroi le mareschal
ships who to-answer were-to at-the morning to Geoffrey the marshal
 et al duc de Venise, si tost con il virent le jor, si collerent
and to-the doge of Venice so soon as they saw the day so hoisted
 lor voiles, et s'en alerent sanz parler à nullui. Mult
their sails and themselves-thence went without speaking to anyone Much
 en reçurent grant blasme en celui païs où il alerent et
thereof they-received great blame in that country where they went and
 en celui dont il partirent, et Pierres de Froeville plus grant
in that whence they departed and Peter of Frouville more great
 que tuit li autre. Et por ce dit hom que mult fait mal, qui
than all the others And for this says one that much does ill who
 por paor de mort fait chose qui li est reprovée à toz jorz.
for fear of death does thing which to-him is reproached at all days
- 380 Or vos lairons de cels, si dirons de Henri le frere
Now to-you we-will-leave of those so we-will-tell of Henry the brother
 l'empereor Baudoin de Costantinoble, qui avoit l'Andremite
(of-)the-emperor Baldwin of Constantinople who had the-Adramyttium
 guerpie que il avoit conquise, et iert passez à la cité
forsaken which he had conquered and was crossed to the city
 d'Avie et s'en venoit vers Andrenople por l'empereor
of-Abydos and himself-thence came toward Adrianople for the-emperor

Baudoin son frere seccoure. Et avec lui s'en estoient

Baldwin his brother to-succor And with him themselves-thence were
 passé li Hermin de la terre, qui li avoient aidie vers
crossed the Armenians of the land who him had helped against
 les Griex, bien vint mil à totes lor fames et à
the Greeks well twenty thousand with all their wives and with
 toz lor enfanz; qu'il n'osoient remanoir el païs.

all their children for-they not-dared to-remain in-the country

Et lors li vint la novele, des Grex qui estoient eschapé de 381

And then him came the news from-the Greeks who were escaped from
 la desconfiture, que ses freres l'empereres Baudoins ere perdus,
the defeat that his brother the-emperor Baldwin was lost

et li cuens Loeys, et li autre baron. Et puis revint novele
and the count Louis and the other barons And then came-again news

de cels de Rodestoc qui estoient eschapé; et li mandoient
from those of Rodosto who were escaped and him sent-word

que il se hastast plus tost de venir à als. Et porce que
that he himself should-hasten more soon to come to them And because that
 il se volt haster por plus tost venir, si laissa les Hermins,

he himself wished to-hasten for more soon to-come so he-left the Armenians
 qui estoient genz à pié, et avoient lor chars et lor fames et

who were people on foot and had their carts and their wives and
 lor anfan; et porce que il ne porent si tost venir, et que

their children and because that they not could so soon come and that
 il cuida que il venissent bien seurement et que il n'eussent

he believed that they would-come well surely and that they not-had
 garde, si se herberja à un casal qui Cortacople ert apelez.

fear so himself lodged at a village which Cortacople was called

En icel jor méismes i vint Ansials de Corceles, li niés 382

On that day same there came Anseau of Courcelles the nephew

Joffroi le mareschal, cui il avoit envoie es parties de
(of-)Geoffrey the marshal whom he had sent into-the parts of

Macré et de Traïnople et de la Baie, devers une terre qui
Makri and of Trajanopolis and of the Bay toward a land which
 li estoit otroiée à avoir; et les gens qui estoient parti de
to-him was granted to have and the people who were departed from
 Finepople, de Renier de Trit, estoient ensemble o lui. En
Philippopolis of Renier of Tritb were together with him In
 cele compaignie, avoit bien cent chevaliers de mult bone
that company there-had well hundred knights of very good
 gent, et bien cinq cens serjanz à cheval, qui tuit s'en
people and well five hundred sergeants on horse who all themselves-thence
 aloient à Andrenople por l'empereor Baudoin secore.
went to Adrianople for the-emperor Baldwin to-succor

383 Or lor vint une novele autressi cum à l'autre gent, que
Now them came a news likewise as to the-other people that
 l'emperieres ere desconfiz et sa compaignie; et tornerent
the-emperor was routed and his company and they-turned
 altressi con por venir à Rodestoc, et vindrent por herbergier
likewise as for to-come to Rodosto and came for to-lodge
 à Cortacople, un casal où Henris li freres l'empereor
at Cortacople a village where Henry the brother (of-)the-emperor
 Baudoin ere herbergiez. Et quant cil les virent venir, si
Baldwin was lodged And when those them saw come so
 corurent à lor armes; que il cuiderent que cil fuissent
they-ran to their arms for they believed that those were
 Grieu, et cil recuiderent altressi d'aus. Et aprocha tant
Greeks and those believed-in-turn likewise of-them And approached so-far
 la chose que il s'entreconurent; si virent mult volentiers
the thing that they each-other-knew so saw very gladly
 li uns l'autre, et furent plus seur, et hebergierent la nuit
the one the-other and were more safe and lodged the night
 el casal trosque à l'endemain.
in-the village until to the-next-day

Et l'andemain murent et chevauchierent droit vers Rodestoc, 384

And the-next-day they-set-out and rode straight toward Rodosto

et vinrent le soir en la vile; et troverent le duc de Venise

and came the evening into the town and found the duke of Venice

et Joffroi le mareschal, et les autres qui de la desconfiture

and Geoffrey the marshal and the others who from the defeat

erent eschapé, qui mult volentiers les virent; et i ot mainte

were escaped who very gladly them saw and there had many-a

lerme plorée de pitié de lor amis. Ha! Diex, quex damages

tear wept from pity of their friends Ah God what harm

fu que ceste assemblée de ceste force qui estoit iqui ne fu

was that this gathering of this force which was there not was

avec les autres à Andrenople, quant l'empereres Baudoins i

with the others at Adrianople when the-emperor Baldwin there

fu! quar il n'i aussent riens perdu. Mais ne plot à Dieu.

was for they not-there would-have anything lost But not pleased to God

Ensi sejournerent l'endemain et l'autre jor après, et atornerent 385

Thus they-sojourned the-next-day and the-other day after and arranged

lor afaire. Et fu receuz Henris li freres l'empereor Baudoin

their affairs And was received Henry the brother (of-)the-emperor Baldwin

en la seigneurie come baus de l'empire, en leu de son

into the lordship as regent of the-empire in place of his

frere. Et lors avint une mesaventure des Hermines qui

brother And then happened a mischance of-the Armenians who

venoient après Henri le frere l'empereor Baudoin; que les

came after Henry the brother (of-)the-emperor Baldwin for the

gens del país s'assemblerent, si desconfirent les Hermines;

people of-the country themselves-assembled so routed the Armenians

et furent pris et mort et perdu tuit.

and were taken and dead and lost all

The Death of the Doge

XLIV

Johanitsa holds almost everything outside Constantinople, and beyond the Arm, Theodore Lascaris holds all but the Espigal. The regent garrisons Selymbria, and the barons send Bishop Nivelon and others to seek help from Rome, France, and Flanders. Henry Dandolo dies and is buried in Saint Sophia. When his Cumans go home, Johanitsa marches on Boniface, who has left the siege of Nauplia for Salonika. Henry takes Tzurulum, Arcadiopolis, and Vizye, his men storm Apros while it is still bargaining, and the terrified Greeks flee into Adrianople and Demotika.

- 386 Johans li rois de Blaquie et de Bougrie fu à totes ses
John the king of Wallachia and of Bulgaria was with all his
hoz, et ot tote porprise la terre; et li païs et les citez et
hosts and had all overrun the land and the country and the cities and
li chastel se tenoient à lui; et si Commain orent coru
the castles themselves held to him and his Cumans had run
trosque devant Costantinople. Henris li bauz de l'empire, et
as-far-as before Constantinople Henry the regent of the-empire and
li dux de Venise et Joffrois li mareschaus, erent encor en
the doge of Venice and Geoffrey the marshal were still in
Rodestoc, qui ere à trois journées loing de Costantinoble. Et
Rodosto which was at three days far from Constantinople And
pristrent lor conseil; et garni li dux de Venise Rodestoc
they-took their counsel and garrisoned the doge of Venice Rodosto
de Veniciens, qu'il ere leur. Et l'endemain ordenerent lor
with Venetians for-it was theirs And the-next-day they-ordered their
batailles, et chevaucherent vers Constantinoble par lor journées.
battalions and rode toward Constantinople by their day-stages
- 387 Et quant il vindrent à Salembrie, une cité qui ere à deus
And when they came to Selymbria a city which was at two
journées de Costantinoble qui ere l'empereor Baudoin, Henri ses
days from Constantinople which was (of-)the-emperor Baldwin Henry his

freres la garni de sa gent; et chevalcherent al remanant
brother it garrisoned with his people and they-rode with-the remnant
 trosque en Constantinoble, où il furent mult volontiers veu;
as-far into Constantinople where they were very gladly seen
 que la gens del païs erent mult esfreé. Et n'ere mie de
for the people of-the country were very frightened And not-was at-all of
 mervoile; que il avoient la terre si tote perdue, que il ne
marvel for they had the land so all lost that they not
 tenoient, defors Costantinoble, fors que Rodestoc et Salembrie;
held outside Constantinople save that Rodosto and Selymbria
 et tote la terre si tenoit Johans li rois de Blaquie et de
and all the land so held John the king of Wallachia and of
 Bougrie. D'autre part le Bras de Saint-George, ne tenoient que
Bulgaria On-the-other side the Arm of Saint-George not they-held but
 le cors de l'Espigal; et tote la terre si tenoit Toldres li Asces.
the body of the-Espigal and all the land so held Theodore the Lascaris
 Lors pristrent li baron un conseil, que il envoieroient à 388
Then took the barons a counsel that they would-send to
 l'apostoile de Rome Innocent, et en France et en Flandres,
the-pope of Rome Innocent and into France and into Flanders
 et par les autres terres, por querre secors. Por ce secors
and through the other lands for to-seek succor For this succor
 fu envoiez Neveles li evesques de Soissons, et Nicholes
was sent Nivelon the bishop of Soissons and Nicholas
 de Mailli, et Johans Bliaus; et li autre remestrent en
of Mailly and John Bliaud and the others remained in
 Costantinoble à grant mesaie, com cil qui cremoient pardre
Constantinople at great distress as those who feared to-lose
 la terre. Ensi furent trosque à la Pentecoste. Dedenz cel
the land Thus they-were until to the Pentecost Within that
 sejour, avint un mult granz damages en l'ost; que Henris
sojourn happened a very great harm in the-host for Henry

Dandole prist une maladie; si fina et moru, et fu enterrez

Dandolo took a sickness so ended and died and was buried

à grant honor al mostier Sainte-Sophie.

with great honor at-the minster Saint-Sophia

389 Et quant vint la Pentecoste, Johans li rois de Blaquie et

And when came the Pentecost John the king of Wallachia and

de Bougrie ot fait mult de sa volenté en la terre; si ne

of Bulgaria had done much of his will in the land so not

pot plus ses Comainz tenir en la terre; que il ne porent

could more his Cumans hold in the land for they not could

plus souffrir l'ostoyer por l'esté, ainz reparièrent en

more endure the-campaigning for the-summer but returned into

lor païs. Et il, à tote s'ost de Bogres et de Griffons,

their country And he with all his-host of Bulgars and of Griffons

s'en ala sor le marchis vers Salenique. Et li marchis,

himself-thence went upon the marquis toward Salonika And the marquis

qui ot oï noveles de la desconfiture l'empereor Baudoin,

who had heard news of the defeat (of-)the-emperor Baldwin

guerpi le siege de Naples; si s'en ala à Salenique

forsook the siege of Nauplia so himself-thence went to Salonika

à tant con il pot avoir de gent, si la garni.

with so-many as he could have of people so it garrisoned

390 Henris li freres l'empereor Baudoin de Costantinoble, à

Henry the brother (of-)the-emperor Baldwin of Constantinople with

tant de gent con il mener pot, chevaucha sor les Griex

so-many of people as he to-lead could rode upon the Greeks

trosque à une cité que l'on apele le Churlot, qui est à

as-far to a city which one calls the Tzurulum which is at

trois journées de Costantinoble. Cele li fu rendue; et

three days from Constantinople That-one to-him was surrendered and

li jurerent li Griex la fealté, qui malvairement ere tenue

him swore the Greeks the fealty which badly was kept

à cel tens. Et chevaucha à la cité d'Archadiople, si la trova
at that time And he-rode to the city of-Arcadiopolis so it found
 vuoide; que li Grieu ne l'i oserent atendre. Et d'iqui
empty for the Greeks not him-there dared to-await And from-there
 chevaucha à la cité de Visoi, qui mult ere forz et bien
he-rode to the city of Vizye which very was strong and well
 garnie de Griex; si li fu rendue. Et d'iqui chevaucha
garrisoned with Greeks so to-him was surrendered And from-there he-rode
 à la cité de Naples, qui mult restoit bien garnie de Griex.
to the city of Apros which very was-also well garrisoned with Greeks
 Cum il les voltrent assaillir, si quisent plait qu'il se
When they them wished to-assail so they-sought bargain that-they themselves
 rendroient. Endementiers que il queroient plait d'une part,
would-surrender While that they sought bargain on-one side
 cil de l'ost entroient de l'autre part en la cité, si que
those of the-host entered on the-other side into the city so that
 Henris li balz de l'empire, et cil qui parloient del plait,
Henry the regent of the-empire and those who spoke of-the bargain
 n'en sorent mot; ainz lor en pesa mult. Et li Franc
not-thereof knew word but them thereof grieved much And the Franks
 commencent à ocire les Griex, et à gaignier les avoires
begin to kill the Greeks and to win the goods
 de la vile, et à prendre tot; si en i ot mult de morz
of the town and to take all so thereof there had many of dead
 et de pris. Et en ceste maniere fu prise Naples; et enqui
and of taken And in this manner was taken Apros and there
 sejorna l'os par trois jors. Et li Grieu furent si esfreé
sojourned the-host for three days And the Greeks were so frightened
 de ceste occision, que il vuiderent totes les citez et les
of this slaughter that they emptied all the cities and the

391

chastiaux de la terre, et fuirent tuit dedenz Andrenople
castles of the land and fled all within Adrianople
 et dedenz le Dimot, qui mult erent forz citez et bones.
and within the Demotika which very were strong cities and good

The Surrender of Serres

XLV

Johanitsa besieges Serres, where Hugh of Colemi is killed. The garrison yields for a safe-conduct sworn by twenty-five of his nobles, but after three days of courtesy he strips them, sends the poor to Hungary and the worthy to the headsman, and razes the castle. Henry besieges Adrianople behind palisades but cannot take it, and Peter of Bracieux is struck on the forehead by a mangonel stone. Harried, the host withdraws to Pamphilon for two months and raids toward Demotika.

392 En icel termine, avint que Johannis, li rois de Blaquie
In that time happened that Johanitsa the king of Wallachia
 et de Bougrie, chevaucha sor le marchis à totes ses hoz,
and of Bulgaria rode upon the marquis with all his hosts
 à une cité que on appelle la Serre. Et li marchis l'avoit
to a city which one calls the Serres And the marquis it-had
 mult bien garnie de sa gent; qu'il avoit mis dedenz Hugon
very well garrisoned with his people for-he had put within Hugh
 de Colemi, qui mult ere bons chevaliers et als hom, et
of Colemi who very was good knight and high man and
 Guillaume d'Arle qui ere ses mareschals, et grant part de
William of-Arles who was his marshal and great part of
 sa bone gent. Et Johannis li rois de Blaquie les assist;
his good people And Johanitsa the king of Wallachia them besieged
 n'i ot gaires sis quant il ot pris le borc par force.
not-there had much sat when he had taken the borough by force

Et al borc prendre, lor avint mult granz damages; que

And at-the borrough to-take them happened very great harm for

Hugues de Colemi i fu morz; si fu feruz parmi l'oïl.

Hugh of Colemi there was dead so was struck through the-eye

Et quant cil fu morz, qui fu li mialdres d'aus toz, si furent 393

And when he was dead who was the best of-them all so were

li autre mult esfreé. Si se traistrent el chastel, qui

the others very frightened So themselves drew into-the castle which

mult ere forz; et Johannis les assist, et dreça ses perrieres

very was strong and Johanitsa them besieged and raised his petrarries

et ses mangonniax. N'i sist mie longuement, quant cil

and his mangonels Not-there he-sat at-all long when those

de dedenz parlerent de plait faire; dont il furent blasmé, et

of within spoke of bargain to-make whereof they were blamed and

reprochié lor fu. Et li plais si fu tels que il rendirent

reproached to-them was And the bargain so was such that they surrendered

le chastel à Johannis; et Johannis lor fist jurer à vingt-cinq

the castle to Johanitsa and Johanitsa them had sworn by twenty-five

des plus halz homes que il avoit, que il les conduiroit

of-the most high men that he had that he them would-conduct

salvement, à toz lor chevaus et à totes lor armes et

safely with all their horses and with all their arms and

à tot lor harnois, à Salenique ou en Costantinoble ou

with all their baggage to Salonika or into Constantinople or

en Hongrie, lequel que il voldroient des trois.

into Hungary which that they would-wish of-the three

En ceste maniere fu rendue la Serre; et Johannis les fist 394

In this manner was surrendered the Serres and Johanitsa them had

issir fors, et logier lez lui as champs; et lor fist mult

come-out outside and lodged beside him in-the fields and them made very

bel semblant, et lor envoia ses presenz. Et si les tint par

fair semblance and them sent his presents And so them he-held for

trois jors, puis lor menti de quanque il lor ot convent; ainz
three days then them lied of whatever he them had covenanted but
 les fist prendre, et tolir tot lor avoir, et mener en Blaquie,
them had taken and stripped all their goods and led into Wallachia
 nuz et deschauz et à pié. Les povres et les menus qui ne
naked and unsod and on foot The poor and the small who not
 valoient gaires, fist mener en Hungrie; et les autres qui
were-worth much he-had led into Hungary and the others who
 auques valoient, fist les testes colper. Ensi mortel traïson fist
somewhat were-worth he-had the heads cut Thus mortal treason did
 li rois de Blaquie con vos oez. Ici reçut l'oz une des plus
the king of Wallachia as you hear Here received the-host one of-the most
 dolozeuses pertes que onques feïst. Et Johannis fist abatre
grievous losses that ever it-made And Johanitsa had cast-down
 le chastel et la cité, et s'en rala vers le marchis.
the castle and the city and himself-thence went-back toward the marquis

395 Henris, li bals de l'empire, à tote la soe gent chevaucha vers
Henry the regent of the-empire with all the his people rode toward
 Andrenople, si l'asist à mult grant peril; que il i avoit mult
Adrianople so it-besieged at very great peril for it there had very
 grant gent dedenz et deforz, qui les tenoient si près que il
great people within and without who them held so close that they
 ne pooient nul marchié avoir, ne forer, se pou non. Et lors si
not could any market have nor forage except little not And then so
 se closent par defors de lices et de barres; et deviserent
themselves they-close by outside with palisades and with barriers and appointed
 une partie de lor gent porce que il gardassent par defors lor
a part of their people for-this that they should-guard by outside their
 lices et lor barres; et li autre assaudroient devers la vile.
palisades and their barriers and the others would-assail toward the town

Et firent engins de maintes manieres, et eschieles et mains 396

*And they-made engines of many manners and ladders and many
autres engins; et mistrent grant paine à la vile prendre, mais ne
other engines and put great pain at the town to-take but not
pot estre; que la vile ere mult forz et mult bien garnie. Ainz
could be for the town was very strong and very well garrisoned But
lor mesavint, que de lor gent i ot bleciez assez; et uns de
them mischanced that of their people there had wounded plenty and one of
lor bons chevaliers, qui ot nom Pierres de Braieceul, fu feruz
their good knights who had name Peter of Bracieux was struck
d'une pierre de mangonel el front, et dut estre morz; mais
with-a stone of mangonel in-the forehead and ought to-be dead but
il gari par la volenté de Dieu, et en fu portez en litiere.*

he recovered by the will of God and thence was carried in litter
Et quant il virent que il ne poroient rien faire à 397

*And when they saw that they not could anything do at
la vile, si s'en parti Henris li bals de l'empire et
the town so himself-thence departed Henry the regent of the-empire and
l'oz des François. Et furent mult hardoié de la gent de
the-host of-the French And they-were much harried by the people of
la terre et des Grex; et chevauchierent par lor journées
the land and by-the Greeks and rode by their day-stages
trosque à une cité que on apele la Panphile, et se
as-far to a city which one calls the Pamphilon and themselves
herbergierent dedenz, et sejournerent par deus mois iqui. Et
lodged within and sojourned for two months there And
firent chevauchiées vers le Dimot, et en mains leus où
made forays toward the Demotika and in many places where
il gaaignoient assez proies et autres avoirs. Et tindrent
they won much booty and other goods And they-held*

l'ost en icele partie trosque à l'entrée de l'iver; et lor
the-host in that part until to the-entry of the-winter and them
 venoit marcheandise de Rodestoc et de la marine.
came merchandise from Rodosto and from the shore

The Ruin of Philippopolis

XLVI

At Salonika Boniface grieves for Baldwin and for Serres. The Paulicians of Philippopolis, seeing Renier of Trith abandoned, offer the city to Johanitsa; Renier burns their quarter and shuts himself in Stenimaka for thirteen months. Johanitsa takes Philippopolis, kills the archbishop, flays or burns its nobles, and levels it. Henry garrisons Rusion under the two Thierry and Vizye under Anseau of Cayeux, and leaves Apros to the Greek Branas. Three weeks after Christmas Johanitsa sends Cumans and Vlachs into Romania to aid Adrianople and Demotika.

398 Or lairons ici de Henri le bal de l'empire, si dirons de
Now we-will-leave here of Henry the regent of the-empire so we-will-tell of
 Johannisse le roi de Blaquie et de Bougrie, cui la Serre
Johanitsa the king of Wallachia and of Bulgaria to-whom the Serres
 fu rendue, si con vos l'avez oï retraire ariere, et qui
was surrendered so as you it-have heard related before and who
 ot ocis cels en traïson qui s'erent rendu à lui. Et ot
had killed those in treason who themselves-were surrendered to him And had
 chevauchié vers Salenique, et ot sejoiné longuement, et gasté
ridden toward Salonika and had sojourned long and wasted
 grant partie de la terre. Li marchis Bonifaces de Monferrat
great part of the land The marquis Boniface of Monferrat
 fu à Salenique mult iriez et mult dolenz de son seignor
was at Salonika very angered and very sorrowful for his lord

l'empereor Baudoin qui perduz ere, et des autres barons, et
the-emperor Baldwin who lost was and for-the other barons and
 de son chastel de la Serre qu'il ot perdu, et de ses homes.

for his castle of the Serres that-he had lost and for his men

Et quant Johannis vit qu'il n'i porroit plus faire, si retorna 399

And when Johanitsa saw that-he not-there could more do so turned

arriers vers son païs à tote sa gent. Et cil de Phinepople

back toward his country with all his people And those of Philippopolis

(qui ere Renier de Trit, cui l'empereres Baudoins l'ot

which was (of-)Renier of Trith to-whom the-emperor Baldwin it-had

donée) orent oï que l'empereres Baudoins ere perduz et mult

given had heard that the-emperor Baldwin was lost and many

des barons, et li marchis la Serre avoit perdue; et virent

of-the barons and the marquis the Serres had lost and saw

que li parent Renier de Trit, et ses fils et ses niés l'avoient

that the kinsmen (of-)Renier of Trith and his sons and his nephews him-had

guerpi, et que il iert à pou de gent; et cuiderent que

forsaken and that he was with few of people and believed that

jamais li Franc n'aussent force. Une granz partie des gens,

ever the Franks not-would-have force A great part of-the people

qui estoient Popelican, s'en alerent à Johannise, et

who were Paulicians themselves-thence went to Johanitsa and

se rendirent à lui, et li distrent: «Sire, chevauche devant

themselves surrendered to him and him said Lord ride before

Phynepople ou envoie t'ost; nos te rendrons la vile tote.»

Philippopolis or send thy-host we thee will-surrender the town all

Quant Reniers de Trit le sot qui estoit en la vile, si dota que 400

When Renier of Trith it knew who was in the town so feared that

il ne le rendissent à Johannisse. Ensique s'en issi

they — it should-surrender to Johanitsa Thus-so himself-thence went-out

à tant de gent com il ot, et s'esmut à une ajournée, et

with so-many of people as he had and himself-set-out at a dawn and

vint par un des bors de la vile où li Popelican erent
came through one of-the boroughs of the town where the Paulicians were
 à estage, qui erent rendu à Johannise; si mist le feu ou
at dwelling who were surrendered to Johannis so put the fire in-the
 borc, et en art grant part. Et s'en ala au chastel
borough and thereof burned great part And himself-thence went to-the castle
 d'Estanemac, qui ere à trois lieues d'iqui et ere garniz de
of-Stenimaka which was at three leagues from-there and was garrisoned with
 sa gent, et entra dedenz. Et i fu puis longuement enserrez,
his people and entered within And there was after long shut-in
 bien treize mois, à grant mesaise et à grant poverté; et menja
well thirteen months at great distress and at great poverty and ate
 ses chevax par destresce. Et ere nuef journées de Costantinoble
his horses by distress And was nine days from Constantinople
 loing, que il ne pooient nouvelles oïr li un des autres.
far so-that they not could news hear the one of-the others

401 Lors envola Johannis s'ost devant Phinepople; n'i sist
Then sent Johannis his-host before Philippopolis not-there it-sat
 mie longuement quant cil de la vile se rendirent à
at-all long when those of the town themselves surrendered to
 lui, et il les asseura. Et quant il les ot asseurez, si fist
him and he them assured And when he them had assured so had
 occire tot avant l'archevesque de la vile, et les halz homes
killed very first the-archbishop of the town and the high men
 fist escorchier toz viz, et tels i ot ardoir et tels i
he-had flayed all alive and such there he-had burned and such there
 ot les testes colper; et tot le remanant en fist mener
he-had the heads cut and all the remnant thence he-had led
 en chaene. Et la vile fist tote fondre et les tors et
in chain And the town he-had all collapsed and the towers and
 les murs, et les halz palais et les riches maisons ardoir
the walls and the high palaces and the rich houses burned

et fondre. Ensi fu destruite la noble citez de Phynepople,
and collapsed Thus was destroyed the noble city of Philippopolis
 qui ere des trois meillors de l'empire de Costantinoble.

which was of-the three best of the-empire of Constantinople

Or lairons de Phinepople et de Renier de Trit, qui est 402

Now we-will-leave of Philippopolis and of Renier of Trith who is
 enserrez el chastel d'Estanemac; si revenrons à Henri, le
shut-in in-the castle of-Stenimaka so we-will-come-back to Henry the

frere l'empereor Baudoin, qui a sejourné à Panphyle trosque à
brother (of-)the-emperor Baldwin who has sojourned at Pamphilon until to
 l'entrée de l'iver. Et lors prist conseil à ses homes et à ses

the-entry of the-winter And then took counsel with his men and with his
 barons; et li consels si fu telx, que il garniroit une cité que
barons and the counsel so was such that he would-garrison a city which

on apele la Rousse, qui ere en un mult plentereus leu, enmi la
one calls the Rusion which was in a very plentiful place amid the
 terre. Et de cele garnison fu chevetaines Tierris de Los qui ere

land And of that garrison was captain Thierry of Loos who was
 seneschaus, et Tyeris de Tendremonde qui ere conestables. Et
seneschal and Thierry of Termonde who was constable And

lor charja bien Henris li bals de l'empire sept vins chevaliers,
them entrusted well Henry the regent of the-empire seven score knights
 et grant part de serjanz à cheval; et comanda que il

and great part of sergeants on horse and commanded that they
 tenissent la guerre contre les Grex et maintenissent la marche.
should-bold the war against the Greeks and should-maintain the march

Et il s'en ala al remanant de sa gent trosque à la 403

And he himself-thence went with-the remnant of his people as-far to the
 cité de Visoi, et la garni; et mist chevetaine Ansel de Kaeu,
city of Vizye and it garrisoned and put captain Anseau of Cayeux

et li charja bien six vins chevaliers, et de serjanz à cheval
and him entrusted well six score knights and of sergeants on horse

grant partie. Et une autre cité, qui Archadiople ert apelée,
great part And a other city which Arcadiopolis was called
 garnirent li Venicien. Et la cité de Naples ot rendue li freres
garrisoned the Venetians And the city of Apros had rendered the brother
 l'empereor Baudoin al Vernas, qui avoit la seror al roi
(of-)the-emperor Baldwin to-the Branas who had the sister to-the king
 de France à fame, et ere uns Griens qui se tenoit à als;
of France to wife and was a Greek who himself held to them
 et nuls des Griens ne se tenoit à als que cil. Et cil
and anyone of-the Greeks not himself held to them but that-one And those
 de ces citez tindrent la guerre contre les Griex, et si firent
of these cities held the war against the Greeks and so made
 mainte chevauchie; et on en fist mainte envers als. Henris
many-a foray and one thereof made many-a-one toward them Henry
 se traist en Costantinoble al remanant de sa gent.
himself drew into Constantinople with-the remnant of his people

404 Et Johannis li rois de Blaquie et de Bougrie ne s'oblia mie,
And Johanitsa the king of Wallachia and of Bulgaria not himself-forgot at-all
 qui mult fu riches et poestéis d'avoir; ainz porchaça grant
who very was rich and powerful of-goods but gathered great
 gent de Commains et de Blas. Et quant vint à trois semaines
people of Cumans and of Vlachs And when came at three weeks
 après Noël, si les envia en la terre de Romenie, por aidier
after Christmas so them sent into the land of Romania for to-belp
 cels d'Andrenople et cels del Dimot; et quant cil furent plus
those of-Adrianople and those of-the Demotika and when those were more
 creu, si s'esbaudirent et chevauchierent plus seurement.
increased so themselves-emboldened and rode more surely

The Defeat Near Rusion

XLVII

Thierry of Termonde raids a Cuman camp before Candlemas, but on his way back he meets seven thousand Cumans and Vlachs. His four battalions retreat at a walk, pressed one upon another, and within sight of Rusion they break; of six score knights barely ten escape, and Thierry is killed with most of his captains. The survivors abandon Rusion, and Henry hears the news at the Candlemas procession. Johanitsa gathers a vast host and storms Apros, executing Bègue of Fransures and razing the city.

Tierris de Tendremonde, qui chevetaines ere et conestables, 405
Thierry of Termonde who captain was and constable
 fist une chevauchie al quart jor devant la feste sainte
made a foray at-the fourth day before the feast (of-)saint
 Marie Chandelor; et chevaucha tote nuit bien à six vins
Mary Candlemas and rode all night well with six score
 chevaliers, et la Rouse laissa garnie à pou de gent. Et
knights and the Rusion left garrisoned with few of people And
 quant vint à l'enjournée, si vint à un casal où Commain
when came at the-dawn so came to a village where Cumans
 et Blac estoient herbergié; et les sopristrent, si que cil
and Vlachs were lodged and them they-surprised so that those
 n'en sorent mot qui estoient el casal. S'en ocistrent
not-thereof knew word who were in-the village So-thereof they-killed
 assez, et gaignerent bien quarante de lor chevaus; et quant
plenty and won well forty of their horses and when
 il orent fait cel forfait, si tornerent arriere vers la Rouse.
they had done that harm so turned back toward the Rusion
 Et cele nuit méismes, li Commain et li Blac orent chevauchié 406
And that night same the Cumans and the Vlachs had ridden
 por forfaire; et furent bien sept mil. Et vindrent à la matinée
for to-harm and were well seven thousand And came at the morning

devant la Rouse, et i furent grant piece; et la vile ere
before the Rusion and there were great while and the town was
 garnie de pou de gent. Si fermerent lor portes, et monterent
garrisoned with few of people So they-shut their gates and mounted
 sor les murs; et cil s'en tornerent arriere. N'orent mie
upon the walls and those themselves-thence turned back Not-they-had at-all
 eslongie la vile plus d'une liue et demie, quant il encontrerent
distanced the town more of-a league and half when they met
 la chevauchie des François dont Tierris de Tendremonde ere
the foray of-the French whereof Thierry of Termonde was
 chevetaines. Quant li François les virent, si s'ordenerent en
captain When the French them saw so themselves-ordered in
 quatre batailles qu'il avoient. Et fu lor conseils telx que
four battalions that-they had And was their counsel such that
 il se traistroient à la Rosse tot le petit pas; et se Diex
they themselves would-draw to the Rusion all the little pace and if God
 lor donoit que il i peussent venir, il seroient à sauveté.
them granted that they there could come they would-be at safety

407

Et li Commain et li Blac et li Grieu de la terre
And the Cumans and the Vlachs and the Greeks of the land
 chevauchierent vers als; quar il avoient mult grant gent.
rode toward them for they had very great people
 Et viennent à l'riere garde; si les comencent à hardoyer
And they-come to the-rear guard so them begin to harry
 mult durement. L'riere garde faisoit la masnie Tyerri de
very hard The-rear guard made the household (of-)Thierry of
 Los, qui ere seneschaus et estoit repareiz en Costantinoble;
Loos who was seneschal and was returned into Constantinople
 et de cele gent ere chevetaines Vilains ses freres. Et li
and of that people was captain Vilain his brother And the
 Commain et li Blac et li Grieu les tindrent mult près,
Cumans and the Vlachs and the Greeks them held very close

et navrerent mult de lor chevaus. Et fu li uz et la
and wounded many of their horses And was the shout and the
 noise granz, si que par vive force et par destrece les
noise great so that by live force and by distress them
 fisent hurter sor la bataile Andriu d'Urboise et Johan
made strike upon the battalion (of-)Andrew of-Urboise and John
 de Choisi; et ensique alerent sofrant grant piece.

of Choisy and so they-went enduring great while

Et puis se resforcierent, si que il les fisent hurter sor 408

And then themselves they-redoubled so that they them made strike upon
 la bataille Tierri de Tendremonde le conestable. Et ne
the battalion (of-)Thierry of Termonde the constable And not

tarda gaire grantment après qu'il les fisent hurter sor les
delayed much greatly after that-they them made strike upon the

batailles que Charles del Fraignes faisoit. Et orent tant alé
battalions which Charles of-the Fresne made And they-had so-far gone
 sofrant, que il virent la Rousse à mains de demie lieue.

enduring that they saw the Rusion at less than half league

Et cil adès les tindrent plus près; et fu la noise granz sor
And those ever them held more close and was the noise great upon

als, et mult i ot de bleciez d'alx et de lor chevax. Et si
them and many there had of wounded of-them and of their horses And so
 com Diex volt souffrir les aventures, cil ne le porent plus

as God wished to-suffer the chances those not it could more

souffrir, ainz furent desconfit; car il furent pesament armé,
endure but were routed for they were heavily armed

et lor anemi legierement; et les commencent à occirre.

and their enemies lightly and them they-begin to kill

Halas! com dolorous jor ci ot à la crestienté; que de toz 409

Alas how grievous day here there-was to the Christendom for of all

les six vins chevaliers, n'en eschamperent mie plus de dix

the six score knights not-thereof escaped at-all more than ten

que tuit ne fussent mort ou pris. Et cil qui en eschamperent
that all not were dead or taken And those who thence escaped
 s'en vindrent fuiant à la Rousse, et se recoillirent
themselves-thence came fleeing to the Rusion and themselves gathered
 avec lor genz qui là dedenz estoient. Là fu morz Tierris
with their people who there within were There was dead Thierry
 de Tendremonde li conestables, Oris de l'Isle qui mult ere
of Termonde the constable Orry of the-Isle who very was
 bons chevaliers et proisiez, et Johans de Pompone, Andrius
good knight and esteemed and John of Pomponne Andrew
 d'Urboise, Johans de Choisi, Guis de Covlans, Charles de
of-Urboise John of Choisy Guy of Conflans Charles of
 Fraisine, Vilains li freres Tierri le seneschal. De toz
Fresne Vilain the brother (of-)Thierry the seneschal Of all
 çaus qui là furent mort ou pris ne vos puet toz les
those who there were dead or taken not you can all the
 noms raconter li livres. Une des graignors dolors et des
names recount the book One of-the greatest sorrows and of-the
 graignors domages avint à cel jor, et des graignors pitiez
greatest harms happened at that day and of-the greatest pities
 qui onques avenist à la crestienté de la terre de Romenie.
which ever happened to the Christendom of the land of Romania
 410 Li Commain et li Grieu et li Blac retournerent ariere,
The Cumans and the Greeks and the Vlachs turned back
 qui mult orent fait lor volenté en la terre, et mult
who much had done their will in the land and much
 gaignié de bons chevaux et de bons haubers. Et ceste
won of good horses and of good hauberks And this
 mesaventure si avint le jor devant la veille madame sainte
mischance so happened the day before the eve (of-)my-lady saint
 Marie Chandelor. Et li remanz qui fu eschapez de la
Mary Candlemas And the remnant which was escaped from the

desconfiture, et cil qui estoient à la Rouse, si tost cum
defeat and those who were at the Rusion so soon as
 il fu nuiz, si guerpirent la vile; et s'en alerent tote
it was night so forsook the town and themselves-thence went all
 nuit fuiant, et vindrent al maitin à la cité de Rodestoc.
night fleeing and came at-the morning to the city of Rodosto
 Iceste dolorouse novele si vint à Henri le bal de l'empire, si 411
This grievous news so came to Henry the regent of the-empire so
 com il aloit à la procession à Nostre-Damme de Blaquerne,
as he went to the procession to Our-Lady of Blacbernae
 le jor de la feste madame sainte Marie Chandelor. Sachiez
the day of the feast (of-)my-lady saint Mary Candlemas Know
 que mult furent esfreeé en Constantinoble, et cuiderent por
that much they-were frightened in Constantinoble and believed for
 voir qu'ils aussent la terre perdue. Lors prist conseil Henris
true that-they had the land lost Then took counsel Henry
 li bals de l'empire que il garniroit Salembrie, qui ere à
the regent of the-empire that he would-garrison Selymbria which was at
 deus journées de Costantinoble; et i envoya Machaire de
two days from Constantinoble and there sent Macaire of
 Sainte Manehalt atot cinquante chevaliers por garder la vile.
Sainte Menebould with fifty knights for to-guard the town
 Et lors, quant la novele vint à Johannis le roi de Blaquie 412
And then when the news came to Johanitsa the king of Wallachia
 que ce ere à sa gent avenu, si ot mult grant joie; que ce
that this was to his people happened so had very great joy for this
 ere une granz partie de la bone gent que li François aussent,
was a great part of the good people that the French had
 que il avoient morz et pris. Lors manda par tote sa
that they had killed and taken Then summoned through all his
 terre quanque il pot avoir de gent, et porçaça grant ost de
land whatever he could have of people and gathered great host of

Comains et de Griex et de Blas, et entra en Romanie. Et
Cumans and of Greeks and of Vlachs and entered into Romania And
 li plus des citez se tindrent à lui, et tuit li chastel;
the most of-the cities themselves held to him and all the castles
 et ot si grant gent que ce ne fu se merveille non.
and he-had so great people that this not was except marvel not

- 413 Quant li Venicien oïrent dire que il venoit à si grant
When the Venetians heard say that he came with so great
 gent, si guerpirent Archadiople. Et Johannisses chevaucha
people so forsook Arcadiopolis And Johanitsa rode
 à totes ses oz tant que il vint à la cité de Naples, qui
with all his hosts so-far that he came to the city of Apros which
 ere garnie de Griex et de Latins, et ere le Vernas,
was garrisoned with Greeks and with Latins and was (of-)the Branas
 qui l'enpereris (la seror le roi de France) avoit à fame;
who the-empress the sister (of-)the king of France had to wife
 et des Latins ere chevetaines Begues de Fransures, uns
and of-the Latins was captain Bègue of Fransures a
 chevaliers de la terre de Belveis. Et Johannis li rois de
knight of the land of Beauvaisis And Johanitsa the king of
 Blaque fist assaillir la cité et la prist par force.

- Wallachia had assailed the city and it took by force*
 414 Là ot si grant mortalité de gent qui furent occis, que
There had so great mortality of people who were killed that
 ce ne fu se merveille non. Et Begues de Fransures fu
this not was except marvel not And Bègue of Fransures was
 amenez devant Johannis, et il le fist occirre maintenant, et
brought before Johanitsa and he him had killed forthwith and
 toz les autres qui noient valurent des Grex et des Latins;
all the others who anything were-worth of-the Greeks and of-the Latins
 et totes les menues gens, fames et anfan, en fist mener
and all the small people women and children thence he-had led

en Blaquie en prison. Lor fist tote la cité fondre et
into Wallachia in prison Then he-had all the city collapsed and
 abatre, qui ere mult bone et mult riche, et en bon païs.
cast-down which was very good and very rich and in good country
 Ensi fu destruite la citez de Naples com vos avez oï.
Thus was destroyed the city of Apros as you have heard

The Ruin of Rodosto

XLVIII

At that news panic empties Rodosto, strong and well garrisoned: the Venetians crowd into their ships, nearly drowning one another, and the sergeants flee by land. Johanitsa takes it without a blow, carries its people to Wallachia, and razes it, then Panidos, Heraclea, Daonion, and Tzurulum, keeping no covenant with those who surrender. His Cumans raid to the gates of Constantinople and take Athyra with great slaughter, until within five days of the city only Vizye and Selymbria remain.

D'iqui après à doze lieues, séoit la citez de Rodestoc sor mer, 415
From-there after at twelve leagues sat the city of Rodosto upon sea
 qui mult ere riche et forz et granz, et garnie de Veniciens
which very was rich and strong and great and garrisoned with Venetians
 mult bien. Et avec tot ce, ere venue une rote de serjanz
very well And with all this was come a company of sergeants
 à cheval; et estoient bien dui mil, et erent venu altressi
on horse and they-were well two thousand and were come likewise
 à la cité por garnir. Quant il oïrent dire que Naples estoit
to the city for to-garrison When they heard say that Apros was
 prise par force, et que Johannis avoit fait occirre les genz qui
taken by force and that Johanitsa had had killed the people who
 estoient dedenz, si se mist uns si granz esfroiz en als que
were within so itself put a so great fright in them that

il se desconfissent par als meismes. Si com Diex sueffre
they themselves routed by them selves So as God suffers
 les mesaventures avenir as genz, li Venicien se ferirent
the mischances to-happen to-the people the Venetians themselves struck
 es vaisials, qui ainz ainz, qui mielz mielz; si que por poi que
into-the vessels who sooner sooner who better better so that for little that
 li uns ne néoit l'autre. Et li serjant à cheval, qui estoient de
the one — drowned the-other And the sergeants on horse who were of
 France et de Flandre et des autres terres, s'enfuioient par terre.
France and of Flanders and of-the other lands themselves-fled by land

416 Or oiez quels mesaventure ce fu, qui ne lor ere mestiers;
Now hear what mischance this was which not to-them was need
 quar la citez ere si forz et si close de bons murs et de
for the city was so strong and so closed with good walls and with
 bones tors, que il ne trovassent jà qui les assaillist, ne
good towers that they not would-have-found ever who them should-assail nor
 Johannis ne tornast jà cele part. Et quant Johannis
Johanitsa not would-have-turned ever that way And when Johanitsa
 oï dire que il s'en estoient fui, qui ere bien à
heard say that they themselves-thence were fled who was well at
 demie journée loing de qui, chevaucha cele part. Li Grieu
half day far from there rode that way The Greeks
 qui estoient en la cité remés se rendirent à lui, et il
who were in the city remained themselves surrendered to him and he
 maintenant les fist prendre, et petiz et granz, fors cels qui
forthwith them had taken and small and great save those who
 en eschaperent, et les fist mener en Blaquie; et fist la
thence escaped and them had led into Wallachia and had the
 cité fondre et abatre. Ha! cum ce fu granz damages; car ce
city collapsed and cast-down Ah how this was great harm for this
 ere une des meillors citez de Romenie, et des mielz séanz.
was one of-the best cities of Romania and of-the best situated

Après d'iqui, en avoit une altre qui Panedor ert appelée, 417

After from-there thereof there-had an other which Panidos was called
 qui se rendi à lui; et il la fist abatre et fondre, et les genz
which itself surrendered to him and he it had cast-down and collapsed and the people
 fist mener en Blaquie ausi com de celi. Et après chevaucha à
had led into Wallachia also as of that-one And after rode to
 la cité d'Arecloie, qui séoit sor un bon port de mer, et ere as
the city of-Heraclea which sat upon a good port of sea and was to-the
 Veniciens, qui l'avoient feblement garnie; si l'assailli et la prist
Venetians who it-had feebly garrisoned so it-assailed and it took
 par force. Enqui rot grant occision de gent; et le remanant
by force There had-again great slaughter of people and the remnant
 le fist mener en Blaquie, et fist fondre la cité comme les autres.
it had led into Wallachia and had collapsed the city like the others

Et d'iqui chevaucha à la cité de Daïn, qui ere mult forz et 418

And from-there rode to the city of Daonion which was very strong and
 bele; et la genz ne l'oserent tenir; si li fu rendue, et il la
fair and the people not it-dared hold so to-him was surrendered and he it
 fist fondre et abatre. Après chevaucha à la cité del Churlot,
had collapsed and cast-down After rode to the city of-the Tzurulum
 qui s'ere à lui rendue; et il la fist fondre et abatre, et
which itself-was to him surrendered and he it had collapsed and cast-down and
 mener les genz en prison. Et ensi come aucuns chastiaus
led the people into prison And thus as any castle
 ou aucune citez se rendoit à lui, et il les avoit asseurez,
or any city itself surrendered to him and he them had assured
 il les fesoit abatre, et mener les homes et les fames en
he them had cast-down and led the men and the women into
 prison; et nulle convenance que il lor fist ne lor tenoit.
prison and any covenant that he them made not them kept

419 Lors corrurent li Commain et li Blac devant les portes de
Then ran the Cumans and the Vlachs before the gates of
 Costantinoble, où Henris li bals de l'empire ere à tant de
Constantinople where Henry the regent of the-empire was with so-many of
 gent com il avoir pooit, mult dolenz et iriez por ce que il
people as he to-have could very sorrowful and angered for this that he
 ne pooit avoir tant de gent qu'il peust sa terre desfendre. Et
not could have so-many of people that-he could his land defend And
 ensi pristrent li Commain les proies de la terre, et homes et
thus took the Cumans the booty of the land and men and
 fames et anfan; et abatirent les citez et les chastiax, et fisent
women and children and cast-down the cities and the castles and made
 si grant essil que onques nus hom n'oï parler de si grant.
so great waste that ever any man not-heard speak of so great

420 Lors vindrent à une cité à doze liues de Costantinoble,
Then they-came to a city at twelve leagues from Constantinople
 qui Nature ert apelée; et Henris li freres l'empereor l'avoit
which Athyra was called and Henry the brother (of-)the-emperor it-had
 donnée à Payen d'Orliens. En celle cité avoit mult grant
given to Payen of-Orléans In that city there-had very great
 pueple de gens, car cil del païs i estoient tuit afui;
people of folk for those of-the country there were all fled
 et il l'assaillirent, si la pristrent par force. Là i ot si
and they it-assailed so it took by force There there had so
 grant occision de gent, que il n'avoit eu si grant en nule
great slaughter of people that it not-had had so great in any
 vile où il eussent esté. Et sachiez que tuit li chastel et
town where they had been And know that all the castles and
 totes les cités qui s'erent rendu à Johannis, et cui
all the cities which themselves-were surrendered to Jobanitsa and whom

il avoit asseurez, erent tuit fondu et destruit, et menées

he had assured were all collapsed and destroyed and led

les gens en Blaquie, en tel maniere com vos avez oï.

the people into Wallachia in such manner as you have heard

Sachiez que dedenz cinc journées de Costantinoble ne remest 421

Know that within five days of Constantinople not remained

nule riens à essillier, fors solement la cité de Visoi et

any thing to lay-waste save only the city of Vizye and

cele de Salembrie, qui estoient garnies de François. Et

that of Selymbria which were garrisoned with French And

en cele de Visoi ere Ansiaus de Kaeu, bien atot six vins

in that of Vizye was Anseau of Cayeux well with six score

chevaliers; et en cele de Salembrie ere Machaires de Sainte

knights and in that of Selymbria was Macaire of Sainte

Manehalt atot cinquante; et Henris li freres l'empereor

Menebould with fifty and Henry the brother (of-)the-emperor

Baudoin ere remés en Costantinoble al remanant. Et

Baldwin was remained in Constantinople with-the remnant And

sachiez que mult erent al desoz; que defors le cors de

know that much they-were at-the bottom for outside the body of

Costantinoble n'avoient retenu que ces deus citez.

Constantinople not-they-had retained but these two cities

The Relief of Demotika

XLIX

The Greeks with Johanitsa, seeing him raze every town, fear for Adrianople and Demotika and offer through Branas to make peace with the Franks, and the barons grant both cities to Branas and his wife, the French king's sister, under the emperor. After Easter Johanitsa besieges Demotika with sixteen petraries. Henry marches with four hundred knights against forty thousand, and after confession on Saint John's Day they ride out in eight battalions, not trusting their new Greek allies.

422 Quant ce virent li Grieu qui erent en l'ost avec Johannis
When this saw the Greeks who were in the-host with Johanitsa
(qui s'erent à lui rendu et revellé contre les Frans; et il
who themselves-were to him surrendered and rebelled against the Franks and he
lor abatoit lor chastiaus et lor citez, et nul convent ne lor
them cast-down their castles and their cities and any covenant not them
tenoit), si se tindrent à morz et à traïs. Et parlerent
kept so themselves held for dead and for betrayed And spoke
ensemble, et distrent que aussi feroit-il d'Andrenople et del
together and said that also would-do-be of-Adrianople and of-the
Dimot quant il reparieroit; et se il ces deus abatoit, dont
Demotika when he would-return and if he these two cast-down then
estoit Romenie perdue à tozjorz. Et pristrent lor messages
was Romania lost for always And took their messengers
privèement, si les envoierent en Costantinoble al Vernas.
privately so them sent into Constantinople to-the Branas

423 Et li prioient que il criast merci à Henri le frere
And him they-prayed that he should-cry mercy to Henry the brother
l'empereor Baudoin et as Veniciens, que il feissent pais
(of-)the-emperor Baldwin and to-the Venetians that they should-make peace
à als, et que il li donassent Andrenople et le Dimot;
with them and that they him should-give Adrianople and the Demotika

et li Grieu se tornerioient tuit à lui, et ensi porroient
and the Greeks themselves would-turn all to him and thus could
 bien estre li Grieu et li Franc ensemble. Consels en fu
well be the Greeks and the Franks together Counsel thereof was
 pris où i ot paroles de maintes manieres; mais la fins del
taken where there had words of many manners but the end of-the
 conseil fu telx que al Vernas et à l'enpereris sa fame, qui
counsel was such that to-the Branas and to the-empress his wife who
 ere suer le roi Phelippe de France, fu otroïe Andrenople
was sister (of-)the king Philip of France was granted Adrianople
 et li Dimos, o totes lor appartenances, et il en feroit
and the Demotika with all their appurtenances and he thereof would-do
 le servise à l'empereor et à l'empire. Ensi fu la convenance
the service to the-emperor and to the-empire Thus was the covenant
 faite et assovie, et la pais faite des Grex et des Frans.
made and accomplished and the peace made of-the Greeks and of-the Franks
 Johanis li rois de Blaquie et de Bougrie, qui ot sejozné 424
Johanitsa the king of Wallachia and of Bulgaria who had sojourned
 longuement en Romenie, et lou país gasté trestote la
long in Romania and the country wasted all the
 quaresme et après la Pasque grant piece, si s'en retraist
Lent and after the Easter great while so himself-thence drew
 ariers vers Andrenople et vers le Dimot, et ot en pensé
back toward Adrianople and toward the Demotika and had in thought
 que il en feroit tot autretel com il avoit fait des autres.
that he thereof would-do all the-same as he had done of-the others
 Et quant li Grieu virent ce, qui estoient avec lui, qu'il
And when the Greeks saw this who were with him that-be
 torneroit vers Andrenople, si se comencierent à embler
would-turn toward Adrianople so themselves began to steal-away
 de lui, et par nuit et par jor, vint, trente, quarante, cent.
from him and by night and by day twenty thirty forty hundred

- 425 Et quant il vint là, si lor requist que il le laissassent
And when he came there so them required that they him should-let
 alsì entrer dedenz, cum il avoient fait dedenz les autres. Et
also enter within as they had done within the others And
 il li distrent que il ne feroient, et distrent: «Sire, quant
they him said that they not would-do and said Lord when
 nos nos rendimes à toi, et nos nos revelames contre les
we ourselves surrendered to thee and we ourselves rebelled against the
 Frans, tu nos juras que tu nos garderoies en bone foi et
Franks thou us swore that thou us wouldst-guard in good faith and
 salveroies. Tu ne l'as pas fait, ains as destruite Romenie;
wouldst-save Thou not it-hast at-all done but hast destroyed Romania
 et alsì savons nos bien que tu nos feroies alsì com tu as
and also know we well that thou us wouldst-do also as thou hast
 fait des autres.» Et quant Johannis oït ce, si asist le Dimot,
done of-the others And when Johanitsa heard this so besieged the Demotika
 et dreça entor seize perieres granz; et comença engins à
and raised around sixteen petraries great and began engines to
 faire de mainte maniere, et à gaster tot le país entor.
make of many-a manner and to waste all the country around
- 426 Lors pristrent cil d'Andrenople et cil del Dimot lor
Then took those of-Adrianople and those of-the Demotika their
 messages; si les envoierent en Costantinoble à Henri, qui ere
messengers so them sent into Constantinople to Henry who was
 bals de l'empire, et al Vernas, que il seccorrussent por
regent of the-empire and to-the Branas that they should-succor for
 Dieu le Dimot qui ert assis. Et quant cil de Costantinoble
God the Demotika which was besieged And when those of Constantinople
 oïrent la novele, si pristrent conseil del Dimot secoure. Mult
heard the news so took counsel of-the Demotika to-succor Many
 i ot de cels qui n'oserent mie loer que on isist de
there had of those who not-dared at-all to-advise that one should-go-out from

Costantinople, ne que on si pou que on avoit de la crestienté

Constantinople nor that one so little as one had of the Christendom
 meist en aventure. Totes voies fur lor consels telx que
should-put in hazard All the-same was their counsel such that
 il istroient fors, et que il iroient trosque à Salembrie.

they would-go-out outside and that they would-go as-far to Selymbria

Li cardonaus qui ere de par l'apostoile de Rome, en

427

The cardinal who was on behalf-of the-pope of Rome thereof
 preescha et en fist pardon à toz cels qui iroient et
preached and thereof made pardon to all those who would-go and
 qui morroient en la bataille. Lors s'en issi Henris

who would-die in the battle Then himself-thence went-out Henry

de Costantinoble à tant de gent cum il avoir pot, et

from Constantinople with so-many of people as he to-have could and

chevaucha trosque à la cité de Salembrie; et enqui fu

rode as-far to the city of Selymbria and there was

logiez devant la vile bien par huit jorz. Et de jor en

lodged before the town well for eight days And from day to

jor li venoient message d'Andrenople, et li mandoient

day him came messengers from-Adrianople and him sent-word

que aust merci d'als, et que il les secorust; que se

that he-should-have mercy of-them and that he them should-succor for if

il nes secoroit il estoient perdu enfin.

he not-them succored they were lost finally

Lors prist conseil Henris à ses barons, et li consels si fu

428

Then took counsel Henry with his barons and the counsel so was

telx que il alassent à la cité de Visoi, qui mult ere bone et

such that they should-go to the city of Vizye which very was good and

forz. Ensi cum il dissent si le fissent; et vindrent à la cité

strong Thus as they said so it did and came to the city

de Visoi, si se logierent devant la vile le jor de la veille

of Vizye so themselves lodged before the town the day of the eve

de la feste monseignor saint Johan Baptiste en juing. Et le
of the feast (of-)my-lord saint John Baptist in June And the
 jor cum il furent logié, vindrent li message d'Andrenople, et
day as they were lodged came the messengers from-Adrianople and
 distrent à Henri le frere l'empereor Baudoin: «Sire, sache que
said to Henry the brother (of-)the-emperor Baldwin Lord know that
 se tu ne secors la cité del Dimot, que ele ne se puet tenir
if thou not succorest the city (of-)the Demotika that it not itself can hold
 plus de huit jors; car les perieres Johannis ont abattu le mur
more than eight days for the petreries (of-)Johanitsa have cast-down the wall
 en quatre leus, et ont esté ses gens deus foiz sor les murs.»
in four places and have been his people two times upon the walls

429 Lors demanda conseil que il feroit. Assez i ot parlé avant
Then asked counsel what he would-do Much there had spoken forward
 et ariere, mais la fins del conseil si fu tels que il distrent:
and back but the end of-the counsel so was such that they said
 «Seignor, nos somesjà tant venu avant, que nos somes
Lords we are already so-far come forward that we are
 honi se nos ne secorons le Dimot. Mais soit chascuns confès
shamed if we not succor the Demotika But let-be each confessed
 et commeniez, et ordenons noz batailles.» Et aesmerent que
and communicated and let-us-order our battalions And they-estimated that
 il avoient bien quatre cenx chevaliers, et que il n'en
they had well four hundred knights and that they not-thereof
 avoient mie plus; et manderent les messages qui erent venu
had at-all more and summoned the messengers who were come
 d'Andrenople, et demanderent le convine, combien Johanis avoit
from-Adrianople and asked the state how-much Johanitsa had
 de gent. Et il respondirent que il avoit bien quarante mil
of people And they answered that he had well forty thousand
 homes à armes, sanz cels a pié dont il ne savoient le conte.
men at arms without those on foot whereof they not knew the count

Ha! Diex, cum perillouse bataille de si pou de gent rencontre 430
Ab God how perilous battle of so few of people against
 tant. Al matin, le jor de la feste monseignor saint Johan
so-many At-the morning the day of the feast (of-)my-lord saint John
 Baptiste furent tuit confès et commenié, et l'endemain si
Baptist were all confessed and communicated and the-next-day so
 murent. L'avangarde si fu commandée Joffroi le mareschal de
set-out The-vanguard so was commanded (to-)Geoffrey the marshal of
 Romenie et de Champaigne, et Machaires de Sainte-Manehalt
Romania and of Champagne and Macaire of Sainte-Menebould
 fu avec. La seconde bataille fist Coenes de Betune et Miles
was with The second battalion made Conon of Béthune and Miles
 li Brabanç; la tierce, Paiens d'Orliens et Pierres de Braieciel;
the Brabançon the third Payen of-Orléans and Peter of Bracieux
 la quarte, Ansials de Kaeu; la quinte, Baudoins de Belveoir;
the fourth Anseau of Cayeux the fifth Baldwin of Beauvoir
 la siste, Hues de Belmés; la septisme, Henris li freres
the sixth Hugh of Beaumetz the seventh Henry the brother
 l'empereor Baudoin; l'uitisme, Gautiers de Escornai et li
(of-)the-emperor Baldwin the-eighth Walter of Escornay and the
 Flamenc. Tyerris de Los, qui ere senechaus, fist l'ariere garde.
Flemings Thierry of Loos who was seneschal made the-rear guard
 Lors chevauchierent tot ordenéement par trois jors; ne onques 431
Then they-rode all in-order for three days nor ever
 plus perillousement genz n'alèrent querre bataille. Car il avoient
more perilously people not-went to-seek battle For they had
 deus perils: de ce que il estoient pou, et cil estoient assez
two perils of this that they were few and those were many
 à cui il aloient combattre; d'autre part, il ne créoient pas
with whom they went to-fight on-the-other side they not believed at-all
 les Griex, à cui il avoient pais faite, que il lor dussent
the Greeks with whom they had peace made that they them should

aidier de cuer. Ainz avoient paor que quant venroit au
help from heart But had fear that when it-would-come to-the
 besoing, que il ne se tornassent devers Johanis, qui avoit
need that they — themselves should-turn toward Johanitsa who had
 le Dimot si aprochié de prendre, com vos avez oï ariere.
the Demotika so approached of to-take as you have heard before

Renier of Trith Rescued

L

Johanitsa burns his engines and retreats, which all hold a miracle, and Adrianople greets Henry in procession. The Franks follow Johanitsa for five days, and fifty knights under Baldwin of Beauvoir leave after a quarrel with Henry. At Moniac Henry stays with most of the host while a company rides three perilous days to relieve Renier of Trith at Stenimaka, and Renier at first takes them for Greeks. He tells them that Baldwin has died in Johanitsa's prison, and they bring him back to Henry at Moniac.

432 Quant Johannis oï que li Franc venoient, si nes ossa
When Johanitsa heard that the Franks came so not-them dared
 attendre; ainz arst ses engins, et se desloja. Et ensi se
to-await but burned his engines and himself dislodged And thus himself
 parti del Dimot; et sachiez que toz li monz le tint à
departed from-the Demotika and know that all the world it held for
 grant miracle. Et Henris li bauz de l'empire vint al quart jor
great miracle And Henry the regent of the-empire came at-the fourth day
 devant Andrenople, et se loja sor les plus bels prez del
before Adrianople and himself lodged upon the most fair meadows of-the
 monde, sor la riviere d'Andrenople. Quant cil d'Andrenople
world upon the river of-Adrianople When those of-Adrianople
 les virent venir, si issirent fors à totes lor croiz et à la
them saw come so went-out outside with all their crosses and with the

procession, et fissent la greignor joie qui onques fust veue.

procession and made the greatest joy which ever was seen

Et il le durent bien faire, que il n'estoient mie bien à aise.

And they it ought well to-do for they not-were at-all well at ease

Et lors vint la novele en l'ost des Frans que Johannis 433

And then came the news into the-host of-the Franks that Johanitsa

ere logiez à un chastel qui a nom Rodestuic. Et al

was lodged at a castle which has name Rodestuic And at-the

matin mut l'oz des Frans, et chevaucha vers cele part

morning set-out the-host of-the Franks and rode toward that way

por la bataille querre; et Johanis se desloja, si chevaucha

for the battle to-seek and Johanitsa himself dislodged so rode

arriers vers son païs. Ensi le suirent par cinc journées, et

back toward his country Thus him they-followed for five days and

il adès s'en ala devant als. Lors se herbergierent

he ever himself-thence went before them Then themselves lodged

al cinquisme jor sor un bel leu, à un chastel que on

at-the fifth day upon a fair place at a castle which one

apele le Fraim; enqui sejournerent par trois jors.

calls the Fraim there they-sojourned for three days

Et lors s'en parti une compaignie de la bone gent de l'ost, 434

And then itself-thence departed a company of the good people of the-host

par descorde qu'il eurent à Henri le frere de l'empereor

by discord that-they had with Henry the brother of the-emperor

Baudoin. De cele compaignie fu chevetaines Baudoins de

Baldwin Of that company was captain Baldwin of

Belveoir; et Hues de Belmés fu avec lui, et Guillaumes

Beauvoir and Hugh of Beaumetz was with him and William

de Gomeignies, et Drués de Belraim. Et en alerent bien

of Gommeignies and Dreux of Beaurain And thence went well

ensemble en cele route cinquante chevalier; et cuiderent que
together in that company fifty knights and believed that
 li remanz n'osast remanoir el païs entre lor anemis.

the remnant not-would-dare to-remain in-the country among their enemies

435 Lors pristrent conseil Henris li baus de l'empire, et li
Then took counsel Henry the regent of the-empire and the
 baron qui avec lui estoient; et fu telx lor consels que il
barons who with him were and was such their counsel that they
 chevalcheroient avant. Si chevauchierent par deus jors, et
would-ride forward So they-rode for two days and
 se herbergierent en une mult bele vallée, près d'un chastel

themselves lodged in a very fair valley near of-a castle

que on apele Moniac. Et cil chastiaus lor fu renduz, et
which one calls Moniac And that castle to-them was surrendered and

i sejournerent bien par cinc jors, et distrent que il iroient
there they-sojourned well for five days and said that they would-go

Renier de Trit secore, qui ere dedenz l'Estanemac assis, et
Renier of Trith to-succor who was within the-Stenimaka besieged and

i avoit esté bien treize mois enserrez dedenz. Ensi remest
there had been well thirteen months shut-in within Thus remained

Henris li baus de l'empire en l'ost, et granz partie de sa
Henry the regent of the-empire in the-host and great part of his
 gent; li remanz ala secore Renier de Trit à l'Estanemac.

people the remnant went to-succor Renier of Trith at the-Stenimaka

436 Et sachiez que mult alerent perilleusement cil qui i alerent,

And know that very went perilously those who there went

que on a pou veu de si perillouse rescousse; et chevauchierent
for one has little seen of so perilous rescue and they-rode

trois jors parmi la terre à lor anemis. En cele rescosse ala
three days through the land of their enemies In that rescue went

Coenes de Betune, et Joffrois de Vile-Hardoin li mareschus de
Conon of Bétune and Geoffrey of Villebardouin the marshal of

Romenie et de Champaigne, et Machaires de Sainte-Manehalt,

Romania and of Champagne and Macaire of Sainte-Menebould

et Miles li Braibanz, et Pierres de Braiecuel, et Païens

and Miles the Brabançon and Peter of Bracieux and Payen

d'Orliens, et Ansials de Kaeu, et Tyerris de Los, et Guillaumes

of-Orléans and Anseau of Cayeux and Thierry of Loos and William

del Perçoi, et une bataille des Veniciens, dont Andrius Valeres

of-the Perchoy and a battalion of-the Venetians whereof Andrew Valaresso

ere chevetaines. Et ensi chevauchierent trosque au chastel

was captain And thus they-rode as-far to-the castle

d'Estanemac, et aprochierent tant que il virent l'Estanemac.

of-Stenimaka and approached so-far that they saw the-Stenimaka

Reniers de Trit ere as bailles des murs, et choisi

437

Renier of Trith was at-the outworks of-the walls and spied

l'avangarde que Joffrois li mareschaus faisoit, et les autres

the-vanguard which Geoffrey the marshal made and the other

batailles qui venoient après mult ordenéement; et lors ne

battalions which came after very in-order and then not

sot quex genz ce estoient. Et ce ne fu mie mervoile se il

knew what people these were And this not was at-all marvel if he

dota, que grant tens avoit que il n'avoit oï noveles d'als;

feared for great time there-was that he not-had heard news of-them

et cuida que ce fussent li Grieu qui les venissent asseoir.

and believed that these were the Greeks who them should-come to-besiege

Joffrois li mareschaus de Romenie et de Champaigne prist

Geoffrey the marshal of Romania and of Champagne took

Turcoples et arbalestiers à cheval, si les envoia avant por

Turcoples and crossbowmen on horse so them sent forward for

savoir le convine del chastel; que il ne savoient se il

to-know the state of-the castle for they not knew if they

estoient mort ou vif, que grant tens avoit que il n'en

were dead or alive for great time there-was that they not-thereof

avoient oï noveles. Et quant cil vindrent devant le chastel,
had heard news And when those came before the castle

Reniers de Trit et sa mesnie les conurent: bien le poez
Renier of Trith and his household them knew well it you-can
 savoir que il orent grant joie. Lors s'en issirent et
know that they had great joy Then themselves-thence went-out and
 alerent contre lor amis, si firent grant joie li un as autres.
went toward their friends so made great joy the one to-the others

439 Et lors se herbergierent li baron en une mult bone vile
And then themselves lodged the barons in a very good town

qui estoit al pié del chastel, et qui tenoit adès assiegé
which was at-the foot of-the castle and which held ever besieged
 le chastel. Lors distrent li baron que il avoient maintes
the castle Then said the barons that they had many
 foiz oï dire que l'empereres Baudoins ere morz en la prison
times heard say that the-emperor Baldwin was dead in the prison
 Johannis, mais il nel créoient mie; et Reniers de Trit dist
(of-)Johaniusa but they not-it believed at-all and Renier of Trith said
 que por voir ere morz, et il le crurent. Mult i ot
that for true he-was dead and they it believed Many there had
 de cels qui en furent dolent; se il le peussent amender!
of those who thereof were sorrowful if they it could amend

440 Et ensi jurent la nuit en la vile; et al maitin s'en
And thus they-lay the night in the town and at-the morning themselves-thence
 partirent, et guerpirent l'Estanemac. Et chevauchierent par
departed and forsook the-Stenimaka And they-rode for
 deus jorz; et al tierz jor vindrent à l'ost où Henris,
two days and at-the third day came to the-host where Henry
 li freres l'empeor, les atendoit soz le chastel de Moniac,
the brother (of-)the-emperor them awaited under the castle of Moniac
 qui siet sor le flum d'Arte, où il estoit herbergiez. Mult
which sits upon the river of-Arda where he was lodged Very

fu granz joie à cels de l'ost de Renier de Trit qui ere
was great joy to those of the-host of Renier of Trith who was
 rescous de prison, et à bien fu atorné à cels qui l'en
rescued from prison and to good was turned to those who him-thence
 amenerent; car il i alerent mult perilleusement.
brought for they there went very perilously

Henry Crowned Emperor

LI

Leaving Branas with forty knights, the barons return to Constantinople and crown Henry emperor in Saint Sophia in August 1206. Johanitsa razes Demotika, which Branas had left unrepaired. Henry marches out, and Johanitsa withdraws with his captives; the Franks follow him to Beroe, abandoned by its people and full of grain, raid cattle from the country around, and go on to Blisme. Eustace and Macaire free twenty thousand captives with three thousand carts, and Henry sends them home and divides the booty, but finds Demotika past refortifying for now.

Lors pristrent conseil li baron que il iroient en Costantinoble, 441
Then took counsel the barons that they would-go into Constantinople
 et que il coroneroient Henri le frere l'empereor Baudoin;
and that they would-crown Henry the brother (of-)the-emperor Baldwin
 et laisserent ou païs le Vernas à toz les Grez de la terre,
and left in-the country the Branas with all the Greeks of the land
 et atot quarante chevaliers que Henris li bals de l'empire li
and with forty knights that Henry the regent of the-empire him
 lassa. Et ensi s'en ala Henris li baus de l'empire, et
left And thus himself-thence went Henry the regent of the-empire and
 li autre baron, en Constantinoble; et chevauchierent par lor
the other barons into Constantinople and rode by their
 journées tant que il vindrent en Costantinoble, où il furent
day-stages so-far that they came into Constantinople where they were

volentiers veu. Lors coronerent à empereor Henri, lo frere
gladly seen Then they-crowned as emperor Henry the brother
 l'empereor Baudoin, le diemenche après la feste madamme
(of-)the-emperor Baldwin the Sunday after the feast (of-)my-lady
 sainte Marie en aost, à grant joie et à grant honor, à
saint Mary in August with great joy and with great honor at
 l'iglise Sainte Sophie; et ce fu en l'an de l'incarnation
the-church Saint Sophia and this was in the-year of the-incarnation
 Nostre Seignor Jesu-Crist mil deus cens anz et six.

(of-)Our Lord Jesus-Christ thousand two hundred years and six

442

Et com li empereres fu coronez en Constantinoble, si
And as the emperor was crowned in Constantinople so
 com vos avez oï, et li Vernas fu remés en la terre
as you have heard and the Branas was remained in the land
 d'Andrenople et del Dimot, Johannis rois de Blaquie et
of-Adrianople and of-the Demotika Jobanitsa king of Wallachia and
 de Bougrie, quant il le sot, si amassa de gent quant que
of Bulgaria when he it knew so amassed of people as-much as
 il pot. Et li Vernas n'ot mie refermé del Dimot ce
he could And the Branas not-had at-all refortified of-the Demotika this
 que Johanis en ot abatu à ses perieres et à ses
that Jobanitsa thereof had cast-down with his petreries and with his
 mangonials, et l'ot povrement garni. Et Johannis chevalcha
mangonels and it-had poorly garrisoned And Jobanitsa rode
 al Dimot, si lo prist et l'abati, et fonda les murs
to-the Demotika so it took and it-cast-down and collapsed the walls
 trosque en terre; et cort par tot le país, et prent homes
as-far to earth and runs through all the country and takes men
 et fames, et anfanx et proies; et fist grant destruiement.
and women and children and booty and made great destruction

Lors manderent cil d'Andrenople l'empereor Henri que il
Then sent-word those of-Adrianople (to-)the-emperor Henry that he
 les secorust, que li Dimos ere perduz en tel maniere.

them should-succor for the Demotika was lost in such manner

Lors semoust l'emperere Henris quanque il pot avoir de gent, 443

Then summoned the-emperor Henry whatever he could have of people
 et issi de Costantinoble, et chevalcha vers Andrenople par

and went-out from Constantinople and rode toward Adrianople by

ses journées à toutes ses batailles ordenées. Et Johannis li rois

his day-stages with all his battalions ordered And Johanitsa the king

de Blaquie qui ere en la terre, cum il oï que il venoit, si se

of Wallachia who was in the land when he heard that he came so himself

traist arieres vers la soe terre. Et l'empereres Henris chevalcha

drew back toward the his land And the-emperor Henry rode

tant que il vint à Andrenople, et se loja defors en la prairie.

so-far that he came to Adrianople and himself lodged outside in the meadow

Et lors vinrent li Grieu del païs, si li distrent que Johannis, 444

And then came the Greeks of-the country so him said that Johanitsa

li rois de Blaquie, enmenoit les homes et les femes et les

the king of Wallachia led-away the men and the women and the

proies, et avoit le Dimot destruit et tot le païs entor, et

booty and had the Demotika destroyed and all the country around and

que il ere encore à une journée d'iqui. Et li consels l'empereor

that he was still at a day from-there And the counsel (of-)the-emperor

fu telx que il s'iroit à lui combatre, se il l'atendoit,

was such that he himself-would-go with him to-fight if he him-awaited

por secoure les chaitis et les chaitives que il enmenoit. Et

for to-succor the captive-men and the captive-women whom he led-away And

chevaucha après lui (et cil s'en ala devant adès), et ensi le

rode after him and he himself-thence went before ever and thus him

sui par quatre jorz. Lors vint à une cité que on apeloit Veroi.

followed for four days Then came to a city which one called Beroe

- 445 Cum cil de la cité virent l'ost de l'empeor Henri venir,
When those of the city saw the-host of the-emperor Henry come
 si s'enfuirent es montagnes et guerpirent la cité. Et
so themselves-fled into-the mountains and forsook the city And
 l'empereres vint à tote s'ost, et se loja devant la vile, et
the-emperor came with all his-host and himself lodged before the town and
 la trova garnie de blez et de viandes et d'autres biens. Ensi
it found furnished with wheat and with victuals and with-other goods Thus
 sejorna iqui par deus jours, et fist ses genz corre par le país
sojourned there for two days and had his people run through the country
 entor; et gaaignierent assez proies de bues et de vaches et de
around and they-won much booty of oxen and of cows and of
 buffes, et autres bestes à mult grant plenté. Lors se parti
buffaloes and other beasts in very great plenty Then himself departed
 de cele cité à toz ses gaaiens; et chevaucha à une altre cité,
from that city with all his gains and rode to an other city
 loing d'iqui à une journée, que on apele Blisme. Et ensi cum li
far from-there at a day which one calls Blisme And thus as the
 autre Gré avoient laissie l'autre cité, ravoient cil laissie cesti;
other Greeks had left the-other city had-in-turn those left this-one
 et il la trova garnie de toz biens, et se herberja devant.
and he it found furnished with all goods and himself lodged before
- 446 Lors lor vint une novele que, à une valée à trois lieues
Then them came a news that at a valley at three leagues
 de l'ost, estoient li chaitif et les chaitives que Johannis
from the-host were the captive-men and the captive-women whom Johanitsa
 enmenoit, atot lor proies et à toz lor chars. Lors atorna
led-away with their booty and with all their carts Then arranged
 l'empereres Henris que li Grieu d'Andrenople et cil del
the-emperor Henry that the Greeks of-Adrianople and those of-the
 Dimot les iroient querre, et leur chargeroit deus batailles de
Demotika them would-go to-seek and them he-would-entrust two battalions of

chevaliers. Ensi cum il fu devisé, si fu fait à l'endemain. De

knights Thus as it was devised so was done at the-next-day Of

l'une bataille fu chevetaines Eustaces, li freres l'empereor Henri

the-one battalion was captain Eustace the brother (of-)the-emperor Henry

de Costantinoble, et de l'autre Machaires de Sainte Manehalt.

of Constantinople and of the-other Macaire of Sainte Menebould

Et chevauchierent, entr'aus et les Grieus, trosque en la valée 447

And they-rode between-them and the Greeks as-far into the valley

que on lor ot enseignie; et troverent la gent ensi cum l'en lor

which one them had shown and found the people thus as one them

ot dit. Et la gens Johannis assembla à la gent l'empereor

had told And the people (of-)Johaniitsa joined-battle with the people (of-)the-emperor

Henri; si i ot navrez et morz homes et chevaus de l'une

Henry so there had wounded and dead men and horses on the-one

part et de l'autre; mais par la vertu de Dieu, orent li Franc la

side and on the-other but by the power of God had the Franks the

force; et tornerent les chaitis, et enmenerent devant als ariere.

force and turned the captives and led-away before them back

Et sachiez que cele rescouse ne fu mie petite; que bien i 448

And know that that rescue not was at-all small for well there

ot vint mil que homes que fames que anfanz, et bien trois

had twenty thousand what men what women what children and well three

mil chars chargez de lor robes et de lor hernois, sans

thousand carts laden with their robes and with their baggage without

les autres proies dont il avoit assez. Et bien duroit la route,

the other booty whereof there had plenty And well lasted the column

si cum il venoient à l'ost, deus liues granz; et ensi vindrent

so as they came to the-host two leagues great and thus came

à l'ost la nuit. Et en fu mult liez l'empereres Henris, et

to the-host the night And thereof was very glad the-emperor Henry and

tuit li autre baron; et les fist herbergier d'une part et bien

all the other barons and them had lodged on-one side and well

garder, si que onc ne perdirent vaillant un denier de rien
guarded so that ever not they-lost worth a penny of anything
 qu'i aussient. L'endemain sejorna l'enpereres Henris por le
that-they had The-next-day sojourned the-emperor Henry for the
 pueple que il ot rescous. A l'autre jor se parti del païs,
people whom he had rescued At the-other day himself departed from-the country
 et chevaucha tant par ses journées que il vint à Andrenople.
and rode so-far by his day-stages that he came to Adrianople

449 Lors dona congié as homes et as fames que il ot
Then gave leave to-the men and to-the women whom he had
 rescous, et chascuns s'en alla là où il volt, en la
rescued and each himself-thence went there where he wished into the
 terre dont il ere nez o d'autre part. Et les autres proies,
land whence he was born or on-other side And the other booty
 dont il avoit mult grant plenté, furent departies à cels
whereof there had very great plenty were shared to those
 de l'ost si cum il dut. Lors sejorna l'empereres Henri par
of the-host so as it ought Then sojourned the-emperor Henry for
 cinq jorz, et puis chevaucha trosque à la cité del Dimot,
five days and then rode as-far to the city of-the Demotika
 por savoir coment ele ere abatue, et se on la porroit
for to-know how it was cast-down and if one it could
 refermer. Et se loja devant la vile, et vit, et il et si
refortify And himself lodged before the town and saw both he and his
 baron, que il n'estoit mie leus de la fermer en tel point.
barons that it not-was at-all place of it to-fortify in such point

The War Beyond the Arm

LII

Otto of la Roche brings word that Boniface's daughter, long promised to Henry, has come from Lombardy to Salonika, and the match is confirmed. Henry rides into Johanitsa's land, takes Thermae, with the finest hot baths in the world, burns it, and returns to Constantinople for the winter, leaving Peter of Radinghem at Adrianople. Lascaris breaks the truce, and Henry sends Peter of Bracieux, Payen of Orléans, and seven score knights across the Arm, where they refortify Cyzicus and raid, while Thierry of Loos fortifies Saint Sophia at Nicomedia.

Lors vint en l'ost uns bers le marchis Boniface de Monferrat 450

Then came into the-host a baron (of-)the marquis Boniface of Montferrat

en message, qui Othes de la Roche avoit nom; et parla d'un

in message who Otto of the Roche had name and spoke of-a

mariage qui devant avoit esté porparlez, de la file Boniface

marriage which before had been negotiated of the daughter (of-)Boniface

le marchis de Monferat et de l'empereor Henri. Et aporta

the marquis of Montferrat and of the-emperor Henry And brought

les nouvelles que la damme ere venue de Lombardie, et que

the news that the lady was come from Lombardy and that

ses peres l'i avoit envoie querre, et qu'ele ert à Salenique.

her father her-there had sent to-fetch and that-she was at Salonika

Lors prist li empereres conseil, et la somme dou conseil si fu

Then took the emperor counsel and the sum of-the counsel so was

tels que li mariages fu asseurez d'une part et d'autre. Ensi

such that the marriage was confirmed on-one side and on-other Thus

s'en rala li messages Othes de la Roche à Salenique.

himself-thence went-back the messenger Otto of the Roche to Salonika

Et l'empereres rot assemblées ses genz qui orent à garison 451

And the-emperor had-again assembled his people who had to safety

menez lor gaainz de Veroi, qu'il avoient fait en l'ost. Et

led their gains from Beroe which-they had made in the-host And

chevaucha pardevant Andrenople par ses journées, tant que il
rode past Adrianople by his day-stages so-far that he
vint en la terre Johanis le roi de Blaquie et de Bougrie. Et
came into the land (of-)Johanitsa the king of Wallachia and of Bulgaria And
vinrent à une cité qu'on apeloit la Ferme; et la pristrent, et
they-came to a city which-one called the Thermae and it took and
entrerent enz, et i firent mult grant gaain. Et sejournerent
entered in and there made very great gain And sojourned
enz par trois jorz, et corurent par tot le païs, et gaaignierent
in for threë days and ran through all the country and won
grans gaaiens, et destruistrent une cité qui avoit nom l'Aquile.
great gains and destroyed a city which had name the-Aquile

452 Al quart jor, se partirent de la Ferme, qui mult ere
At-the fourth day themselves departed from the Thermae which very was
bele et bien seanz; et i sordoient li baing chaut li plus
fair and well situated and there sprang the baths hot the most
bel de tot le monde; et la fist l'emperere destruire et ardoir;
fair of all the world and it had the-emperor destroyed and burned
et enmenerent les gaaiens mult granz de proies et d'autres
and led-away the gains very great of booty and of-other
avoirs. Et chevauchierent par lor journées tant que il vindrent
goods And they-rode by their day-stages so-far that they came
à la cité d'Andrenople, et sejournerent el païs trosque
to the city of-Adrianople and sojourned in-the country until
à la feste Toz Sains, que il ne porent plus guerroier por
to the feast (of-)All Saints for they not could more make-war for
l'iver. Et lors s'en torna l'empereres Henris et tuit si
the-winter And then himself-thence turned the-emperor Henry and all his
baron vers Costantinoble, qui mult furent lassé d'ostoier;
barons toward Constantinople who very were weary of-campaigning

et ot laissié à Andrenople entre les Griex, un suen home
and had left at Adrianople among the Greeks a his man
 qui ot nom Pierres de Radingheam, atot dix chevaliers.

who had name Peter of Radinghem with ten knights

En cel termine, Toldres li Ascres qui tenoit la terre d'autre part 453

In that time Theodore the Lascaris who held the land on-other side

del Braz devers la Turquie, avoit trives à l'empereor Henri;

of-the Arm toward the Turkey had truces with the-emperor Henry

et ne li ot mie bien tenues, ainz li ot fausées et brisies. Et

and not him had at-all well kept but him had falsified and broken And

lors prist conseil l'empereur, et envoia oltre le Braz à la cité de

then took counsel the-emperor and sent beyond the Arm to the city of

l'Espigal Pierre de Braieciel cui sa terre ere devisée en iceles

the-Espigal Peter of Bracieux to-whom his land was assigned in those

parties, et Païen d'Orliens, et Ansiau de Chaeu, et Eustaice

parts and Payen of-Orléans and Anseau of Cayeux and Eustace

son frere, et grant part de ses bones genz, trosque à sept vins

his brother and great part of his good people as-far as seven score

chevaliers. Et cil comencierent la guerre contre Toldre l'Ascre

knights And those began the war against Theodore the-Lascaris

mult grant et mult fiere, et fissent grant damage en sa terre.

very great and very fierce and made great harm in his land

Et chevauchierent trosque à une terre qui Equise est apelée, 454

And they-rode as-far to a land which Cyzicus is called

que la mers clooit tote fors que une part. Et à l'entrée par

which the sea enclosed all save that one part And at the-entry by

où on entroit, avoit au ancienement forteresse de murs,

where one entered there-had had anciently fortress of walls

de tors et de fossez; et estoient auques dechau. Et enqui

of towers and of ditches and were somewhat fallen And there

dedenz entra l'oz des François; et Pierres de Braieciel,

within entered the-host of-the French and Peter of Bracieux

cui la terre ere devisée, les commença à refermer, et à
to-whom the land was assigned them began to refortify and to
 faire deus chastiaus et deus entrées. Et d'iqui comencierent
make two castles and two entries And from-there they-began
 à corre en la terre l'Ascre, et gaaignierent granz gaainz
to run in the land (of-)the-Lascaris and won great gains
 et granz proies, et amenerent dedenz lor isle les gaaiens
and great booty and brought within their isle the gains
 et les proies. Et Toldres li Ascres revenoit sovent en
and the booty And Theodore the Lascaris came-again often into
 Equisse; et i ot maintes foiz assemblées, et i perdoient
Cyzicus and there had many times encounters and there lost
 li un et li autre; et iqui ere la guerre granz et perillouse.
the ones and the others and there was the war great and perilous

455 Or lairons de cez, si dirons de Tyerri de Los, qui
Now we-will-leave of these so we-will-tell of Thierry of Loos who
 seneschaus ere, cui Nicomie devoit estre; et ere à une
seneschal was to-whom Nicomedia was-to be and was at a
 journée de Niqué-la-grant, qui ere li chiés de la terre
day from Nicaea-the-great which was the head of the land
 Toldre l'Ascre. Et cil s'en rala à grant partie
(of-)Theodore the-Lascaris And he himself-thence went-back with great part
 de la gent l'empereor Henri, et trova que li chastiaus ere
of the people (of-)the-emperor Henry and found that the castle was
 abatuz; et ferma et horda le moustier Sainte Sophie qui
cast-down and fortified and timbered the minster Saint Sophia which
 mult ere halz et biels, et retint iqui endroit la guerre.
very was high and fine and kept there right the war

The Emperor's Marriage

LIII

Boniface refortifies Serres and builds Drama. Villehardouin and Miles the Brabançon bring his daughter Agnes from Enos, and Henry marries her in Saint Sophia on the Sunday after Candlemas, with a wedding feast at Bucoleon. Lascaris sends word to Johanitsa that Henry's men are scattered beyond the Arm, and in Lent Johanitsa besieges Adrianople with thirty-three petraries. Henry recalls his men from Cyzicus, and Lascaris besieges Kibotos, where Macaire's forty knights hold out all day, nearly all of them wounded.

En icel termine, li marchis Bonifaces de Monferrat remut 456
In that time the marquis Boniface of Montferrat set-out-again
de Salenique, si s'en ala à la Serre que Johannis
from Salonika so himself-thence went to the Serres which Johanitsa
li avoit abatue; si la referma, et ferma après un chastel
him had cast-down so it refortified and fortified after a castle
qui a nom Dramme, el val de Phelippe. Et tote la
which has name Drama in-the vale of Philippi And all the
terre entor se rendi à lui et obéi; et iverna el païs.
land around itself surrendered to him and obeyed and wintered in-the country
Endementiers fu tant del tens passé que li Noels fu 457
Meanwhile was so-much of-the time passed that the Christmas was
passez. Lors vindrent li message le marchis à l'empereor
passed Then came the messengers (of-)the marquis to the-emperor
en Constantinoble, et li distrent de par le marchis
in Constantinople and him told on behalf-of the marquis
que il avoit envoie sa fille en galies, à la cité d'Aines.
that he had sent his daughter in galleys to the city of-Enos
Et lors envoia l'empereres Henris Joffroi le mareschal de
And then sent the-emperor Henry Geoffrey the marsbal of
Romenie et de Champagne, et Milon le Braibant, por
Romania and of Champagne and Miles the Brabançon for

querre la dame; et chevauchierent par lor journées tant que
to-fetch the lady and they-rode by their day-stages so-far that
 il vindrent à la cité d'Aines.

they came to the city of-Enos

- 458 Et troverent la dame, qui mult ere et bone et bele;
And found the lady who very was both good and fair
 et la saluerent de par lor seignor Henri l'empereor
and her greeted on behalf-of their lord Henry the-emperor
 de Constantinoble, et l'amenerent à grant honor en
of Constantinople and her-brought with great honor into
 Costantinoble. Et l'esposa l'empereres Henris au mostier
Constantinople And her-wedded the-emperor Henry at-the minster
 Sainte Sophie, le diemenche après la feste madamme sainte
Saint Sophia the Sunday after the feast (of-)my-lady saint
 Marie Chandelor, à grant joie et à grant honor; et
Mary Candlemas with great joy and with great honor and
 porterent corone ambedui; et furent les noces haltes et
bore crown both and were the nuptials high and
 planieres el palais de Bouchelion. Ensi fu faiz li mariages
full in-the palace of Bucoleon Thus was made the marriage
 de l'empereor et de la file le marchis Boniface, qui
of the-emperor and of the daughter (of-)the marquis Boniface who
 Agnès l'empereris avoit nom, com vos avez oï.

Agnes the-empress had name as you have heard

- 459 Toldres li Asces, qui guerroia l'empereor Henri, prist ses
Theodore the Lascaris who warred the-emperor Henry took his
 messages, si les envoia à Johannis le roi de Blaquie et de
messengers so them sent to Johanitsa the king of Wallachia and of
 Bougrie. Si li manda que totes les gens l'empereor Henri
Bulgaria So him sent-word that all the people (of-)the-emperor Henry
 estoient devers lui, qui le guerréioient d'autre part del Braz
were toward him who him warred on-other side of-the Arm

devers la Turquie; et que l'empereres ere en Constantinoble à
toward the Turkey and that the-emperor was in Constantinople with
 pou de gent; et or se poroit vengier; que il seroit d'une
few of people and now himself he-could avenge for he would-be on-one
 part, et il venist d'autre, et que l'empereres avoit si pou de
side and he should-come on-other and that the-emperor had so few of
 gent que il ne se poroit d'andeus defendre. Johannis s'ere
people that he not himself could from-both defend Johanitsa himself-was
 porchaciez de grant host de Comains qui venoient à lui; et
provided with great host of Cumans who came to him and
 porchaça ses os de Blas et de Bougres, si granz cum il onques
gathered his hosts of Vlachs and of Bulgars so great as he ever
 pot. Et del tans fu jà tant passé que li quaresmes entra.
could And of-the time was already so-much passed that the Lent entered
 Machaires de Sainte Manehalt avoit commencié à fermer
Macaire of Sainte Menebould had begun to fortify
 un chastel al Caracas, qui siet sor un goffre de mer à
a castle at-the Charax which sits upon a gulf of sea at
 six liues de Nichomie, devers Constantinoble. Et Guillaume
six leagues from Nicomedia toward Constantinople And William
 des Sains en comença un autre à fermer, le Chivetot,
of-the Sains thereof began an other to fortify the Kibotos
 qui siet sor le gofre de Nichomie d'autre part, devers
which sits upon the gulf of Nicomedia on-other side toward
 Niqué. Et sachiez que mult ot afaires l'empereres Henris
Nicaea And know that much had affairs the-emperor Henry
 endroit Costantinoble, et li baron qui erent el païs. Et
about Constantinople and the barons who were in-the country And
 bien tesmoigne Joffrois de Vile-Hardoin li mareschaus de
well testifies Geoffrey of Villehardouin the marshal of
 Romenie et de Champaigne, qui ceste œvre traita, que
Romania and of Champagne who this work treated that

460

onc en nul termene ne furent gent si chargié de guerre,
ever in any time not were people so laden with war
 porce que il estoient espars en tant de leus.

because that they were scattered in so-many of places

461 Lors issi Johannis de Blaquie à totes ses hoz, et à grant

Then went-out Johanitsa from Wallachia with all his hosts and with great
 ost de Cumains qui venu li erent, et entra en la Romenie.

host of Cumans who come to-him were and entered into the Romania

Et corurent li Commain trosque as portes de Costantinoble;

And ran the Cumans as-far to-the gates of Constantinople

et il assist Andrenople, et i dreça trente trois perieres granz

and he besieged Adrianople and there raised thirty three petraries great

qui getoient as murs et as tors. Et dedenz Andrenople

which cast at-the walls and at-the towers And within Adrianople

n'avoit se les Grex non, et Pierron de Radingheam,

not-there-had except the Greeks not and Peter of Radinghem

qui de par l'empereor i ere atot dix chevaliers. Et lors

who on behalf-of the-emperor there was with ten knights And then

manderent li Grieu et li Latin ensemble l'empereor Henri

sent-word the Greeks and the Latins together (to-)the-emperor Henry

que ensi les avoit Johannis assis, et que il les secorust.

that thus them had Johanitsa besieged and that he them should-succor

462 Mult fu destroiz l'empereres quant il oï ce; que ses genz

Very was distressed the-emperor when he heard this for his people

estoient departies oltre le Braz en tant de leus, et estoient

were scattered beyond the Arm in so-many of places and were

en chascun leu si chargié de guerre qu'il ne pooient plus;

in each place so laden with war that-they not could more

et l'empereres ere en Constantinoble à pou de gent. Et

and the-emperor was in Constantinople with few of people And

fu tels ses consels qu'il enprist à issir de Costantinoble à

was such his counsel that-he undertook to go-out from Constantinople with

tant de gent cum il porroit avoir à la quinzaine de Pasque;
so-many of people as he could have at the fortnight of Easter
 et manda en Equise, où li plus de sa gent ere, que il
and sent-word into Cyzicus where the most of his people was that they
 s'en venissent à lui. Et il s'en commencierent à
themselves-thence should-come to him And they themselves-thence began to
 venir par mer, Eustaices li freres l'empereor Henri, et Ansials
come by sea Eustace the brother (of-)the-emperor Henry and Anseau
 de Caeu, et de lor gent li plus; et dont remest Pierres
of Cayeux and of their people the most and then remained Peter
 de Braiecuel et Paiens d'Orliens à poi de gent en Equise.
of Bracieux and Payen of-Orléans with few of people in Cyzicus
 Quant Toldres li Ascres oï la novele que Andrenople ere
When Theodore the Lascaris heard the news that Adrianople was
 assise, et que l'empereres Henris par estovoir mandoit ses
besieged and that the-emperor Henry by necessity summoned his
 gens, et que il ne savoit auquel corre, ou deçà ou delà
people and that he not knew to-which to-run either on-this-side or on-that-side
 (si ere chargiez de la guerre), lors si manda plus esforcielement
so was laden with the war then so summoned more strongly
 quanque il pot de gent, et fist tendre ses trés et ses paveillons
whatever he could of people and had pitched his tents and his pavilions
 devant les portes d'Equise; et i ot assemblé maintes foiz,
before the gates of-Cyzicus and there had encountered many times
 et perdu et gaaignié. Et quant Toldres li Ascres vit que il
and lost and won And when Theodore the Lascaris saw that they
 avoient pou de gent laienz, si prist une grant partie de s'ost,
had few of people in-there so took a great part of his-host
 et de vaissials ce que il en pot avoir par mer, si les envoya
and of vessels this that he thereof could have by sea so them sent

463

al chastel del Chivetot que Guillaumes de Sainz fermoit;

to-the castle of-the Kibotos which William of Sains fortified

si l'asistrent par mer et par terre, le semadi de mi-quaresme.

so it-besieged by sea and by land the Saturday of mid-Lent

464 Laienz avoit quarante chevaliers de mult bone gent, et

In-there there-had forty knights of very good people and

Machaires de Sainte Manehalt en ere chevetaines; et lor

Macaire of Sainte Menehould thereof was captain and their

chastials estoit encor pou fermez, si que cil pooient avenir à

castle was still little fortified so that those could reach to

els as espées et as lances. Et les assaillirent par mer

them with-the swords and with-the lances And them assailed by sea

et par terre mult durement; et cil assaus dura le semadi tote

and by land very hard and that assault lasted the Saturday all

jor, et cil se desfandirent mult bien. Et bien tesmoigne

day and those themselves defended very well And well testifies

li livres que onques à plus grant meschief ne se

the book that ever at more great mischief not themselves

desfandirent quarante chevalier à tant de gent. Et bien

defended forty knights against so-many of people And well

i parut; que il n'en i ot mie cinq qui ne fuisent navré

there appeared for it not-thereof there had at-all five who not were wounded

de toz les chevaliers qui i estoient; et s'en i ot un

of all the knights who there were and so-thereof there had one

mort, qui niés ere Milon le Braibant, qui avoit nom Giles.

dead who nephew was (of-)Miles the Brabançon who had name Giles

The Relief of Kibotos

LIV

A messenger finds Henry at dinner. He calls the city to follow and sets out at once; the ships row all night, and at sunrise, with seventeen vessels against sixty, he offers battle. The Greeks draw back to the shore, and that night, as more ships arrive, they burn their own fleet and flee. Henry abandons the weak castle. Johanitsa presses Adrianople through April and breaches its walls, but his Cumans go home with their booty, he lifts the siege, and Adrianople begs Henry to come quickly.

Ençois que cil assaus començast le semadi matin, s'en vint 465
Before that that assault should-begin the Saturday morning himself-thence came
uns més batant en Constantinoble; et trova l'empereor Henri
a messenger in-haste into Constantinople and found the-emperor Henry
el palais de Blaquerne, séant al mengier, et li dist: «Sire,
in-the palace of Blachernae sitting at-the eating and him said Lord
sachiez que cil del Chivetot sont assis par mer et par terre;
know that those of-the Kibotos are besieged by sea and by land
et se vos nes secorrez hastivement, il sunt pris et mort.»
and if you not-them succor hastily they are taken and dead
Avec l'empereor ere Coenes de Betune, et Joffrois li mareschaus 466
With the-emperor was Conon of Béthune and Geoffrey the marshal
de Champaigne, et Miles li Braibanz, et pou de genz. Et
of Champagne and Miles the Brabançon and few of people And
pristrent conseil; et li conseils si fu tels que l'empereres
they-took counsel and the counsel so was such that the-emperor
s'en vient al rivage, et s'en entre en un galion,
himself-thence comes to-the shore and himself-thence enters into a galleon
et chascuns en tel vaisel com il pot avoir. Et lors fait crier
and each in such vessel as he could have And then has cried
par tote la vile que il le sievent, à tel besoing cum por
through all the town that they him should-follow at such need as for

secorre ses homes; que il les a perduz se il ne les secort.

to-succor his men for he them has lost if he not them succors

Lors veissiez la cité de Costantinoble mult esformier

Then you-might-have-seen the city of Constantinople much bestir

des Venissiens et des Pisans, et d'autres genz qui de mer

with-the Venetians and with-the Pisans and with-other people who of sea

savoient; et corent as vassiaus, qui ainz ainz, qui mielx mielx.

knew and run to-the vessels who sooner sooner who better better

Avec als entroient li chevalier à totes lor armes; et qui ançois

With them entered the knights with all their arms and who sooner

pooit, ançois se partoit del port por sivre l'empeoreor.

could sooner himself departed from-the port for to-follow the-emperor

467 Ensi alerent à force de rimes, tote la vesprée tant com jorz lor

Thus they-went by force of oars all the evening so-long as day them

dura, et tote la nuit trosque à l'endemain al jor. Et quant

lasted and all the night until to the-next-day at-the day And when

vint à une piece après le soleil levant, si ot tant exploitié

it-came to a while after the sun rising so had so-much sped

l'empereres Henris que il vit le Chivetot, et l'ost qui ere entor

the-emperor Henry that he saw the Kibotos and the-host which was around

et par mer et par terre. Et cil dedenz n'orent mie dormi la

both by sea and by land And those within not-bad at-all slept the

nuit; ainz se furent tote nuit hordé, si malade et si navré

night but themselves were all night timbered so sick and so wounded

com il estoient, et com cil qui n'atendoient se la mort non.

as they were and as those who not-awaited except the death not

468 Et quant l'empereres vit que il estoient si près que il

And when the-emperor saw that they were so close that they

voloient assaillir, et il n'avoit encor de sa gent se pou

wished to-assail and he not-bad yet of his people except few

non (avec lui ere Joffrois li mareschus en un autre vaissel,

not with him was Geoffrey the marshal in an other vessel

et Miles li Braibanz, et Pisan et autre chevalier; et tant
and Miles the Brabançon and Pisans and other knights and so-many
 que il avoient, entre granz et petiz, de vaisials dix sept,
that they had between great and small of vessels ten seven
 et cil en avoient bien soixante), et virent que se il
and those thereof had well sixty and saw that if they
 atendoient lor genz et soffroient que cil assaillissent cels
awaited their people and suffered that those should-assail those
 de Chivetot, que il seroient mort ou pris; si fu tels lor
of Kibotos that they would-be dead or taken so was such their
 conseils que il s'iroient combatre à cels de la mer.
counsel that they themselves-would-go to-fight with those of the sea
 Et voguerent cele part tuit d'un front, et furent tuit armé 469
And they-rowed that way all of-one front and were all armed
 es vaissials, les hialmes laciez. Et quant cil les virent
in-the vessels the helmets laced And when those them saw
 venir qui estoient tuit apareillié d'assaillir, si conurent bien
come who were all prepared of-assailing so knew well
 que ce ere secors; si se partirent del chastel et
that this was succor so themselves departed from-the castle and
 vinrent encontre als; et tote lor oz se loja sor le rivage,
came against them and all their host itself lodged upon the shore
 de granz genz que il avoient à pié et à cheval. Et quant
of great people that they had on foot and on horse And when
 il virent que l'emperere et la soe gens venroient totes
they saw that the-emperor and the his people would-come all
 voies sor als, si reculerent sor lor gent qui estoient sor le
the-same upon them so drew-back upon their people who were upon the
 rivaje, si que cil lor pooient aidier de traire et de lancer.
shore so that those them could help with shooting and with throwing

470 Ensi les tint l'empereres assis à ses dix sept vaissiaus, tant
Thus them held the-emperor besieged with his ten seven vessels until
 que li criz vint qui ere meuz de Costantinoble; et ainçois que
that the cry came which was raised from Constantinople and before that
 la nuiz venist, en i ot tant venuz que il orent la force
the night should-come thereof there had so-many come that they had the force
 en la mer partot; et jurent tote nuit armé, et aancrez lor
in the sea everywhere and lay all night armed and anchored their
 vaissiaus. Et fu lor consels telx que si tost com il verroient le
vessels And was their counsel such that so soon as they would-see the
 jor, que il s'iroient combatre à els el rivage por tollir
day that they themselves-would-go to-fight with them on-the shore for to-take
 lor vaissials. Et quant vint endroit la mie-nuit, si traistrent li
their vessels And when came toward the midnight so drew the
 Grieu toz lor vaissialx à terre, si botterent le feu dedenz et les
Greeks all their vessels to land so thrust the fire within and them
 artrent toz, et se deslogierent, et s'en alerent fuiant.
burned all and themselves dislodged and themselves-thence went fleeing

471 L'empereres Henri et sa gens furent mult lié et joiant de
The-emperor Henry and his people were very glad and joyful of
 la victoire que Diex lor ot donnée, et de ce que il orent
the victory which God them had given and of this that they had
 secouru lor gent. Et quant vint al matin, l'empereres et
succored their people And when came at-the morning the-emperor and
 tuit li autre s'en vont al chastel del Chivetot; et
all the others themselves-thence go to-the castle of-the Kibotos and
 troverent lor genz mult malades et mult navrées les plusors.
found their people very sick and very wounded the most
 Et le chastel esgarda l'empereres et sa genz, et virent que
And the castle examined the-emperor and his people and saw that
 il ere si febles que il ne faisoit à tenir. Si recuillirent totes
it was so feeble that it not was-fit to hold So gathered all

lor genz es vassials, et guerpirent le chastel et laisserent.

their people into-the vessels and forsook the castle and left

Ensi repaira li empereres Henris en Constantinople.

Thus returned the emperor Henry into Constantinople

Johannis li rois de Blaquie ne repousa mie, qui avoit

472

Johanitsa the king of Wallachia not rested at-all who had

Andrenople assise; ainz giterent ses perieres, dont il avoit

Adrianople besieged but cast his petraries whereof he had

assez, et par jor et par nuit, as murs et aus tors,

plenty both by day and by night at-the walls and at-the towers

et empirierent mult les murs et les tors. Et mist ses

and damaged much the walls and the towers And put his

trencheors as murs, et firent maintes fois assaillies. Et

sappers to-the walls and made many times assaults And

mult se contindrent bien cil qui dedenz estoient, li

very themselves bore well those who within were the

Grieu et li Latin; et manderent mult sovent l'empereor

Greeks and the Latins and sent-word very often (to-)the-emperor

Henri que il les secorust, et seust que se il nes

Henry that he them should-succor and should-know that if he not-them

secoroit, que il estoient perdu sanz nule fin. Et l'empereres

succored that they were lost without any end And the-emperor

ere mult destroiz; que quant il voloit ses genz d'Andrenople

was very distressed for when he wished his people of-Adrianople

aler secore d'une part, Toldres li Ascres le tenoit si destroit

to-go to-succor on-one side Theodore the Lascaris him held so hard-pressed

d'autre part, si que par estovoir le convenoit à retorner.

on-other side so that by necessity him behooved to return

Et issi fu Johannis tot le mois d'avril devant Andrenople; et

473

And thus was Johanitsa all the month of-April before Adrianople and

l'aprocha si de prendre qu'il abati des murs et des tors en

it-approached so of taking that-he cast-down of-the walls and of-the towers in

deus leus trosque en terre, et si que il pooient venir main
two places as-far to earth and so that they could come hand
 à main as espées et as lances à cels dedenz. Ensinques
to hand with-the swords and with-the lances to those within Thus
 i fist de mult granz assaus, et cil se defendirent bien;
there made of very great assaults and those themselves defended well
 et i ot mult des morz et des navrez d'une part et d'autre.
and there had many of-the dead and of-the wounded on-one side and on-other

474 Ensi com Diex vielt les aventures avenir, li Commain
So as God wills the adventures to-happen the Cumans
 qu'il ot envoié par la terre orent mult gaaingnié; et
whom-he had sent through the land had much won and
 furent revenu à l'ost d'Andrenople à toz lor gaaienz; et
were returned to the-host of-Adrianople with all their gains and
 distrent que il n'i remanroient plus à Johannis, ainz
said that they not-there would-remain more with Johanitsa but
 s'en voloient aler en lor terre. Issi se partirent
themselves-thence wished to-go into their land Thus themselves departed
 li Commain de Johannis; et cum il vit ce, si n'osa
the Cumans from Johanitsa and when he saw this so not-dared
 remanoir sanz als devant Andrenople. Ensique s'en
to-remain without them before Adrianople Thus-so himself-thence
 parti de devant la vile, et la guerpi.
departed from before the town and it forsook

475 Et sachiez que on le tint à grant miracle, de vile qui
And know that one it held for great miracle of town which
 ere aprochie de prandre com ere ceste, que il la laissa,
was approached of taking as was this-one that he it left
 qui hom si poeteis ere. Ensi com Diex vielt les choses,
who man so powerful was So as God wills the things
 si les convient avenir. Cil d'Andrenople ne tarderent mie
so them behooves to-happen Those of-Adrianople not delayed at-all

de mander l'empereor que il venist tost por Dieu;
of to-send-word (to-)the-emperor that he should-come soon for God
 que seust de voir que se Johannis li rois de Blaquie
for he-should-know of truth that if Johanitsa the king of Wallachia
 retornado, que il estoient mort ou pris.
returned that they were dead or taken

The Siege of Cyzicus

LV

Steiriones, Lascaris' admiral, enters the straits at Abydos with seventeen galleys and besieges Cyzicus while Lascaris attacks by land. Henry sends fourteen galleys manned by his best barons, and Steiriones flees before them. Lascaris then threatens Nicomedia, and Henry crosses the Arm and drives him back. Later Thierry of Loos, out foraging, is overwhelmed and taken, wounded in the face, and Ansoul of Remy is blamed for deserting him. Henry crosses again to relieve Saint Sophia of Nicomedia, and the Greeks withdraw beyond the mountain.

L'empereres, à tant de gent com il avoit, fu atornez d'aler à 476
The-emperor with so-many of people as he had was prepared of-going to
 Andrenople. Et lors li vint une novele qui mult fu griés, que
Adrianople And then him came a news which very was grievous that
 Esturions, qui ere amirals des galies Toldre l'Ascre, ere entrez
Steiriones who was admiral of-the galleys (of-)Theodore the-Lascaris was entered
 à dix et sept galies en Boche d'Avie, el Braz Saint George,
with ten and seven galleys into Mouth of-Abydos in-the Arm Saint George
 et fu venuz en Equise, où Pierres de Braieciel estoit et Paiens
and was come into Cyzicus where Peter of Bracieux was and Payen
 d'Orliens, et le assist par devers mer, et Toldres li Ascres par
of-Orléans and it besieged by toward sea and Theodore the Lascaris by
 devers terre. Et la gens de la terre d'Equise furent revelé contre
toward land And the people of the land of-Cyzicus were rebelled against

Peron de Braieciel, et cil de Marmora, qui suen estoient;

Peter of Bracieux and those of Marmora who his were

et li orent fait grant damage, et morz de ses homes assez.

and him had done great harm and killed of his men plenty

477 Et quant ceste novele vint en Costantinoble, si furent mult

And when this news came into Constantinople so they-were very

esfreé. Lors prist conseil l'empereres Henris à ses homes et

frightened Then took counsel the-emperor Henry with his men and

à ses barons et as Veniciens ensamble; et distrent que se

with his barons and with-the Venetians together and they-said that if

il ne secoroient Perron de Braieciel et Païen d'Orliens, que

they not succored Peter of Bracieux and Payen of-Orléans that

il estoient mort et que il avoient la terre perdue. Si armerent

they were dead and that they had the land lost So they-armed

mult iselement quatorze galies, et les garnirent des plus

very swiftly fourteen galleys and them manned with-the most

haltes gens des Veniciens et de toz les barons l'empeor.

high people of-the Venetians and of all the barons (of-)the-emperor

478 En une entra Coenes de Betune et sa gens; et en l'autre

Into one entered Conon of Béthune and his people and into the-other

Joffrois de Vile-Hardoin li mareschaus et la soe gens;

Geoffrey of Villehardouin the marshal and the his people

et en la tierce Machaires de Sainte Manehalt et la soe

and into the third Macaire of Sainte Menebould and the his

gens; en la quarte Miles li Braibans; et en la quinte

people into the fourth Miles the Brabançon and into the fifth

Ansials de Caeu; et en la sixte Tyerris de Los, qui ere

Anseau of Cayeux and into the sixth Thierry of Loos who was

seneschaus de Romenie; et en la septime Guillaumes del

seneschal of Romania and into the seventh William of-the

Perchoi; et en l'uitisme Eustaiches li freres l'empeor. Et

Perchoy and into the-eighth Eustace the brother (of-)the-emperor And

ensi mist par totes ses galies sa meillor gent l'empereres

thus put through all his galleys his best people the-emperor

Henris. Quant eles partirent del port de Costantinoble,

Henry When they departed from-the port of Constantinople

bien distrent totes les genz qui les virent, que onques

well said all the people who them saw that ever

mais galies ne furent mielz armées ne de meillors genz.

before galleys not were better armed nor with better people

Et ensi fu respoitiez li alers de Andrenople à cele foiz.

And thus was postponed the going of Adrianople at that time

Et cil des galies s'en alerent contreval le Braz, vers 479

And those of-the galleys themselves-thence went down the Arm toward

Equise droit. Ne sai comment Esturions le sot, li amiraus

Cyzicus straight Not I-know how Steiriones it knew the admiral

des galies Toldre l'Ascre: si s'en parti de Equise

of-the galleys (of-)Theodore the-Lascaris so himself-thence departed from Cyzicus

et s'en ala, et s'enfui contreval le Braz. Et cil le

and himself-thence went and himself-fled down the Arm And those him

chacierent deus jorz et deuz nuiz trosque fors de Boche

chased two days and two nights as-far outside of Mouth

d'Avie, bien quarante miles. Et quant il virent que il

of-Abydos well forty miles And when they saw that they

nel poroient ateindre, si tornerent arriere et revindrent en

not-him could overtake so turned back and came-again into

Equise, et troverent Perron de Braieciel et Paien d'Orliens;

Cyzicus and found Peter of Bracieux and Payen of-Orléans

et Toldres li Ascres se fu deslogiez de devant, et fu

and Theodore the Lascaris himself was dislodged from before and was

repairez arriere en sa terre. Ensi fu secorue Equise com

returned back into his land Thus was succored Cyzicus as

vos oez; et cil des galies s'en tornerent arrieres
you bear and those of-the galleys themselves-thence turned back

en Costantinoble, et ratornerent lor oirre vers Andrenople.
into Constantinople and prepared-again their journey toward Adrianople

480 Toldres li Ascres envoia le plus de sa gent en la terre de
Theodore the Lascaris sent the most of his people into the land of

Nichomie. Et la gens Tierri de Los, qui avoient fermé le
Nicomedia And the people (of-)Thierry of Loos who had fortified the

mostier Sainte Sofie, et estoient dedenz, manderent lor
minster Saint Sophia and were within sent-word (to-)their

seignor et l'empereor que il les secorust; que se il n'avoient
lord and (to-)the-emperor that he them should-succor for if they not-had

secors, il ne se poroient tenir, et ensorquetot si
succor they not themselves could hold and above-all so

n'avoient point de viande. Par fine destrece convint l'empereor
not-had at-all of victuals By pure distress behooved the-emperor

Henri, et sa gent, que il laissast la voie d'aler à Andrenople,
Henry and his people that he should-leave the way of-going to Adrianople

et que il pasast le Braz Saint George devers la Turquie,
and that he should-cross the Arm Saint George toward the Turkey

à tant de gent cum il pot avoir, por secorre Nichomie.
with so-many of people as he could have for to-succor Nicomedia

481 Et quant la gens Toldre l'Ascre l'oïrent que il venoit,
And when the people (of-)Theodore the-Lascaris it-beard that he came

si revuidierent la terre, si se traistrent arriere vers
so emptied-again the land so themselves drew back toward

Niqué-la-Grant. Et quant l'empereres le sot, si prist son
Nicaea-the-Great And when the-emperor it knew so took his

conseil; et fu li consels tels que Tyerris de Los, li
counsel and was the counsel such that Thierry of Loos the

seneschaus de Romenie, remanroit à Nichomie à toz ses
seneschal of Romania would-remain at Nicomedia with all his

chevaliers et à toz ses serjanz por garder la terre, et
knights and with all his sergeants for to-guard the land and
 Machaires de Sainte Manehalt al Caracas, et Guillaume del
Macaire of Sainte Menebould at-the Charax and William of-the
 Perchoi en Esquise, et cil desfendroient la terre endroit als.
Perchoy in Cyzicus and those would-defend the land about them
 Lors s'en rala l'empereres Henris en Constantinoble 482
Then himself-thence went-back the-emperor Henry into Constantinople
 al remainant de sa gent, et ot empris de rechief de movoir
with-the remnant of his people and had undertaken of anew to set-out
 por raler vers Andrenople. Et endementiers qu'il atorna
for to-go-again toward Adrianople And meanwhile that-he prepared
 son oirre, Tierris de Los li seneschau, qui ere à Nichomie,
his journey Thierry of Loos the seneschal who was at Nicomedia
 et Guillaume del Perchoi, à totes lor genz, alerent
and William of-the Perchoy with all their people went
 forer un jor. Et la genz Toldre l'Ascre le sorent; si les
to-forage one day And the people (of-)Theodore the-Lascaris it knew so them
 sorpristrent et lor corurent sus. Si furent mult grant gent, et
surprised and them ran upon So they-were very great people and
 cil furent pou; si comença li estors et la mellée: ne demora
those were few so began the fight and the melee not lasted
 mie longuement que li pou ne porent endurer le trop.
at-all long that the few not could endure the too-many
 Mult le fist bien Tyerris de Los et sa gens; et fu abatuz 483
Much it did well Thierry of Loos and his people and was struck-down
 deus foiz, et par force le remonterent sa gens. Et Guillaume
two times and by force him remounted his people And William
 del Perchoi fu abatuz et remontez, et fu rescous. Mais ne
of-the Perchoy was struck-down and remounted and was rescued But not
 porent cele fole souffrir, si furent desconfit li Franc. Là fu
could that crowd endure so were routed the Franks There was

pris Tyerris de Los, et navrez parmi le vis, et en aventure
taken Thierry of Loos and wounded through the face and in hazard
 de mort; là fu pris li plus de sa gent avec lui, que pou en
of death there was taken the most of his people with him for few thence
 eschapa. Et Guillaumes del Perchoi en eschapa sor un roncín,
escaped And William of-the Perchoy thence escaped upon a nag
 navrez en la main. Et ensi se recuillirent el mostier
wounded in the hand And thus themselves gathered in-the minster
 Sainte-Sophie cil qui en eschaperent de la desconfiture.
Saint-Sophia those who thence escaped from the defeat

484 Cil qui ceste hystoire traita ne sot s'il fu à tort ou à
He who this history treated not knew if-it was at wrong or at
 droit, mais il en oï un chevalier blamer, qui avoit à
right but he thereof heard a knight blamed who had to
 nom Ansols de Remi, qui ere hom liges Tyerri de Los
name Ansoul of Remy who was man liege (of-)Thierry of Loos
 le seneschal, et chevetaines de sa gent, et le guerpi.
the seneschal and captain of his people and him forsook

485 Et lors pristrent un message cil qui furent à Nichomie
And then took a messenger those who were at Nicomedia
 au mostier Sainte-Sophye retourné (Guillaumes del Perchoi
at-the minster Saint-Sophia returned William of-the Perchoy
 et Ansols de Remi), et l'en envoierent batant en
and Ansoul of Remy and him-thence sent in-baste into
 Constantinoble à l'empereor Henri; et li manderent qu'ensi
Constantinople to the-emperor Henry and him sent-word that-thus
 ere avenu, que pris ere li seneschaus et sa gens, et il
was happened that taken was the seneschal and his people and they
 estoient assis au mostier Sainte Sofie à Nichomie, et
were besieged at-the minster Saint Sophia at Nicomedia and
 n'avoient mie viande à plus de cinq jors; et seust de
not-had at-all victuals for more than five days and should-know of

voir que se il nes secoroit, que il estoient mort et pris.

truth that if he not-them succored that they were dead and taken

L'empereres, autresi cum à cri, passe le Braz Saint George, il

The-emperor likewise as at cry crosses the Arm Saint George he

et sa gens, qui ainz ainz, qui mielz mielz, por secoure cels de

and his people who sooner sooner who better better for to-succor those of

Nichomie. Et ensi fu remese la voie d'Andrenople à cele foiz.

Nicomedia And thus was left the way of-Adrianople at that time

Et quant l'empereres ot passé le Braz Saint-George, si ordena 486

And when the-emperor had crossed the Arm Saint-George so ordered

ses batailles, et chevaucha par ses journées tant que il vint à

his battalions and rode by his day-stages so-far that he came to

Nichomie. Quant la gens Toldre l'Ascre et si frere l'oïrent,

Nicomedia When the people (of-)Theodore the-Lascaris and his brothers it-heard

qui tenoient l'ost, si se traistrent arriere, et passerent

who held the-host so themselves drew back and crossed

la montaigne d'autre part devers Niqué. Et l'empereres se

the mountain on-other side toward Nicaea And the-emperor himself

loja d'autre part Nichomie, en une mult bele prairie sor un

lodged on-other side Nicomedia in a very fair meadow upon a

flum, par devers la montaigne. Et fist tendre ses trés et ses

river by toward the mountain And had pitched his tents and his

paveillons, et fist corre sa gent par le païs (quar il se

pavilions and had run his people through the country for they themselves

revelerent quant il oïrent dire que Tyerris de Los li seneschaus

rebelled when they heard say that Thierry of Loos the seneschal

de Romenie ere pris); et pristrent proies assez et prisons.

of Romania was taken and took booty plenty and prisoners

The Truce with Lascaris

LVI

Lascaris offers a two-year truce if Cyzicus and Saint Sophia of Nicomedia are razed, and Henry, unable to fight two wars and wishing to part his enemies, agrees; Thierry of Loos and the other prisoners are freed. In July Henry marches to Adrianople, where he is welcomed in procession, and on into Johanitsa's land to Eului, whose people flee. His foragers bring in herds and grain, though four battalions guarding them, caught in the defiles, must fight on foot. He stocks Adrianople with the grain and stays fifteen days.

487 Ensi sejorna l'empereres Henris par cinq jorz en la prairie. Et
Thus sojourned the-emperor Henry for five days in the meadow And
dedens cel sejour, Toldres li Ascres prist ses messages, si les
within that sojourn Theodore the Lascaris took his messengers so them
envoia à lui; et si le requist qu'il prendroit trive à deus anz,
sent to him and so him required that-he would-take truce for two years
par tel covent que il li laisast abatre Equise et la forteresce
by such covenant that he him should-let cast-down Cyzicus and the fortress
del mostier Sainte Sophie de Nicomie; et il li rendroit
of-the minster Saint Sophia of Nicomedia and he him would-render
toz ses prisons (qui avoient esté pris à cele desconfiture
all his prisoners who had been taken at that defeat
et als autres leus), dont il avoit assez en sa terre.
and at-the other places whereof he had plenty in his land

488 Or prist l'emperere conseil à ses homes, et distrent que
Now took the-emperor counsel with his men and they-said that
il ne pooient les deus guerres souffrir ensemble, et que
they not could the two wars endure together and that
miez valoit cel damage à soffrir que la parte d'Andrenople
better was-worth that harm to suffer than the loss of-Adrianople
ne de l'autre terre; et si auroient parti lor anemis (Johannis
nor of the-other land and so would-have parted their enemies Johanitsa

le roi de Blaquie et de Bougrie, et Toldre l'Ascre), qui
the king of Wallachia and of Bulgaria and Theodore the-Lascaris who
 estoient ami et s'entr'aidoient de la guerre.

were friends and each-other-helped in the war

Ensi fu la chose creantée et otroiée. Et lors manda 489

Thus was the thing agreed and granted And then summoned

l'empereres Henris Pierron de Braiecuel en Equise, et il

the-emperor Henry Peter of Bracieux in Cyzicus and he

i vint; et fist tant l'empereres Henris vers lui, que

there came and did so-much the-emperor Henry toward him that

il li delivra Equisse; et la delivra à Toldre l'Ascre por

he him delivered Cyzicus and it delivered to Theodore the-Lascaris for

abatre, et le mostier de Sainte Sophie de Nichomie. Ensi

to-cast-down and the minster of Saint Sophia of Nicomedia Thus

fu ceste trive asseurée, et ces forterescs abatues. Tyerris

was this truce confirmed and these fortresses cast-down Thierry

de Los fu delivrés, et li autre prison tuit.

of Loos was delivered and the other prisoners all

Lors s'en repaire l'empereres Henris en Constantinoble, 490

Then himself-thence returned the-emperor Henry into Constantinople

et enprist à aler vers Andrenople à tant con il poroit de

and undertook to go toward Adrianople with so-many as he could of

gent avoir. Et asambla s'ost à Salembrie; et fu jà tant

people have And assembled his-host at Selymbria and was already so-much

del tens passé que il fu après la feste saint Johan en juignet.

of-the time passed that it was after the feast (of-)saint John in July

Et chevaucha tant par ses journées que il vint à Andrenople,

And rode so-far by his day-stages that he came to Adrianople

et se herberja es prez davant la vile. Et cil de la cité

and himself lodged in-the meadows before the town And those of the city

qui mult l'avoient désiré, issirent fors à procession, si le
who much him-had desired went-out outside in procession so him
 virent mult volentiers; et tuit li Grié de la terre furent venu.

saw very gladly and all the Greeks of the land were come

491 Il ne sejourna c'un jor devant la vile, tant qu'il ot veu le

He not sojourned but-one day before the town until that-he had seen the

domage que Johannis i avoit fait à ses trencheors et à

harm that Johanitsa there had done with his sappers and with

ses perieres, as murs et as tors, qui mult avoient la vile

his petraries to-the walls and to-the towers which much had the town

empirie. Et l'endemain si mut et chevaucha vers la terre

damaged And the-next-day so set-out and rode toward the land

Johannis, et chevaucha par quatre jorz. Et al cinquiesme

(of-)Johanitsa and rode for four days And at-the fifth

jor, si vint al pié de la montaigne de Blaquie, à une

day so came to-the foot of the mountain of Wallachia to a

cité qui avoit nom Eului, que Johannis avoit novelement

city which had name Eului which Johanitsa had newly

repoplée de gent. Et quant la gens de la terre virent l'ost

repeopled with people And when the people of the land saw the-host

venir, si guerpirent la cité, et foïrent es montaignes.

come so forsook the city and fled into-the mountains

492 L'empereres Henris et l'oz des François se loja devant

The-emperor Henry and the-host of-the French themselves lodged before

la vile, et li coreor corrurent parmi la terre, et gaaignierent

the town and the foragers ran through the land and won

bues et vaches et buffles à grant plenté, et autres bestes.

oxen and cows and buffaloes in great plenty and other beasts

Et cil d'Andrenople, qui avoient lor chars mené avec aus,

And those of-Adrianople who had their carts led with them

et erent povre et diseteus de la viande, les chargierent de

and were poor and in-want of the victuals them loaded with

froment et d'autre blé; et il troverent grant plenté de la
wheat and with-other grain and they found great plenty of the
 viande, et les autres chars qu'il avoient gaaignié, chargierent
victuals and the other carts which-they had won they-loaded
 à mult grant plenté. Ensi sejourna l'oz par trois jorz, et
in very great plenty Thus sojourned the-host for three days and
 chascun jor aloient gaaignier li coreor parmi la terre; et la
each day went to-win the foragers through the land and the
 terre si ere plaine de montaignes et de fors destroiz; si i
land so was full of mountains and of strong defiles so there
 perdoient cil de l'ost de lor coreors qui aloient folement.
lost those of the-host of their foragers who went foolishly

Au darraien, envoya l'empereres Henris Ansel de Caeu por 493
At-the last sent the-emperor Henry Anseau of Cayeux for
 garder les correors, et Eustaice son frere, et Tierri de
to-guard the foragers and Eustace his brother and Thierry of
 Flandres son nevou, et Gautier de Escornai, et Johan Bliaut.
Flanders his nephew and Walter of Escornay and John Bliaut
 Ices quatre batailles alerent garder les coreors, et entrerent
These four battalions went to-guard the foragers and entered
 dedenz mult forz montaignes. Et quant lor gens orent coru
within very strong mountains And when their people had run
 par la terre et il s'en vourent revenir, si troverent
through the land and they themselves-thence wished to-come-back so found
 les destroiz mult forz. Et li Blac del païs se furent
the defiles very strong And the Vlachs of-the country themselves were
 assemblé, et assanblerent à aus, et lor firent mult grant
assembled and joined-battle with them and them did very great
 domage et d'omes et de chevaus. Et furent mult près
harm both of-men and of horses And they-were very near
 d'estre desconfiz, si que par vive force covint les chevaliers
of-being routed so that by live force behooved the knights

descendre à pié. Et par l'aide Dieu s'en revindrent

to-dismount on foot And by the-aid (of-)God themselves-thence came-back

tote voie à l'ost; mais grant damage orent receu.

all the-same to the-host but great harm they-had received

494 Et l'endemain, s'en parti l'empereres Henris et l'os

And the-next-day himself-thence departed the-emperor Henry and the-host

des François; et chevauchierent par lor journées arrieres, tant

of-the French and rode by their day-stages back so-far

que il vindrent à la cité d'Andrenople. Et i mistrent la

that they came to the city of-Adrianople And there put the

garnison qu'il amenerent de blez et d'autre viande; et

provision which-they brought of wheat and of-other victuals and

sejorna l'empereres, en la prairie defors la vile, bien quinze jorz.

sojourned the-emperor in the meadow outside the town well fifteen days

The Death of Boniface

LVII

Boniface, master of Mosynopolis, asks to meet Henry, and they meet with great joy in a meadow below Cypsela. Boniface hears that Agnes is with child, becomes Henry's man, and gives Villehardouin Mosynopolis or Serres as his fief. They agree to muster in October against Johanitsa. Five days later, on a foray in the mountains, Boniface rides out unarmed to save his rearguard from the Bulgars and is struck by an arrow below the shoulder. His men flee, and his head is sent to Johanitsa. The year is 1207.

495 En cel termine, Bonifaces li marchis de Monferat, qui ere

In that time Boniface the marquis of Montferrat who was

à la Serre, que il avoit refermée, fist chevauchies trosque

at the Serres which he had refortified made forays as-far

à Messinople, et la terre se rendi à son comandement.

to Mosynopolis and the land itself surrendered to his command

Lors prist ses messages, si les envia à l'empereor Henri,
Then took his messengers so them sent to the-emperor Henry
 et li manda que il parleroit volentiers à lui sor le flum
and him sent-word that he would-speak gladly to him upon the river
 qui cort soz la Quipesale. Et il n'avoient mais eu pooir
which runs under the Cypsela And they not-had more had power
 de parler ensemble, trosque la terre fu conquise; que il
of speaking together since the land was conquered for there
 avoit tant de lor anemis entre als, que li uns ne pooit
had so-many of their enemies between them that the one not could
 venir à l'autre. Et quant l'empereres et ses consels oï
come to the-other And when the-emperor and his council heard
 que li marchis Bonifaces ere à Messinople, si en furent
that the marquis Boniface was at Mosynopolis so thereof they-were
 mult lié. Et li manda par ses messages arriers que il
very glad And him sent-word by his messengers back that he
 iroit parler à lui al jor que il li avoit mis.
would-go to-speak to him at-the day that he him had set

Ensi s'en ala l'empereres vers cele part, et laissa Coenon 496
Thus himself-thence went the-emperor toward that way and left Conon
 de Betune por garder la terre à Andrenople atot cent
of Béthune for to-guard the land at Adrianople with hundred
 chevaliers. Et vindrent là où li jorz fu pris, en une mult
knights And they-came there where the day was taken in a very
 bele prairie près de la cité de la Quipesale; et vint l'empereres
fair meadow near of the city of the Cypsela and came the-emperor
 d'une part, et li marchis d'autre, et s'assemblerent à mult
on-one side and the marquis on-other and themselves-met with very
 grant joie; et ne fu mie mervoille, que il ne s'erent pieça
great joy and not was at-all marvel for they not themselves-were long-since
 veu. Et li marchis demanda à l'empereor nouvelles de sa fille
seen And the marquis asked of the-emperor news of his daughter

l'empereris Agnès; et il li dist que ele ere grosse d'anfant,

the-empress Agnes and he him told that she was big with-child

et il en fu liez et joianz. Lors devint li marchis hom de

and he thereof was glad and joyful Then became the marquis man of

l'empeor Henri, et tint de lui sa terre ensi con il avoit fait

the-emperor Henry and held of him his land thus as he had done

l'empeor Baudoin, son frere. Lors dona li marchis Bonifaces

(of-)the-emperor Baldwin his brother Then gave the marquis Boniface

à Geffroi de Vile-Hardoin, le mareschal de Romenie et de

to Geoffrey of Villehardouin the marshal of Romania and of

Champaigne, la cité de Messinople à totes ses appartenances,

Champagne the city of Mosynopolis with all its appurtenances

ou celi de la Serre (laquele que il ameroit mielz); et cil en

or that of the Serres whichever that he would-love better and he thereof

fu ses hom liges, sauve la fealté l'empeor de Costantinoble.

was his man liege saving the fealty (of-)the-emperor of Constantinople

497 Et ensi sejournerent par deus jorz en cele prairie à mult grant

And thus they-sojourned for two days in that meadow with very great

joie, et distrent (puis que Diex avoit doné que il pooient

joy and said since that God had given that they could

venir ensemble) que encore porroient il grever lor anemis.

come together that yet could they harm their enemies

Et en pristrent un parlement que il seroient à l'issue

And thereof took a parliament that they would-be at the-issue

d'esté, el mois d'octobre, à tot lor pooir, en la prairie de

of-summer in-the month of-October with all their power in the meadow of

la cité d'Andrenople, por hostoier sor le roi de Blaquie. Et

the city of-Adrianople for to-make-war upon the king of Wallachia And

ensi departirent mult lié et mult haitié: li marchis s'en

thus they-parted very glad and very cheerful the marquis himself-thence

ala à Messinople, et l'empereres Henris vers Costantinoble.

went to Mosynopolis and the-emperor Henry toward Constantinople

Quant li marchis fu à Messinople, ne tarda mie plus de 498
When the marquis was at Mosynopolis not delayed at-all more than
 cinq jorz que il fist une chevauchie, par le conseil as Greus
five days that he made a foray by the counsel of-the Greeks
 de la terre, en la montaigne de Messinople, plus d'une grant
of the land into the mountain of Mosynopolis more than-a great
 journée loing. Et cum il ot esté en la terre et vint al partir,
day far And when he had been in the land and came to-the departing
 li Bougre de la terre se furent assemblé; et virent que
the Bulgars of the land themselves were assembled and saw that
 li marchis fu à pou de gent. Et vienent de totes parz, si
the marquis was with few of people And they-come from all parts so
 s'assemblent à s'arriere garde. Et quant li marchis oï le
themselves-engage with his-rear guard And when the marquis heard the
 cri, si sailli en un cheval toz desarmez, un glaive en sa main.
cry so leapt onto a horse all unarmed a lance in his hand
 Et cum il vint là où il estoient assemblé à s'arriere
And when he came there where they were engaged with his-rear
 garde, si lor corut sus, et les chaça une grant piece arriere.
guard so them ran upon and them chased a great while back
 Là fu feruz d'une sajete li marchis Bonifaces de Monferat, 499
There was struck with-an arrow the marquis Boniface of Montferrat
 parmi le gros del braz desoz l'espaule, mortelment, si que
through the thick of-the arm below the-shoulder mortally so that
 il comença à espandre del sanc. Et quant sa gens virent
he began to shed of-the blood And when his people saw
 ce, si se comencierent à esmaier et à desconforter, et
this so themselves began to dismay and to lose-heart and
 à mavaisement maintenir. Et cil qui furent entor le marchis
to badly bear And those who were around the marquis
 le sostindrent, et il perdi mult del sanc; si se comença
him held-up and he lost much of-the blood so himself began

à pasmer. Et quant ses genz virent que il n'auroient nule
to swoon And when his people saw that they not-would-have any
 aïe de lui, si s'escomencierent à esmaier; et le comencent
aid of him so themselves-began to dismay and him begin
 à laisser. Ensi furent desconfit par ceste mesaventure; et
to leave Thus they-were routed by this mischance and
 cil qui remestrent avec lui (et ce fu po) furent mort.

those who remained with him and this was few were dead

500 Et li marchis Bonifaces de Monferat ot la teste colpée;

And the marquis Boniface of Montferrat had the head cut

et la gens de la terre envoierent Johannis la teste, et

and the people of the land sent (to-)Johanitsa the head and

ce fu une des graignors joies que il aust onques. Halas!

this was one of-the greatest joys that he had ever Alas

con dolorous damage ci ot à l'empereor Henri et

how grievous harm here there-was to the-emperor Henry and

à tos les Latins de la terre de Romenie, de tel homme

to all the Latins of the land of Romania of such man

perdre par tel mesaventure, un des meillors barons et

to-lose by such mischance one of-the best barons and

des plus larges, et des meillors chevaliers qui fust el

of-the most generous and of-the best knights who was in-the

remanant dou monde. Et ceste mesaventure avint en l'an

remnant of-the world And this mischance happened in the-year

de l'incarnation Jesu-Crist mil deus cens et sept anz.

of the-incarnation (of-)Jesus-Christ thousand two hundred and seven years